A PRACTICAL COURSE

IN

SPANISH.

BY

H. M. MONSANTO, A.M.,

AND

LOUIS A. LANGUELLIER, LL.D.,

REVISED BY

FREEMAN M. JOSSELYN

DOCTEUR DE L'UNIVERSITÉ DE PARIS

NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Copyright, 1875,
By H. M. MONSANTO and LOUIS A. LANGUELLIER.

Copyright, 1903,
By CLEMENCE MONSANTO.

Copyright, 1903,
By AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

E. P. 6

PREFACE.

In preparing the present work it has been the aim of the authors, while excluding nothing of practical value which has already been placed before the public, to combine with the best features of the most approved methods the results of their own experience. While endeavoring to render this work a valuable assistant in the class-room, they have sought at the same time to adapt it to the purposes of private instruction, and in so doing have availed themselves to a great extent of the admirable plan presented in Woodbury's Practical Course with the German Language. Accordingly the lessons are arranged in the following order : —

1. The Subjects of the Lesson.

2. Examples, accompanied by their nearest English equivalents, and made to illustrate the grammatical and idiomatic principles which are involved in the Lessons.

3. Vocabularies placed before the Exercises, the masculine and feminine names being grouped separately, and other parts of speech arranged alphabetically for convenience of reference.

4. Spanish Exercises. The sentences in Spanish require only the application of the instructions contained in the Lesson, or in the preceding ones, for their translation into English.

5. English Exercises. The analogous sentences in English are presented in immediate connection with the preceding ones in Spanish. The principles applied in the Spanish Exercises are thus made a most convenient and effective auxiliary in the still more advanced and difficult work of translating English into Spanish.

6. Grammatical and Idiomatic Principles. This division may be employed by means of the references either in connection with the preceding instructions, or, when not thus required, may be applied both as a test of the pupil's previous deductions, and at the same time as an appropriate and impressive review.

The rules on pronunciation will, it is hoped, be found as complete as possible, and the selection of sentences in the Exercises an improve-

ment on those of many former methods. The conjugation of all the irregular verbs in general use will be found at the end of the book, together with a brief sketch on the formation of the Spanish language, and also a complete dictionary of all the words used in the different Exercises.

It will be seen that the book does not contain a Second Part devoted to a systematic rearrangement of the grammatical facts contained in the several lessons. Such a Second Part is, we believe, seldom used by students, and we have been careful, as far as possible, in the construction of our lessons to insert together all the facts pertaining to each part of the subject. So the course of our book corresponds very nearly to that which would be adopted in a systematic grammar.

While respectfully presenting this work to the public, the authors indulge the hope that it may prove a welcome auxiliary to the acquisition of the Spanish language.

H. M. MONSANTO.
LOUIS A. LANGUELLIER.

NEW YORK, July, 1875.

REVISER'S NOTE.

Since the publication of Monsanto and Languellier's Spanish Course in 1875, the advance in linguistics, and especially the revision of Spanish accentuation by the Academy in 1888, make a regulation necessary. For while there are many Spanish grammars before the public, the present book aims to make the basic principles of Spanish grammar familiar to the student by constant practice, and repetition *in Spanish*. To this end the English statements of grammatical facts have been reduced to the smallest compass compatible with clearness, while the Spanish examples have been made as numerous as possible.

In the revision, the editor has endeavored to preserve the original form of the work, only recasting such grammatical statements as seemed to demand it. His especial care has been to present the Spanish text in accordance with the latest rules for orthography and accent — rules which have been treated at some length in the introduction, and which involved a complete recasting of that part of the work.

F. M. J., JR.

MADRID, June 17, 1902.

CONTENTS.

		Page
Introduction		13
§ 1.	Letters and Sounds. — Alphabet	13
§ 2.	Pronunciation	14
	1. Vowels	14
	2. Diphthongs	14
	3. Triphthongs	15
	4. Consonants	15
§ 3.	Variations in pronunciation	18
§ 4.	Double Letters	19
§ 5.	Syllables	19
§ 6.	Accent	20
§ 7.	Punctuation	23
§ 8.	Capital Letters	23
§ 9.	Exercises in Pronunciation	24
Lessons:		
I.	Article, different Forms	26
II.	Plural	29
III.	Contraction of Preposition with Article	33
IV.	Pronouns	36
V.	Verbs **ser** and **estar**	41
VI.	Use of the Prepositions **de** and **para**	45
VII.	The Negative	48
VIII.	Adjectives, Formation of the Feminine	53
IX.	Place of Adjectives	58
X.	Diminutive and Augmentative Nouns	63
XI.	Adjectives, Comparative and Superlative Relative	69
XII.	Superlative Absolute. Adjectives and Adverbs	76
XIII.	Possessive Adjectives	81
XIV.	Possessive Pronouns	86
XV.	Demonstrative Adjectives	91
XVI.	Demonstrative Pronouns	94
XVII.	Auxiliary Verb **haber**	99
XVIII.	Auxiliary Verb **haber** (*continued*)	103
XIX.	Gerund	107
XX.	Cardinal Numbers	112
XXI.	Ordinal Numbers	117
XXII.	Pronouns in Simple Tenses	122

		Page
XXIII.	Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	129
XXIV.	Auxiliary Verbs, **haber, tener**	136
XXV.	Idiomatic Uses of **tener**	143
XXVI.	Auxiliary Verbs, **ser, estar**	149
XXVII.	**Haber** and **ser** used as Impersonal Verbs	156
XXVIII.	The Time of the Day, etc.	161
XXIX.	Use of the Article	165
XXX.	Personal Pronouns with Prepositions and Verbs	171
XXXI.	The Respective Place of Pronouns	176
XXXII.	Regular Verbs, Present Indicative	180
XXXIII.	Irregular Verbs of the First Conjug., Present Indicative	183
XXXIV.	Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjug., Present Indicative	188
XXXV.	Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjug., Present Indicative	193
XXXVI.	Imperfect Tense, Indicative Mood	199
XXXVII.	The Past Definite or Preterit, and the Past Indefinite	203
XXXVIII.	Irregularities of the Preterit	209
XXXIX.	The Past Anterior and the Pluperfect (Indicative)	215
XL.	The Future and Future Anterior	218
XLI.	Subjunctive Mood. Present	223
XLII.	Imperative Mood	229
XLIII.	Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect	234
XLIV.	Conditional Mood	241
XLV.	Subjunctive Future and Future Perfect	248
XLVI.	Infinitive Mood	250
XLVII.	The Infinitive governed by Prepositions	258
XLVIII.	The Gerund and Present Participle	261
XLIX.	The Past Participle	266
L.	The Past Participle (*continued*)	271
LI.	The Passive Verb	275
LII.	Reflexive Verbs	279
LIII.	Reflexive Verbs (*continued*)	286
LIV.	Periphrastic Verbs	290
LV.	Impersonal Verbs	295
LVI.	Government of Verbs	299
LVII.	Government of Adjectives	302
LVIII.	The Adverb	306
LIX.	The Preposition	312
LX.	Defective Verbs	318
LXI.	Agreement of the Verb with its Subject	320
LXII.	Conjunctions and Interjections	323
Table of Terminations of the Three Regular Conjugations		326
List of the Principal Irregular Verbs		328
Formation of the Spanish Language		370
General Vocabulary		373
1.	Spanish-English	373
2.	English-Spanish	386

INDEX.

The heavy-face figures refer to the LESSONS, the light-face figures to the RULES; as, for instance, **3.** 1–3 denotes Lesson 3, Rules 1–3, &c. When page or section is referred to, p. or § is given with the figures.

A or **An**, **1.** 3.
Á, **3.** 1. When used with active verbs, **18.** 3. When not used with an active verb, **18.** 4; **20.** 6; **23.** 2. When used with **el cual** (*la cual*, etc.), **23.** 6. When used before a following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, 2. Used after **volver**, **48.** 9 *in fine*. Used with some Periphrastic verbs, **54.** 1–6. Complement of another Preposition, **59.** p. 314. Its use, **59.** 1.
Ablative absolute, **49.** 5.
Accent, p. 20, § **6.**
Accusative case, **22.** 6; **23.** 2–6; **30.** 2; **31.** 1, 2, 4.
Active verb, **51.** 1, 2. Becoming a Reflexive Verb, **52.** 1. When becoming an Impersonal Verb, **55.** 2.
Adjectives, repeated before nouns, **1.** 4. Plural formed as with nouns, **2.** 9. Formation of the Feminine, **8.** 1–5. Referring to two nouns in the singular, **8.** 6. Referring to two nouns of different genders, **8.** 7. Used substantively, **8.** Place of Adjectives, **9.** 1–4. Used also as nouns, **9.** 5. Comparative and Superlative, **11, 12.** Government of Adjectives, **57.** 1–7. Used as adverbs, **58.** 9.
Á donde. See **donde.**
Adverbs, Comparative and Superlative, **11. 12; 13.** 9, Rem. 3. Different sorts of Adverbs, **58.** pp. 308, 309. Their place, **58.** 1. Their formation, **58.** 2. Used diminutively *or* augmentatively, **58.** 8.
Ago, its translation, **27.** p. 157.
Agreement of the verb with its subject, **61.**
Al, **3.**
A la, **3.**
Á las, **3.**
Algo, when used with **tener**, **25.** 3.
Algún. See **alguno.**
Alguno (algunos, **alguna**, algunas), **4.** 8; **7.** 9, and Obs.: **9.** 6, Rem. 1.
Allí está and **hay**, p. 158.
Á los, **3.**
Alphabet, p. 13, § **1.**
An or **A**, **1.** 3.
Andar, when it may be used instead of **ir**, **48.** 4.
Ante, its use, **59.** 2.
Años, used with **tener**, **25.** 4.
Any, **4.** 8.
Aquel, aquella; **este**, esta; **ese**, esa. Their different meanings, **15, 16.**
Aquello, **eso** and **esto**, their different meanings, **15, 16.**
Article, Definite, **1.** Indefinite, **1.** 3. **13.** 9, Rem. 2. Not separated from the Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun, **16.** 8. When omitted, **23.** 7. Its use, **29.** When used with an infinitive, **46.** 13, 14.
Augmentative nouns and adjectives, **9.**
Buen. See **Bueno.**
Bueno, **9.** 6, Rem. 1.
Can, **44.** 7, *1.*
Cardinal numbers, **20.** When ending in **os** and **as**, **20.** 2 When used with **y**, **20.** 3. When used instead of the ordinal numbers, **21.** 4, Obs.; **R.** 5, 6.
Ch, p. 16, § **3.**
Cien. See **Ciento.**
Ciento, when becoming **cien**, **20.** 4. Used with **mil**, **20.** 8.
Collective noun, when put in the singular *or* in the plural, **61.** 8.
Collective numbers, **21.**
Collective partitive, **61.** 8.
Como, when governing the Infinitive mood, **47.** 2.
Compound tenses, in Reflexive Verbs, **52.**
Comparative, its formation, **11.** 1–9.
Comparative and **Superlative**, **11, 12.**
Compound gerund, **48.** 6, 8.
Compound nouns, **1.** 5–6.
Con, when used before a following Infinitive, **46**, p. 255, 8; **48.** 5, 3, Note. Complement of an Adjective, **57.** 4. Its use, **59.** 3.
Conditional, **44.**
Conjunctions, requiring the Subjunctive mood, **41.** 5. List of the principal Conjunctions, **62.**
Conmigo, **30.** 11.
Conocer, and **Saber**, **14.** 9.
Consigo, **30.** 11.
Contigo, **30.** 11.
Consonants, p. 15, § **3.**
Contents, pp. v, vi.
Could, **44.** 17, *2.*
Cual, when used with **tal**, **23.** 7 **c.** **Cual** and **que**, **23.** 9.

Cuál, Interrogative Pronoun, **23.** 11.
Cuando, used with Subjunctive future, **45.** 1.
Cuánto (*cuánta, cuántos, cuántas*), how translated, **23.** 13.
Cuyo, its uses, **23.** 8. As an Interrogative Pronoun, **23.** 11.
D, when suppressed in Reflexive Verbs, **52.** 7.
Dative case, **30.** 2; **31.** 1, 2, 4.
Days of the week, **20.**
De, **3.** 1, 2; **6.** 1–3. Used with the Definite Article before pronouns, **14.** 4–6. Used with **ser**, **14.** 8. Used with **tener**, **25.** 2. When used before a following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, 5, 9, 10, *3, 11.* Used after a Past Participle, **49.** 7. Used with some Periphrastic Verbs, **54.** 1, 5. Preceded by a verb, **56.** 1, 2. Complement of an Adjective, **57.** 1–4, 7. Complement of another Preposition, **59.** p. 314. Its use, **59.** 4. Used after a partitive noun, **61.** 8.
Dé and de, § **6**, 10.
Deber, **18.** 2.
Defective verbs, **60.**
Definite article, **1.** 1, **21**; **13.** 5, 7. Used with **de**, **14.** 4–6. Used with verbs expressing moral or physical properties, **25.** 6 and Obs. When used to translate **on**, **28.** 3. Its use, **29.**
Del, **3.** 1.
De la, **3.** 1.
De las, **3.** 1.
De los, **3.** 1.
Demonstrative adjectives, **15.** 1–3. Generally precede the noun, **15.** 2. Must be repeated before every noun, **15.** 3.
Demonstrative pronouns, **16.**
Descriptive Tense, **36.** 3.
Diminutive nouns and adjectives, **10.**
Diphthongs, p. 14, § **2.** 2; § **6.** 5.
Direct object pronouns, **30.** 1–12; **31.** 1–2; **52.** 1, 24.
Divisions of the day, **20.** p. 113; **28.** p. 162.
Doble. See p. 118 (Multiplicative Numbers).
Don, **9.** 6.
Doña, **9.** 6.
Donde, when preceded by **á** (á donde), and by **en** (en donde), **15.** 4. Used as a Relative Pronoun, **23.** 10. When governing the Infinitive, **47.** 2.
Double letters, p. 19, § **4.**
E and y, **18.**
El, **1.** 1. Used (by euphony) instead of **la**, **1.** 2; **13.** 4.
El de él (*or* de ella, de ellos, de ellas). Used instead of *el suyo, la suya*, etc., **13.** 5.
El (*or* la, los, las, lo) **de V.**, **14.** 4.
Él, **4.** 6; **13.** 5.
El and el, p. 20, § **6.** 10; **4.** 6.
El cual (*la cual*, etc.). When used and how, **23.** 6.
Ella, **4.** 6; **13.** 5.
Ellas, **4.** 6; **13.** 5.
Ello, used instead of *eso*, **16.** 9. Corresponding to *it*, **16.** 9.
Ellos, **4.** 6; **13.** 5.
El suyo, la suya, used instead of *vuestro, vuestra*, **14.** 3.
En, used with a gerund, **19.** 8 and Obs. When used before a following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, R. 5. Its use as a Preposition, **59.** 5.
En donde. See **Donde.**
English-Spanish Vocabulary, p. 386.
Ese, esa; **este**, esta; **aquel**, aquella; their different meanings, **15**, **16.**
Eso, esto and **aquello**, their difference of meaning, **16.** 1, 3, 9.
Estar, used with a Past Participle, **18.** 1. Used with a gerund, **19.** 3. Not used with **ser, ir, venir**, **19.** 4. Its gerund often preceding another gerund, **19.** 9. Used instead of **tener**, **25.** 1, Obs. *a, b, c.* Its conjugation, **26.**
Estar and **ser**, **5.** 1–3. Used instead of **tener**, **25.** 1, Obs. *a, b, c.* Their conjugations, **26.**
Este, esta; **ese**, esa; **aquel, aquella**; their different meanings, **15.** 1; **16.** 2.
Esto, eso, and **aquello**, their difference of meaning, **16.** 1, 3–5.
Exclamation-point (¡), p. 23, § **7**, 2.
Exclamatory phrases, **62.**
Feminine gender, **1.** 1.
Formation of the Spanish language, pp. 370–372.
Fractional numbers, **21.**
Future anterior, **40.** 6.
Future perfect, **43.**
Future tense. Its formation, **40.** 1–4. When used instead of the Imperative, **40.** 5. Subjunctive future, **43.** 1.
Genders, **1.** 1 and General Obs.
General Vocabulary, Spanish-English, p. 373. English-Spanish, 386.
Genitive case, **30.** 12.
Gerund. See **Present Participle.**
Government, of Verbs, **56.** Of Adjectives, **57.** Of Adverbs, **58.** 6. Of Prepositions, **59.**
Gran. See **Grande.**
Grande, **9.** 6, Rem. 3 and note.
Haber, **17.** 1, 2. Cannot be separated from the principal verb, R. 1. Its conjugation, **24.** Used as Impersonal Verb, **27.** 1, and translated by **ago, there to be, since, this, there**, etc., **27.** 2. Expressing an *action* or a *state which still continues*, p. 157. Expressing *measure* or distance, p. 157. Used with **que** before an Infinitive, **27.** 3. Used impersonally, **55.** p. 298.
Haber and tener, **17.** 1. Their conjugations, **24.**
Haber de, **18.** 2.
Hacer, when used instead of **haber**, **27.** 2, Obs. When followed by an In-

finitive, **46.** 12. Used impersonally, **55.** p. 298.
Hay and allí está, p. 158.
Hijos míos! 13. 9.
Holidays, 26. p. 162.
How, exclamatory, rendered by **que, 23.** 12.
Imperative mood, 41. 1–7. Used with pronouns, **41.** p. 224, 3, 6. Of Reflexive Verbs, **52.** 7.
Imperative-*affirmative*, **31.** p. 177; **41.** 1–7. -Negative, **31.** p. 177; **41.** 5, *c*, 6.
Imperfect, of the Indicative, its formation, **36,** p. 199; its use, **36.** 1–3. General Obs. on the Imperfect of the Indicative, **37.** 7. Of the Subjunctive, its three forms, **43.** 1; its use, **43.** 2, 4, 5.
Imperfect conditionals, 44. 2.
Impersonal verbs, 55. 1–4. Essentially *or* Accidentally Impersonal Verbs, **55.** 2. Peculiarities of some Impersonal Verbs, **55.** 4.
Indefinite article, 1. 3. When omitted, **5.** 4 and Obs.; **29.** 8. Exceptions, 1–5.
Indicative mood, Present, **32.** 35. Imperfect, **36.** Preterite *or* Past Definite, **37.** Past Anterior, **39.** Pluperfect, **39.** Future and Future Anterior, **40.**
Indirect object, 52. 1, 2, 4.
Indirect object pronouns, 30. 1, 2, 9–12; **31.** 1–4.
Infinitive mood, 46, 47. When used as a noun, **46.** 13; with or without the Article, 14. Governed by Prepositions, **47.** 1; by the conjunctions **como, que,** the adverb **donde,** or an Interrogative Pronoun, 2; rendered by the Present Indicative or the Subjunctive Mood, 3. When may be used instead of the Gerund, **48.** 3, 5, Note. When used with **con, 48.** 5, **2,** Note.
Infinitive, preceded by **que** and **haber, 27.** 3.
In order to, 46. 6.
Interjections, 62.
Interjectional phrases, 62.
Interrogation-point (¿), p. 22, § **7,** 1.
Interrogative pronouns, 23. When governing the Infinitive, **47.** 2.
Interrogative sentence, 4. 7.
Ir, not used with **estar, 19.** 4. Used with an adverb, **35.** 7. Used with **por, 35.** 7, Obs. Imperfect Indicative, **36.** pp. 199, 200. When it may be used instead of **andar, 48.** 4. When it may be used instead of **estar, 51.** 7.
Irregular verbs, first conjugation, **33.** 1–4; second conjugation, **34.** 1–10; third conjugation, **35.** 1–9.
Irregular verbs, list of the principal Irregular Verbs, pp. 328–369.
Irse, 53. p. 288.
It, sometimes not rendered in Spanish, **16.** 10. Different ways of translating **it, 22.** 6.
Its, 13. 6.
Jamás, used with **no, 7.** 3. **Jamás** and **nunca,** 3–5.
La, 1. 1–2; **13.** 4. As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22.** 1–2. In compound tenses, **22.** 3. Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22.** 4 and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by it, **22.** 6. Used with **una** to translate *one o'clock*, **28.** 1.
Las, 2. 1; **13.** 4. As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22.** 1, 2. In Compound Tenses, **22.** 3. Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22.** 4 and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by **them.** Used with a numeral to indicate the *time of the day*, **28.** 1.
Le, used in Simple Tenses, **22.** 1, 2. In Compound Tenses, **22.** 3. Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22.** 4 and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by it, **22.** 6. Used with a pronoun and **V.** or **VV., 30.** 7.
Les, grammatical translation of *to them*, **22.** 6.
Ll, p. 17, § **3.**
Lo, 1. 1, 2 and Rem. 1, 2. Used with Possessive Pronoun, **14.** 7. As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22.** 1, 2. In Compound Tenses, **22.** 3. Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22.** 4 and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. Declinable and undeclinable, p. 125; **22.** 5. When translated by it, **22.** 6.
Los, 2. 1; **13.** 4. As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22.** 1, 2. In Compound Tenses, **22.** 3. Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22.** 4 and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by **them, 22.** 6.
Mal. See **Malo.**
Malo, 9. 6, Rem. 1.
Mandar, when followed by an Infinitive, **46.** 12.
Más de, 20. 7.
Masculine gender, 1. 1.
May, 44. 11, *1.*
Medio (media), used to indicate *the time of the day*, **28.** 1.
Medio and **mitad, 21.** 7.
Menos, used to indicate *the time of the day*, **28.** 2.
Menos de, 20. 7.
Mí and **mi,** p. 20, § **6,** 1.
Might, 11, 2, 3.
Might have, 44. 11, 7.
Mil, when used in the plural, **20.** 5. Used with **ciento, 20.** 8.
Mío, 13. 9.
Mismo, misma, used with a Possessive Pronoun, **14.** 2. Used with a Demonstrative Pronoun, **16.** 5.
Mitad and **medio, 21.** 7.
Months of the year, 21.
Moods, Indicative, **32–40.** Imperative, **41.** Subjunctive, **42–45.** Infinitive, **46–50.**

Multiplicative numbers, 21.
Nada used with **ni**, 7. 6. Meaning *not anything*, 7. 11, Obs. When used with **tener**, 25. 3.
Nadie used with **ni**, 7. 6. Meaning not *anybody*, 7. 11, Obs.
Narrative tense, 37. 7.
Negative, 7. **Double negative**, 7. 2. Two negatives after the verb, 7. 7.
Neuter article, 1. 1 and Rem. 1, 2.
Neuter gender, 1. 1 and Rem. 1, 2.
Neuter verb, when becoming a Reflexive Verb, 52. 1. When becoming Impersonal Verb, 55. 2, 3.
Ni used with **jamás, nunca, nada, nadie**, etc., 7. 6. Requiring the plural, 61. 2.
Ningún. See **ninguno.**
Ninguno (ningunos, **ninguna**, ningunas), 7. 9 and Obs.; 9. 6, Rem. 1.
No, put before the verb, 7. 1. When omitted, R. 2, Obs., R. 3. Used by emphasis with an affirmative sentence, 7. 8 and Note. Put at the end of a sentence, R. 10.
Nos, when becoming **no**, 30. 8.
Not anybody, 7. 11, Obs.
Not anything, 7. 11, Obs.
Nouns ending in **o, a, cion** *or* **tion, tad** or **dad.** See 1. 5, General Obs. Having no plural, 2. 9. Having no singular, 2. 9.
Nos and **nosotros**, 4. 2.
Nosotros and **nos**, 4. 2.
Numbers. See **Cardinal, Ordinal, Collective, Fractional,** and **Multiplicative numbers.**
Nunca used with **no**, 7. 3. **Nunca** and **jamás**, R. 3, Obs.
Ñ, p. 17, § 3.
O, when requiring the Plural, 61. 2.
Ó and **ú**, 18. p. 104.
Object before the subject, 4. 5. Preceded by a cardinal number, 20. 6.
O'clock, its translation, 28. 1.
On, when translated in Spanish by the Definite Article, 28. 3.
One, 1. 3.
Ordinal numbers, 21. Agree in gender and number with the noun, 21. 1. When used without the Article, 21. 4. When used instead of a Cardinal Number, 21. 5.
Otro, 16. 4.
Para, 6. 3. When used before a following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, 6. Its use, 59. 6.
Para siempre used with **jamás**, 7. 5.
Participio absoluto, 30. 3.
Participio de Preterito, 48. 6.
Participio pasivo, 49. 3.
Participios activos, 48. 1.
Participios de presente, 48. 1.
Participle. See **Present Participle** and **Past Participle.**
Passive verb, 51. 1-7.
Past Anterior, its formation, 39. 1. Its use, R. 2 and Obs. 1, 2.
Past Definite. See **Preterite.**
Past Indefinite, 37. 1, 5-7.
Past Participle, ends in Regular Conjugation, viz., in **ado** for the first conjugation, and in **ido** for the second and third conjugations, 17. 5; 49. 1. Irregular Past Participles, 18. Agrees with its subject, when accompanied by **estar**, 18. 1. Always formed regularly in the Irregular Verbs of first conjugation, 33. 3. Irregular Participle, 49. p. 269. Having sometimes an active meaning, 49. p. 269. Considered as an Adjective, 49. 2, 4. Invariable when joined with **haber**, 49. 3. Used as an abbreviation of the Gerund, 49. 5, 6, and Note. Preceded by a preposition, 49. 6, and Note. Requiring after them **de** or **por**, 49. 7. Having an active and a passive meaning, 49. 8. Used as feminine nouns, 49. 9. Verbs having two past participles, one regular and one irregular. Their different uses, 50. p. 274 and R. 1. When invariable, 51. 5, 6. Used as adjective governs **de** or **por**, 57. 6.
Perfect of the subjunctive, 42. 12.
Periphrastic verbs, 54.
Pero and **sino**, 18. 5.
Personal pronouns, used with prepositions, 30. 1-3, 9-11. Used with verbs, 30. 1-12. Used with Reflexive Verbs, 52. 1, 2.
Plural of nouns, 2. 2-9. Of adjectives, 8, Used with verbs, 61. 1-3, 6.
Pluperfect, of the Indicative, 39. 3, and Obs. Of the Subjunctive, 43. 2, Obs., 6; 44. 9.
Ponerse, 53. 2.
Por, used with **ir**, 35. 7, Obs. Used with **comenzar, empezar,** and **acabar**, 46. 4. Meaning *on account of* or *because;* meaning *instead of*, 47. 1. Used after a Past Participle, 49. 7. Used after an adjective, 57. 4, Its use, 59. 7.
Por siempre used with **jamás**, 7. 5.
Possessive adjectives, their agreement, 13. 1. Repeated before every noun, 2. Not used after a noun, 13. 9.
Possessive pronouns, 14. Their agreement, 14. 1. Used emphatically with **mismo, misma, propio, propia**, 14. 2. Used with **lo**, 14. 7.
Postrer. See **Postrero.**
Postrero, 9. 6, Rem. 1; 21. 2.
Potential, 46. 11.
Preface, pp. iii, iv.
Prepositions, 30. 1-3, 7, 9, 10. Must be repeated before every pronoun, 30. 11. Preceding a Past Participle, 49. 6, and Note. Following a verb, 56. 1, 2. Following an adjective, 57. 1-7. Preceded by an adverb, 58. 6. Requiring **de** after them, 59. p. 314. Requiring **á** after them, 59. p. 314.
Prepositional phrases, requiring **de** after them, 59. p. 314.

Present indicative, 31. 1-5. Used instead of the Future, 32. 2. Used instead of the Past Tense, 32. 2. Its formation in Regular Verbs, 32. 4, 5; in Irregular Verbs of First Conjugation, 33. 1, 2, 4; in Irregular Verbs of Second Conjugation, 34. 1-10; in Irregular Verbs of Third Conjugation, 35. 1-9. When used concurrently with the Present Subjunctive, 42. 6, 9. May govern the Conditional, 44. 8. When used instead of the Present Indicative, 47. 3.

Present Participle, or **Gerund**, ends (in Regular Verbs) in **ando** for the first conjugation, and in **iendo** for the second and third conjugation, 19. 1. Present Participle of verbs ending in **eer** and **uir**, 19. 2. Used with **estar**, 19. 3. Its use, 19. 5-7. Used with **en**, 19. 8, and Obs. Used with the Present Participle of **estar**, 19. 9. Used instead of an adverb, conjunction, or preposition, 19. 10. Always formed regularly in the Irregular Verbs of First Conjugation, 33. 3. When used after another verb, 46. 4 and Note, 8 and Note. Has two forms, the one in **ante** or **ente** and the second in **ando** or **iendo**, 48. 1. When used concurrently with the Infinitive, 48. 3. When translated in English by the conjunctions **as**, **since**, **if**, and the adverbs **when**, **while**, **whilst**, 48. 7, and by **como**, **luego**, **que**, **cuando**, **así que**, 7, Note. Its use, 48. 1-8. When ending in **endo**, 48. 9. Considered as an adjective, 49. 2.

Present subjunctive, its formation, 42. p. 229. Its use, 42. 1-11. When used concurrently with the Present Indicative, 42. 6, 9, or with the Imperfect Subjunctive, 43. 3, 4.

Preterite or **past definite**, its formation, 37. p. 203. Its use, 37. 1-4, 7. Its irregularities, 38. 1-5. Used with the Past Anterior, 39. 2, Obs. 1. When requiring the subjunctive mood, 44. 9.

Preterito perfecto, 42. 5, *a*.

Primer. See **Primero.**

Primero, when becoming **primer**, 21. 2. When used instead of **uno**, 21. 6.

Primo, when used instead of **primero**, 21. 3.

Pronombres inclíticos, 30. 1, 2, 4-6, 9; 31. 2.

Pronombres indirectos, 30, 1, 2.

Pronouns left out in conjugating a verb, 4. 6. Their respective places, 31. 1-3. Accompanying Reflexive Verbs, 52. p. 282; object, 52. 5.

Pronunciation, p. 14, § 2. Exercises p. 22, § 8.

Propio, **propia**, used with a Possessive Pronoun, 14. 2.

Punctuation, p. 22. § 7.

Que as a Relative Pronoun when used as a subject, 23. 1. When used as an Accusative, 22. 2. When accompanied by **el** (or *la*, *los*, *las*, *lo*), 23. 3. Is never suppressed, 23. 4. May precede the person or object, 23. 4, Obs. When preferable to **quien**, 23. 5, Obs. Used as an exclamation, 23. 12. Used with **haber** and an Infinitive, 27. 3. Can never be understood, and must be repeated before every subordinate verb, 42. 4 and Obs. When used with the Present Indicative, 46. 1. When governing the Infinitive, 47. 2.

Que and **cual**, 23. 9.

Qué, Interrogative Pronoun, 23. 11.

Quedar, when may be used instead of **ser**, 51. 7.

Qué de, when used, 23. 13.

Quien, used instead of *que*, 16. 7. Relating only to persons, 23. 5.

Quién, Interrogative Pronoun, 23, 11.

Quienes. See **Quien.**

Quitarse, 53. 2.

Reciprocal or **mutual action**, 52. 6.

Reflexive verbs, 52. 1-9. Being conjugated with two Personal Pronouns, 52. 1. Essentially Reflexive Verbs and Accidentally Reflexive Verbs, 52. 2, 8. Their different meaning, 52. 8, 9. Verbs being Reflexive in Spanish and not in English, 52. 3. Being conjugated with another verb, 52. p. 283 and R. 4. Expressing a reciprocal or mutual action, 52. 6. Referring to parts of the body, 53. p. 288, and R. 1. Requiring **de** after them, 56. 2.

Regular verbs, table of their termination, p. 328, 329. See **Verbs.**

Relative pronouns, 23. When requiring the Subjunctive Mood, 42. 9.

S, when suppressed in Reflexive Verbs, 52. 8.

Saber and **conocer**, 14. 9.

San. See **Santo.**

Santo, 9. 6, Rem. 2 and Obs.

Se, 31. 3, 4. Used with a passive sentence, 51. 3.

Sé and **se**, p. 20, § 6, 1.

Seasons, 21.

Señor, 9. 6.

Señora, 9. 6.

Ser, used to express possession, 14. 8. Used without adjective, is accompanied by **de**, 14. 8. Not used with **estar**, 19. 4. Used instead of **tener**, 25. 1, Obs. *a*, *b*, *c*. Its conjugation, 26. Used as Impersonal Verb, 27. 1. Imperfect Indicative, 36. pp. 199, 200. Used with Passive Verbs, 51. 1.

Ser and **estar**, 5. 1-3. Used instead of **tener**, 25. 1, Obs. *a*, *b*, *c*. Their conjugations, 26.

Ser de más edad, 25. 4, Obs.

Should, 44. 11, *2*, *4*.

Should have, 44. 7.

Should like to, 44. 11, *5*.

Si, when used in the subjunctive (or conditional), 44. 2-4; 45. 1.

Singular, when the subject is put in the singular, **61** 4–8.
Sino and pero, **18.** 5.
Solamente, when used instead of sino, **18.** 6.
Some, **4.** 8.
Sí and si, p. 20, § *6*, 1.
Spanish-English Vocabulary, p. 373.
Su, **13.** 3, 6.
Subject or nominative, **52.** 1. When subjects are not of the same person, **61.** 4. Composed of two Infinitives, **61.** 5.
Subjunctive mood, **42-45.** Present, **42.** Imperfect, **43.** Pluperfect, **43.** Conditional, **44.** Potential, **44.** 11. Future, **45.** Future Perfect, **45.** When used instead of the Infinitive, **47.** 3. Required after some prepositions, **57.** 2.
Superlative and comparative, **11, 12.**
Superlative absolute, its formation, **11.** 1–9.
Sus. See **Su.**
Suyo, **13.** 9.
Syllables, p. 19, § **5.**
Tal, when used with **cual**, **23.** 7, *c.*
Tener, **9.** 5; **17.** 1, 3. Its conjugation, **24.** Its idiomatic uses, **25.** 1, 2–5, 7, 8.
Tener and haber, **17.** 1. Their conjugations, **24.**
Tener algo malo, **25.** 5.
Tener más edad, **25.** 4, Obs.
Tener que, **18.** 2; **25.** 8.
Tercer. See **Tercero.**
Tercero, **9.** 6, Rem. 1; **21.** 2, Obs.
Tercio, when used instead of **tercero**, **21.** 3.
That of, **16.** 6.
That which, **16.** 7.
Them, how to translate it, **22.** 6.
The one which, **16.** 7.
There to be, how translated, **27.** 2.
They, sometimes not rendered in Spanish, **16.** 10.
Those of, **16.** 6.
Those which, **16.** 6.
Time of the day, how indicated, **28.** 1–2.
To, meaning **in order to**, **46.** 6.
To be wrong, **25.** 2, Obs.
Todos, **27.** p. 158.
To them, how to translate it, **22.** 6.
Transitive verb, **51.** 1, 2.
Triphthongs, p. 15, § **2.** 3.
Triple. See p. 118 (Multiplicative Numbers) and **21.** 8.
Tú, **4.** 1.
Tuyo, **13.** 9.
U and o, **18.**
Un. See **Uno.**
Uno, una, **1.** 3; **9.** 6, Rem. 1. Their plural, **20.** 1. When dropping its **o**, **1.** 3; **20.** 4. **Una** used with **la** to indicate *one o'clock*, **28.** 1.
Usted (or V.), **4.** 3 and Note, R. 6; **13.** 3, 4. Used with **le**, **30.** 7.
Ustedes (VV.), **4.** 3 and Note, R. 6; **13.** 3, 4. Used with **le**, **30.** 7.
Venir, not used with **estar**, **19.** 4.
Venir por, **35.** 5, Obs., R. 7, Obs.
Ver, Imperfect Indicative, **36.** pp. 199, 200.
Verbs, conjugated interrogatively, **4.** 4, 5. Conjugated without pronouns, **4.** 6. First conjugation ending in **ar**, second conjugation in **er**, third in **ir**, **17.** 4. Present Indicative, **32-35.** Imperfect Indicative, **36.** Past Definite *or* Preterite, **37.** Past Indefinite, **37.** Past Anterior, **39.** Pluperfect Indicative, **39.** Future and Future Anterior, **40.** Imperative Mood, **41.** Subjunctive Mood, **42-45.** Infinitive Mood, **46, 47.** Gerund *or* Present Participle, **48.** Past Participle, **49, 50.** Passive Verb, **51.** Reflexive Verbs, **52, 53.** Periphrastic Verbs, **54.** Impersonal Verbs, **55.** Government of Verbs, **56.** Requiring no preposition before the following Infinitive, **46.** p. 253. R. 1, 10, *1.* Requiring **á** before the following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, R. 3, 10, **2.** Requiring **de** before the following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, R. 2, Note, 5 and Note, 9 and Note, 10, *3*, 11. Requiring **para** before the following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, R. 6. Requiring **en** before the following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, R. 7, 10, *4.* Requiring **con** before a following Infinitive, **46.** p. 255, R. 8, 10, *5.* When used before a Gerund, **46.** 4 and Note. Having a different meaning according to the following preposition, **46.** 9 and Note. Verbs having two Past Participles, one regular, the other Irregular. Their different use, **50.** p. 274 and R. I. Defective verbs, **60.** Agreement of the verb with its subject, **61.** 1–3. Table of Terminations of the three Regular Verbs, p. 326, 327. List of the principal Irregular Verbs, pp. 328–369.
Vocabulary, Spanish-English, p. 373. English-Spanish, p. 386.
Volver á, **48.** 9, *in fine.*
Vos, **4.** 3 and Note.
Vosotros, **4.** 3 and Note; **41.** 6.
Vowels, p. 14, § **2, 1.**
Voz pasiva, **51.**
Vuestro, vuestra, **13.** 3.
We, **4.** 2.
Would, **44.** 11, *2*, *6.*
Y and é, **18.** When used with Cardinal Numbers, **20.** 3. Used to indicate the *time of the day*, **28.** 2.
Ya, **58.** 10.
You, **4.** 3 and Note.

PRACTICAL SPANISH COURSE.

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Letters and Sounds.

The Alphabet. **El Alfabeto.**

1. The Spanish alphabet as given by the Spanish Academy contains twenty-nine letters and combinations of letters.

Letters.	*Names.*	*Pronunciation.*	*Letters.*	*Names.*	*Pronunciation.*	*Letters.*	*Names.*	*Pronunciation.*
a	**a**	*ah*	**j**	**jota**	*ho'ta*	**r**	**ere**	*ai'ray*
b	**be**	*bay*	**k**	**ka**	*kah*	**rr**	**erre**	*ai'rray*
c	**ce**	*thay*	**l**	**ele**	*ai'lay*	**s**	**ese**	*ai'ssay*
ch	**che**	*chay*	**ll**	**elle**	*ai'lyay*	**t**	**te**	*tay*
d	**de**	*day*	**m**	**eme**	*ai'may*	**u**	**u**	*oo*
e	**e**	*ay*	**n**	**ene**	*ai'nay*	**v**	**ve**	*vay*
f	**efe**	*ai'fay*	**ñ**	**eñe**	*ai'nyey*	**x**	**ekis**	*ay'keys*
g	**ge**	*hay*	**o**	**o**	*oh*	**y**	**ye**	*yay*
h	**hache**	*ah'chey*	**p**	**pe**	*pay*		**y griega**	*eigreeay'ga*
i	**i**	*ee*	**q**	**cu**	*coo*	**z**	**zeta**	*thay'tah*

REMARK. — The letter **w** occurs in Spanish, but only in a few foreign words. This is true also of **k**. Ex.: *Wáshington*, *Konigsberga*, etc.

2. All these letters are of the feminine gender. Ex.: ***una b***, ***una jota***, etc.

3. They are divided, as in English, into vowels and consonants.

§ 2. The Pronunciation. La Pronunciación.

The Spanish language does not present in its pronunciation the same difficulties as the English language. We may say, in fact, that Spanish is pronounced as it is written, and written as it is pronounced, all the letters, with very few exceptions, being sounded in the words. The following rules on the way of pronouncing the vowels and consonants, together with those referring to the accentuation of the words, and to diphthongs and triphthongs, will, we trust, enable the students of the Spanish language to acquire a correct pronunciation in a comparatively limited time.

1. Vowels. Vocales.

The vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **y**, **o**, **u**. They are sounded:

a like *a* in *ah:* Málaga, papa, bata.
e like *ai* in *bail:* elemento, padre, come.
i like *ee* in *see:* mira, libra, ira.
y as a vowel like the Spanish *i:* voy, doy, **soy.**
o like *o* in *no:* obra, dorado, mono.
u like *oo* in *food:* muro, uno, común.

NOTE. — Great care must be used to pronounce the Spanish vowels very purely, and not to glide them into diphthongs, as are most English vowels.

REMARK. — **Y** is considered a vowel when it stands by itself, as in **y**, *and;* at the end of a word, as in **rey**, *king*, or of a syllable immediately followed by a consonant. But, at the beginning of a syllable, **y** is generally considered a consonant, as in **ya**, *already;* **yerba**, *herb.*

The custom of using the letter **i** instead of **y** is, however, becoming more general.

2. Diphthongs. Diptongos.

Besides the simple sounds, there are in Spanish compound sounds, in which the two sounds are distinctly heard in a single emission of the voice. The sounds of diphthongs are produced by the rapid utterance of the vowel sounds of which they are composed.

Spanish vowels are divided into two classes — *strong vowels*, **a**, **o**, **e**, and *weak vowels*, **i**, **u**.

A combination of a strong and an unaccented weak vowel, or of a weak and strong, may form a **diphthong**, in which the two sounds are pronounced in one syllable, the weak receiving little stress.

These diphthongs are twelve in number:

ai, ay:	aire, hay.	**ia**:	diablo.
au:	pausa.	**ua**:	fragua.
oi, oy:	sois, voy.	**io**:	precio.
ou:	bou.	**uo**:	arduo.
ei, ey:	veis, ley.	**ie**:	cielo.
eu:	deuda.	**ue**:	dueño.

NOTE. — In considering the combinations given in the second column, they have been included among the diphthongs. But it should be carefully noted that the weak vowels **i** and **u** when before strong vowels are really consonants and are to be pronounced as **y** and **w** respectively.

If in the above combinations the weak vowel is accented, no diphthong is formed:

continuo, continúo. hacia, hacía. ley, leí.

Two weak vowels may form a diphthong if the second be accented: **iu**: viuda. **ui, uy**: ruido.

NOTE. — If the first be accented, there is no diphthong:

flúido, Ríu.

3. Triphthongs. Triptongos.

There are four triphthongs in Spanish:

iai: preciáis, *you value.*
iei: vaciéis, *you may empty.*
uai, uay: santiguáis, *you bless;* Paraguay.
uei *or* **uey**: averigüéis, *you may search;* buey, *ox.*

4. Consonants. Consonantes.

Many of the consonants sound approximately as in English.

The following are the rules referring to those which differ materially in the two languages.

B differs somewhat from the English pronunciation. In making it the lips are not pressed together and the air is

allowed to pass between them without interruption. At the beginning of a word it is somewhat more like the English **b**:

haba, Habana, Cuba, beber, baile.

REMARK. — **B** and **V** have to-day the same pronunciation in Spain.

C has two sounds:

1. Before the vowels **e** and **i** (*ce*, *ci*) it has the sound of the English **th** in *thick*, *thin*, etc.:

cena, cima, decente, recibe, dice.

2. Before the vowels **a**, **o**, and **u** (*ca*, *co*, and *cu*), and before consonants, it sounds like **k** in English:

cola, cabo, cuna, criado, clamor.

CH is a distinct letter, double in figure, but simple in value. It has the same sound as the English **ch** in *church*, *chair*, *chin*, etc.: macho, mucho, chupa, rancho, dicha.

D is pronounced like the English *th* in *then*; somewhat stronger at the beginning of a word, and weaker at the end:

dado, dedo, hablado, Madrid, atado.

G has two sounds:

1. Before **e** and **i**, it sounds like a strongly pronounced English *h* (the German *ch* in *ach*).

gente, ingenio, agilidad, general, gengibre.

2. Elsewhere it is pronounced like *g* in *go*.

gato, gorro, gloria, grito, digno.

3. To preserve the latter sound of **g** before **e** and **i** the vowel **u** (*gu*) must be inserted before these vowels.

guerra, guía, aguijar, guirlanda, guitarra.

NOTE. — In this case the **u** is silent. When, however, the **u** is to be pronounced after the **g**, and before the letters **e** and **i**, a *diæresis* (¨) must be placed over the **u** (**ü**):

antigüedad, argüir, agüero, magüeto.

H is always mute:

hombre, horca, alharaca, hora, honor.
hueso, huevo, hueco, huerto, vihuela.

J is pronounced as a guttural before all the vowels, that is to say, like the Spanish **g** before **e** and **i**:

paja, jabón, caja, cajita, Jorge.

REMARK. — It will be remarked that this guttural sound is generally indicated by **g** before **e** and **i**, and by **j** before **a**, **o**, and **u**.

LL is liquid, and pronounced as in the English word *William*:

llaga, calle, llover, caballo, pollo.

NOTE. — A pronunciation not infrequently heard is that where **ll** has the value of English *y*. Thus *calle* becomes *caye*, *pollo* — *poyo*, etc. This is not to be followed.

Ñ has a liquid sound, and is pronounced nearly like **gn** in *mignonette*, or like the **gn** in French:

señor, enseñar, niño, sueño, añadir.

NOTE. — The mark over the **n** (˜) is called **tilde** in Spanish.

Q is found only before **ue** and **ui**, and has the sound of **k** (the *u* being silent):

parque, aquí, querido, despique, queja.

REMARK. — Whenever the diphthongs **ua**, **ue**, **uo** are preceded by the sound of **k**, and the **u** is pronounced, the accepted orthography is **cu**. Thus: **cuadro**, **cuero**, **acuoso**.

R is trilled more than in English, but with less force between two vowels or in the middle of a word:

rosa, pintura, lirio, cara, perla.

RR is more strongly trilled than is **r**:

carro, perro, guerra, cerrajo, ferrocarril.

S has always the hissing sound, like **ss** in English, as in *assembly*:

sabio, famoso, paseo, pesadumbre, rosa.

S is never followed by a consonant when commencing a word, as in the Latin words *scientia*, *Scipio*; and, in order to avoid this, the Spanish write *ciencia* (suppressing the **s**) or *Escipión* (having it preceded by an **e**).

T varies sensibly from the English pronunciation. The tip

of the tongue must be brought well forward, and rest against the upper teeth:

tonto, torto, chiquito, tirante, titiritero.

V is pronounced like the Spanish **B**.

velo, valor, voluntad, bravo, ave.

REMARK. — The Spanish Academy now recognizes this pronunciation, although it disapproves of it.

W has the sound given it in the language from which the word containing it is taken:

Wágner = Vágner, Wáshington = Uáshington.

X sounds like **cs** or **ks** in English, as in *wax:*

axioma, examinar, reflexión, exagerar, exuberancia.

OBSERVATIONS. — 1. The **x** had formerly the sound of the Spanish **j**, or **g** before **e** and **i**, but according to the modern orthography the **x** is replaced by a **g** or a **j** whenever it has the guttural sound. Thus, the following words which were formerly written *xefe, xergón, baxeza, baxar, baxo*, etc., are written to-day *jefe, jergón, bajeza, bajar, bajo*, etc.

2. The **x** at the end of such words as *relox, carcax, almaradux*, etc., which formerly changed the **x** into **j** for the plural, as *relojes, carcajes*, etc., is now replaced by a **j**; and these words are written now *reloj, carcaj, almaraduj*, etc.

NOTE. — The final **j** in *reloj* is silent.

Y at the beginning of a word or syllable is a consonant, and is more strongly pronounced than in English. It approximates the sound of *j* as in *Joe:*

yo, yesca, reyes, arroyo, haya.

Z is pronounced like the English **th** in the word *thin*, or like the Spanish **c** before **e** and **i**. This letter precedes the vowels **a, o**, and **u** (*za, zo*, and *zu*):

zapato, tizón, zumo, zorra, Múñoz.

§ 3. Variations in Pronunciation.

The pronunciation indicated above is the Castilian, the accepted national idiom. Dialectical differences in pronunciation are not uncommon in Spain itself, and are found regularly in the Spanish-American countries.

Such variations are :

C before *e* and *i* = **s**: *García* = *Garsía.*

Z = **s**: *zozobra* = *sosobra, Gómez* = *Gómes.*

Intervocalic or final **d** is generally silent: *nada* = *na(a)*, *comprado, comprao.*

B + **ue** is silent: *bueno* = *weno.*

Gu + **a** or **o** = **w**: *agua* = *awa.*

S is much weakened or disappears: *cómo está usted* = *cómo etá uté.*

Ex + consonant (other than **h**) = **es**: *excelente* = *escelente.*

Ll = **y**: *pollo* = *poyo, caballo* = *cabayo, lleno* = *yeno.*

NOTE. — In writing **j** is generally used for **g**, before **e** and **i**: *general* becomes *jeneral.*

These usages are not to be followed by the student desirous of speaking pure Spanish.

§ 4. Double Letters. Duplicación de las letras.

The Spanish Academy, conforming to the pronunciation, has suppressed double consonants when one alone is pronounced. **CC** and **nn** are the only consonants now doubled, and that only when both are sounded, as in the words *acceso, ennoblecer.*

REMARK. — Double **l** (*l'*) and double **r** (*rr*) are to be considered only as letters of the alphabet, and not as double consonants.

§ 5. Syllables. Sílabas.

There are five rules in Spanish for the division of words into syllables :

1. Whenever a single consonant is found between two vowels, it is joined to the vowel which follows it :

a-mor, a-la, flu-xión, co-fre, mu-ñe-ca.

2. The letters **ch**, **ll**, and **rr**, because simple in their pronunciation, must not be divided :

chi-co, co-che, ca-lle, ca-ba-llo, pe-rro.

3. When two or more consonants stand between vowels, the last consonant goes with the following vowel. The others are united with the preceding syllable:

es-pe-rar, abs-te-ner, in-sis-tir, sub-ver-sión.

EXCEPTION. — **l** and **r** unite with any preceding consonant except **s**, forming a consonantal diphthong:

a-blan-dar, ins-tru-ir, ca-te-dri-lla, es-tre-me-cer.

OBSERVATION. — When double **c** and double **n** occur in a word, one of these letters is placed in each syllable:

ac-ción, en-no-ble-ce.

4. In compound words formed from prepositions and other parts of speech the preposition forms a separate syllable, as in:

ab-ne-ga-ción, des-a-gra-da-ble, con-ca-vi-dad, sub-ver-sión.

5. Vowels forming a diphthong or triphthong must not be separated: gra-cio-so, guar-dia, pre-ciáis.

§ 6. Accent. Acento.

1. The Spanish word of more than one syllable receives a greater stress on one of these syllables than on the others. This is called the *tonic accent*, and varies, falling generally on any one of the last three syllables.

2. In writing (or printing) this tonic accent is represented by the *acute accent* (′). This sign is used to indicate any deviation from the accepted rules of Spanish accentuation.

3. These rules are:

All words ending in a vowel or **n** or **s** are accented on the penult: cabo, cantan, imagen, vecinos, crisis.

All words ending in a consonant (except **n** or **s**) are accented on the last syllable:

general, señor, verdad, alcatraz, cantar.

4. Any deviation from the above must have the written accent:

papá, café, rincón, atrás, línea.
ágil, azúcar, alférez, ítem, alcázar.

NOTE. — Patronymics are regularly accented on the penult:

Pérez, Sánchez, Fernández, Rodríguez, Jiménez.

5. For the purposes of accentuation a diphthong or a triphthong is always considered as one syllable.

tragedia, aire, pausa, arduo, ruido, envainan, preciáis.

Thus if the syllable requiring the written accent be a diphthong or triphthong, such accent must be placed upon the accented vowel — the strong vowel in combinations of a strong and weak, or the second in combinations of two weak :

después, piélago, preciáis, Cáucaso.

Otherwise there is no diphthong, and each vowel represents a syllable :

García, serían, reír, leído, río, flúido, continúo, Ríu.

6. The addition of the plural signs does not change the tonic accent of a word :

mujer, mujeres. empleo, empleos. máscara, máscaras.
acción, acciones. canapé, canapés.

EXCEPTION. — **Régimen** becomes **regímenes**, and **carácter, caracteres.**

7. Monosyllabic preterit forms are always accented :

dí, fuí, fué, rió, ví, vió.

8. When, in the conjugation of verbs, certain forms (generally the preterit) bear the written accent, this is preserved, even though the addition of personal pronouns would bring them under the regular rule :

fuíme, rióse, casóse, parecióme, habíanse.

The addition of one or more pronouns to a regularly accented form (and which in consequence bears no written accent) requires the insertion of such accent to indicate the new pronunciation :

gustábaume, exhortáronme, dándomelo, cómanselos.

9. The preposition **á** and the conjunctions **é, ó, ú,** are accented arbitrarily.

10. The written accent is used to distinguish two words having the same form. A list follows giving some of the principal cases :

dé (subj. of **dar**), *give.*	de, *of.*
dí (pret. of **dar**), *gave.*	di (imperat. of **decir**), *say.*
bájo, *I descend.*	bajo, *low.*
cómo, *I eat.*	como, *as.*
él, *he, him.*	el, *the.*
hé, *behold.*	he, *I have.*
mí, *me.*	mi, *my.*
más, *more.*	mas, *but.*
sé, *I know; be thou.*	se, *one's self.*
sí, *yes; one's self.*	si, *if.*
sólo, *only.*	solo, *alone.*
són, *sound.*	son, *are.*
sóbre, *exceeds* (verb).	sobre, *over* (prep).
suéño, *I dream.*	sueño, *dream* (noun).
té, *tea.*	te, *thee.*
tú, *thou.*	tu, *thy.*
úno, úna, *unite* (verb).	uno, una, *a, one.*

11. The written accent is marked on demonstrative adjectives used as substantives:

éste, ésta, *this one.*	este, *this.*
ése, ésa, *that one.*	ese, *that.*
aquél, aquélla, *that one.*	aquel, aquella, *that.*

NOTES. — 1. The neuter forms **esto, eso, aquello**, are never accented.

2. The plural of the above pronouns is also accented in accordance with the usage in the singular:

éstos,	aquéllos,	cúyos.	ésos,	cuántos,	cuáles.
éstas,	aquéllas,	cúyas.	ésas,	cuántas,	quiénes.

12. The written accent is marked on pronouns and adverbs used interrogatively or emphatically, even in indirect questions.

cómo, *how?*	como, *as.*
cuál, *which?*	cual, *which.*
cuán, *how!*	cuan, *as.*
cuándo, *when?*	cuando, *when.*
cuánto, cuánta, *how much?!*	cuanto, cuanta, *as much.*
cúyo, *whose?*	cuyo, *whose.*
dónde, *where?*	donde, *where.*
qué, *what?!*	que, *what, which.*
quién, *who?! whom?!*	quien, *who, whom.*

13. Aun is unaccented when coming before, or used without, a verb:

Aun no ha llegado.

It is accented after a verb:

No ha llegado aún.

§ 7. Punctuation. Puntuación.

1. Punctuation is in Spanish the same as in English. However, as it often happens in the Spanish language, that punctuation alone indicates the interrogative sense of the sentence, and that, if the period be long, the reader is informed too late of the interrogation, the Spanish make use of a reversed sign of interrogation (¿) at the beginning of the sentence, besides the regular sign (?) at the end of the same:

¿Serán perdidos tantos ejemplares y escarmientos como presenciamos cada día para persuadirte á mudar de vida y entrar en la senda del honor y de la virtud?

Are all those examples and experiences which we daily see, and which ought to persuade you to change your life and enter the path of honor and virtue, to be lost on you?

2. The same rule is observed with regard to the exclamation-point, and an inverted sign(¡) is placed at the beginning of an exclamative sentence:

¡Cuánta debió ser la confusión y el sentimiento de los que creyendo encontrar el oro á montones, no encontraron sino hambre, penalidades y peligros!

What must have been the confusion and regrets of those who thought they would find gold in large quantities, and met only hunger, sufferings, and dangers!

§ 8. Capital Letters. Letras mayúsculas.

The use of capital letters is the same in Spanish as in English, with the following exceptions:

1. No adjective of nationality occurring in the middle of a phrase can begin with a capital letter unless used substantively:

El ejército francés. Una Francesa.

2. Yo is always written with a small letter, except at the beginning of a sentence:

Mi hermano y yo.

3. The names of months and days are written in small letters.

§ 9. Exercises in Pronunciation.

El Universo.

I.

Con el nombre de *universo* se designa cuanto existe en el mundo entero, es decir, el sol, las estrellas, la tierra, cuanto nuestra vista alcanza en las profundidades del aire, y cuanto hay todavía más allá de lo que podemos ver. Por más pequeños que seamos, y por más débil que nuestra vista sea, podemos admirar una parte de este inmenso espectáculo. El sol, en medio de esos numerosos globos que brillan, en toda la bóveda celeste, es entre todas las obras de Dios la que se presenta con mayor lucimiento y majestad, es una eterna lumbrera colocada en el centro del mundo para esparcir la luz por todas partes, y á una distancia que no nos es posible determinar. Es como el rey de los astros.

II.

El sol, que nos parece tan pequeño, á causa de la suma distancia suya, es, según los astrónomos, mil y cuatrocientas veces mayor que la tierra.

Su figura es la de un globo; y el calor y la luz que él esparce en el universo nos dan á conocer que su materia es el fuego mismo ó que está inflamada de continuo. Le vemos parecer todas las mañanas en el oriente, elevarse en el cielo hasta medio día, bajar después y desaparecer del horizonte por el occidente. El sol no muda de sitio, y permanece en el centro del mundo para dar luz á cuanto le rodea. Se han notado ciertas manchas sobre este cuerpo tan reluciente, y se ha descubierto que él giraba sobre sí mismo, como giraría una bala atravesada con un asador. Estas manchas se descubren desde luego en una estremidad de este astro, se adelantan, se ven después en la otra estremidad, y desaparecen finalmente por detrás para volver á parecer de nuevo de allí á algún tiempo. Se ha observado que para volver al punto de que ellas partieron, le son necesarios veinte y siete días, tiempo necesario al sol por consiguiente para dar una vuelta completa

sobre el eje suyo. Se valúa que el sol dista de nosotros treinta y cuatro millones trescientas cincuenta y siete mil cuatrocientas y ochenta leguas.

III.

Se distinguen estos tan numerosos astros en estrellas fijas, porque no las vemos mudar de lugar, y en planetas ó estrellas errantes, porque giran en mayor ó menor tiempo alrededor del sol. Se presume que las estrellas fijas son unos globos luminosos semejantes al sol, y que dan luz á varios mundos muy remotos para que nuestra vista pueda alcanzarlos á ver. Si las estrellas nos parecen más pequeñas que el astro que nos dispensa el día, nace de que ellas están infinitamente más apartadas de nosotros. Juzgad de su magnitud é inmensa distancia por la que está más inmediata á la tierra, y que se llama *Sirio:* se cree que esta estrella fija dista de nosotros cuatrocientas mil veces más que el sol, y que su diámetro ó anchura es de treinta y tres millones de leguas.

Los planetas son en número de siete y se diferencian de las estrellas fijas, á causa de que giran alrededor del sol, y no tienen luz de sí mismos: aquélla con que brillan, les viene del sol. Se presume que estos inmensos globos son, al modo de la tierra, unos mundos habitados.

IV.

La tierra es redonda como una bola. Sus montañas y valles, que nos parecen tan considerables, pueden compararse, cuando más, con las desigualdades que se ven en la cáscara de una naranja, y que no impiden que este fruto tenga una figura redonda.

Ella gira sobre sí misma como una bola que está atravesada con un asador de hierro. Este movimiento, que se llama rotación, le proporciona alternativamente el día y la noche; es decir, que la parte que está vuelta hacia el sol goza de la luz, mientras que la parte opuesta está en la obscuridad. Pero, como la tierra da esta vuelta sobre sí misma en veinte y cuatro horas, resulta de esto, que ella tiene en este espacio de tiempo el día y la noche.

La tierra, además de este movimiento de todos las días, tiene otro que se ejecuta en un año; ella da una vuelta inmensa alrededor del sol. Este último movimiento produce las diferentes estaciones del año.

Lección I. Lesson I.

ARTICLES, DIFFERENT FORMS.

El, La, Lo, } *the* **Un, Una,** } *a, an, one.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
El hombre tiene el libro.	The man has the book.
La mujer tiene la mesa.	The woman has the table.
¿ Quién tiene la pluma ?	Who has the pen ?
El padre tiene un caballo.	The father has a horse.
La madre tiene una casa.	The mother has a house.
El general es prudente.	The general is prudent.
La señora es amable.	The lady is amiable.

Vocabulario.		**Vocabulary.**
El amigo, *the friend.*	**El niño,** *the child.*	**Es,** *is.*
El caballo, *the horse.*	**El panadero,** *the baker.*	**Luisa,** *Louisa.*
El caballero, *the gentleman.*	**El tío,** *the uncle.*	**Mi,** *my.*
El dinero, *the money.*	**La casa,** *the house.*	**Muy,** *very.*
El hermano, *the brother.*	**La hermana,** *the sister.*	**Pobre,** *poor.*
El hijo, *the son.*	**La hija,** *the daughter.*	**Quien,** *who, whom.*
El jardín, *the garden.*	**La llave,** *the key.*	**Tiene,** *has.*
El libro, *the book.*	**Carlos,** *Charles.*	**Y,** *and.*

Exercise 1.

1. El niño tiene un libro. 2. Carlos es mi hermano. 3. Luisa es mi hermana. 4. ¿ Quién tiene la llave ? 5. Mi amigo tiene la llave y la pluma. 6. El caballo es grande. 7. Mi tío es pobre. 8. La casa es grande. 9. El panadero tiene un hijo y una hija. 10. Mi amigo tiene una casa y un jardín. 11. El jardín es muy grande. 12. El caballero tiene el dinero.

Exercise 2.

1. **My** house is very large. 2. My brother has a horse. 3. The gentleman has a house. 4. The baker is my friend. 5. The general is very poor. 6. Charles has my pen. 7. My table is very large. 8. My uncle is very prudent. 9. The daughter has a house, and the son has a garden. 10. The woman is very amiable. 11. My brother is a child. 12. The book is very large.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. There are three genders in the Spanish language: the **masculine,** the **feminine,** and the **neuter.**

The definite article has in the singular a distinct form for each gender: masculine **el**; feminine, **la**; neuter, **lo**:

El padre, *the father.* La madre, *the mother.* Lo bueno, *the good.*

Remarks. — 1. The neuter gender is only applicable to adjectives (*números adjetivos*) taken in an unlimited or indefinite sense, as: **lo bueno,** *the good* or *what is good;* **lo peor,** *the worst* or *what is worst;* etc.

This neuter gender, which has no *plural*, is therefore never applied to persons or things, but only to adjectives *taken substantively*, and to substantives *taken adjectively:* **Todo era grande en San Luis, lo rey, lo santo, lo capitán,** *everything was great in St. Louis* (Louis IX.), *the king, the saint, the captain.*

2. The neuter article is not placed indifferently before all adjectives taken substantively. Thus, in the following sentences: **El malo será castigado,** *the wicked shall be punished;* **El azul de este paño es demasiado oscuro,** *the blue of this cloth is too dark,* — we could not make use of the neuter article **lo,** because those adjectives are taken substantively and are sufficiently determinate. It is evident, in fact, that in the first sentence, the word **hombre,** *man,* is understood before **malo,** *wicked;* and in the second sentence, the word **color,** *color,* before **azul,** *blue.*

2. Although the article **el** belongs only to the masculine gender, it may be placed, for the sake of euphony, before feminine nouns beginning with an accented **a**: **el agua,** *the water;* **el alma,** *the soul;* **el ala,** *the wing;* **el águila,** *the eagle;* **el ave,** *the bird.* It must be observed, however, that this change of article is only admitted in the singular, and that we must say in the plural **las aguas, las almas. las alas,** etc.

Adjectives accompanying the singular of such nouns must be placed in the feminine: **el agua es fría**, *the water is cold;* etc.

The same rules are to be observed in reference to words beginning with an **h** followed by an accented **a**, as: **el hacha es pesada**, *the axe is heavy;* **las hachas**, *the axes;* etc.

Nouns like **América**, *America;* **abeja**, *bee;* **alegría**, *joy;* **habitación**, *habitation;* etc., take the feminine article **la**, because the first **a** is not accented: **La América**, **la habitación**, etc.

3. The indefinite article **a**, **an**, or the numeral **one**, is rendered by **un** before a masculine noun (the **o** of **uno** being dropped before a noun), and by **una** before a feminine noun:

Un hermano, *a brother.*	Una hermana, *a sister.*
Un libro, *a book.*	Una mesa, *a table.*

NOTE. — The indefinite article is not used before a word in the predicate expressing *condition*, *quality*, or *character:*

Soy Americano.	*I am an American.*
Es negociante.	*He is a trader.*
Son generales.	*They are generals.*

4. Adjectives should always be repeated before the nouns they qualify:

El padre y la madre.	*The father and (the) mother.*
La casa y el jardín.	*The house and (the) garden.*
El buen lápiz y la buena pluma.	*The good pencil and (the good) pen.*

NOTE. — Some writers do not always observe this rule.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE GENDERS.

5. Nouns denoting men, or their rank, titles, and professions are masculine, irrespective of ending:

El papa, *the pope.*	El profeta, *the prophet.*
El cura, *the priest.*	El alguacil, *the constable.*

Those denoting women or their condition are feminine:

La reina, *the queen.*	La emperatriz, *the empress.*

6. The gender of nouns may often be known by their terminations (except as above):

1. Nouns ending in **o** are masculine:

Except **mano**, *hand;* **nao**, *vessel;* **seo**, *church.*

2. Nouns ending in **a** are generally feminine:

Except **día**, *day*; **mapa**, *map*.

EXCEPTIONS. — Those ending in **-a** derived from the Greek neuter, as **clima**, *climate*; **idioma**, *idiom*; **poema**, *poem*; **dilema**, *dilemma*; **diploma**, *diploma*; **dogma**, *dogma*; etc.

3. Nouns ending in **-d, -ión, -umbre, -ie** are feminine:

La puridad, *the purity.*	La cuestión, *the question.*
La libertad, *the liberty.*	La nación, *the nation.*
La virtud, *the virtue.*	La serie, *the series.*

La lumbre, *the fire.*

GENERAL RULE FOR LATIN SCHOLARS. — Nouns derived from the Latin generally preserve in Spanish the same gender they have in Latin, except that those which are neuter in Latin are masculine in Spanish.

4. Compound nouns generally take the gender of the second word if the same is in the singular. Thus, the words **aguamiel**, *honey and water*, **contrahaz**, *wrong side*, are feminine; whilst **archilaud**, *a kind of lute*, and **portafusil**, *gunbelt*, are masculine.

5. Compound words of which the second word is in the plural are generally masculine, even if the second word is feminine, as **cortaplumas**, *penknife*; **mondadientes**, *toothpick*; **sacabotas**, *bootjack*; etc.

OBSERVATION ON OTHER TERMINATIONS. — Nouns having other terminations are subject to so many exceptions that it is impossible to establish satisfactory rules in regard to them.

Thus, **mar**, *sea*, is of both genders, but words compounded with *mar* are always feminine, as **bajamar**, *low tide*; **pleamar**, *high tide*. **Mar**, joined to a proper noun, should be in the masculine, as **el mar Báltico**, *the Baltic sea*, etc.

Lección II. Lesson II.

PLURAL.

Los, plural of **el**, } *the.*
Las, plural of **la**, }

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
El caballo es grande.	The horse is large.
Los caballos son grandes.	The horses are large.

Enrique tiene un libro.	Henry has a book.
María tiene dos libros.	Mary has two books.
Mi tío tiene tres casas.	My uncle has three houses.
El general tiene cuatro caballos.	The general has four horses.
Las señoras son amables.	The ladies are amiable.
Los niños tienen dos plumas.	The children have two pens.
El general es rico.	The general is rich.
Los generales son ricos.	The generals are rich.
El reloj [1] es hermoso.	The watch is fine.
Los relojes son hermosos.	The watches are fine.
El Inglés es bueno.	The Englishman is good.
Los Ingleses son buenos.	The Englishmen are good.
El paraguas es grande.	The umbrella is large.
Los paraguas son grandes.	The umbrellas are large.
El juez es justo.	The judge is just.
Los jueces son justos.	The judges are just.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El abanico, *the fan.*	**Cuatro,** *four.*
El Americano, *the American.*	**De,** *of, from.*
El centavo, *the cent.*	**Dos,** *two.*
El cuarto, *the room.*	**Enrique,** *Henry.*
El Francés, *the Frenchman.*	**Hermoso,** *handsome, fine.*
El Inglés, *the Englishman.*	**Industrioso,** *industrious.*
El lápiz, *the pencil.*	**Joven,** *young.*
El muchacho, *the boy.*	**Juan,** *John.*
El oro, *the gold.*	**Negro,** *black.*
El pájaro, *the bird.*	**Pequeño.** *small, little.*
El perro, *the dog.*	**Son,** *are.*
El sombrero, *the hat.*	**Tienen,** *have.*
El teatro, *the theater.*	**Tres,** *three.*
La ciudad, *the city.*	**Vigilante,** *watchful.*
La muchacha, *the girl.*	**Ya,** *already.*

Exercise 3.

1. Carlos y Enrique son los amigos de mi hermano. 2. El general tiene tres hermosos caballos. 3. Los sombreros son negros. 4. Los muchachos tienen dos centavos. 5. Las señoras tienen un abanico. 6. Los Franceses y los Ingleses son amigos. 7. Los pájaros son hermosos. 8. La señora tiene dos hijos y tres hijas. 9. Mi amigo tiene dos hermanas. 10. Los Americanos son industriosos. 11. Los dos

[1] The final consonant is not pronounced.

amigos son pobres. 12. Las tres muchachas son amables. 13. Los perros son vigilantes. 14. Los lápices son de oro. 15. ¿Quién tiene los libros? 16. Juan tiene los libros y las plumas. 17. Las hijas de mi amigo son jóvenes. 18. Los cuartos de la casa son pequeños. 19. Las hijas de mi tío son ya grandes. 20. Los teatros de la ciudad son hermosos.

Exercise 4.

1. The two horses are black. 2. The brothers of my friend are young. 3. The two gentlemen are English. 4. Henry has two handsome dogs. 5. The friends of my brother are very poor. 6. The city has three theaters. 7. Charles and John are friends. 8. The American has two brothers and three sisters. 9. My uncle has four houses. 10. The two Frenchmen are very amiable. 11. The fans of the ladies are very fine. 12. The English have handsome horses. 13. The houses of the city are very large. 14. The generals are very prudent. 15. The hats are black. 16. The boys have three pencils. 17. John and Henry are small. 18. The rooms of my house are large. 19. The bakers are poor. 20. Charles has two pencils.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The plural of the article **el** is **los**, and that of the article **la** is **las.**

2. Nouns ending in an *unaccented* vowel form their plural by adding **s**:

El hermano, *the brother;*	La hermana, *the sister.*
Los hermanos, *the brothers;*	Las hermanas, *the sisters.*

3. Nouns ending in *accented* **e**, **o**, **u** (also **pie**), add **s**:

El café, *the coffee;*	Los cafés, *the coffees.*
El pie, *the foot;*	Los pies, *the feet.*
El fricandó, *the fricandeau;*	Los fricandós, *the fricandeaus.*
El tisú, *the tissue;*	Los tisús, *the tissues.*

4. Nouns ending in a consonant, in **y**, or in *accented* **a**, **i**, form their plural by adding **es**;

El general, *the general;*	Los generales, *the generals.*
La mujer, *the woman;*	Las mujeres, *the women.*
El alelí, *the gilliflower;*	Los alelíes, *the gilliflowers.*
El albalá, *the certificate;*	Los albaláes, *the certificates.*
El rey, *the king;*	Los reyes, *the kings.*

Papá, *papa;* **mamá**, *mamma;* **sofá**, *sofa*, take **s** for the plural.

5. Nouns ending in **s**, of which the last syllable is *unaccented*, remain unchanged.

Those which have the last syllable *accented* add **es**:

El lunes, *the Monday;*	Los lunes, *the Mondays.*
La hipótesis, *the hypothesis;*	Las hipótesis, *the hypotheses* (pl.).
El Francés, *the Frenchman;*	Los Franceses, *the Frenchmen.*
El Inglés, *the Englishman;*	Los Ingleses, *the Englishmen.*
El dios, *the god;*	Los dioses, *the gods.*

6. Nouns ending in **z** change this letter into **c**, and add **es** for the plural:

El juez, *the judge;*	Los jueces, *the judges.*
La luz, *the light;*	Las luces, *the lights.*

Observation. — Except in patronymics:

Pérez, los Pérez.	Jiménez, los Jiménez.

7. Proper nouns follow the same rules as common nouns:

Los Cervantes y los Mendozas, *The Cervantes and Mendozas.*

8. Generally only the second part of a compound noun is put in the plural:

El ferrocarril, *the railway;*	Los ferrocarriles, *the railways.*

9. Adjectives, as will be seen hereafter, agree in gender and number with the nouns which they qualify.

The plural of adjectives is formed like the plural of nouns:

El muchacho es bueno,	*The boy is good.*
Los muchachos son buenos,	*The boys are good.*

10. In Spanish, as well as in English, there are nouns which are only used in the singular, and others which have no singular, as: **albricias**, *presents;* **angarillas**, *cruet stands;* **víveres**, *provisions*, etc.

Note. — There are a few words which have or have not any singular according to their meaning, as **esposas**, *handcuffs;* which is not the plural of **esposa**, *wife;* **grillos**, *irons;* which is not the plural of **grillo**, *cricket;* and a few others.

Lección III.

Lesson III.

CONTRACTION OF PREPOSITION WITH ARTICLE.

De, *of, from.*
Del, masc. sing.
De la, fem. sing.
De los, masc. pl.
De las, fem. pl.
} *of the, from the.*

Á, *to, at.*
Al, masc. sing.
Á la, fem. sing.
Á los, masc. pl.
Á las, fem. pl.
} *to the, at the.*

Declinación.

Masculine Singular.

El hombre, *the man.*
Del hombre, *of* or *from the man.*
Al hombre, *to* or *at the man.*

Feminine Singular.

La mujer, *the woman.*
De la mujer, *of* or *from the woman.*
Á la mujer, *to* or *at the woman.*

Declension.

Masculine Plural.

Los hombres, *the men.*
De los hombres, *of* or *from the men.*
Á los hombres, *to* or *at the men.*

Feminine Plural.

Las mujeres, *the women.*
De las mujeres, *of* or *from the women.*
Á las mujeres, *to* or *at the women.*

Ejemplos.

El sombrero del muchacho es nuevo.
La hermana de mi amigo es pobre.
El padre de Juan es rico.
Los libros de los muchachos son buenos.
Las puertas de las casas son grandes.
Carlos sale de la casa.
El cazador viene del bosque.
La lluvia viene de las nubes.
El rico da dinero al pobre.
La madre escribe á la hija.
El general habla á los soldados.
La señora habla á las muchachas.
El hombre llama á la puerta.
Juan habla del hombre y de la mujer.
Enrique escribe al padre y á la madre.

Examples.

The boy's hat is new.
My friend's sister is poor.
John's father is rich.
The boys' books are good.
The doors of the houses are large.
Charles comes out of the house.
The hunter comes from the wood.
The rain comes from the clouds.
The rich man gives money to the poor man.
The mother writes to the daughter.
The general speaks to the soldiers.
The lady speaks to the girls.
The man knocks at the door.
John speaks of the man and woman.
Henry writes to the father and mother.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El árbol, *the tree.*	**La carne**, *the meat.*
El bosque, *the wood.*	**La cereza**, *the cherry.*
El buque, *the vessel, the ship.*	**La cocinera**, *the cook.*
El carnicero, *the butcher.*	**La madre**, *the mother.*
El carpintero, *the carpenter.*	**La manzana**, *the apple.*
El cazador, *the hunter.*	**Con**, *with.*
El comerciante, *the merchant.*	**Da**, *gives.*
El consejo, *the advice.*	**Dulce**, *sweet.*
El dependiente, *the clerk.*	**Escribe**, *writes.*
El dinero, *the money.*	**Hábil**, *skillful.*
El habitante, *the inhabitant.*	**Nuevo**, *new.*
El médico, *the physician.*	**Rico**, *rich.*
El Norte, *the North.*	**Sale**, *goes out* or *comes out.*
El padre, *the father.*	**Verde**, *green.*
El príncipe, *the prince.*	**Viene**, *comes.*

Exercise 5.

1. El médico del príncipe es mi hermano. 2. La señora de la casa es mi hermana. 3. La madre da un consejo á la hija. 4. ¿ Quién tiene el libro de Carlos ? 5. El hijo del panadero tiene el libro y la pluma de Carlos. 6. ¿ Quién tiene la llave de la casa ? 7. Mi padre tiene la llave de la casa y del jardín. 8. La casa del padre de Juan es muy grande. 9. Los habitantes de la ciudad son industriosos. 10. El Inglés es el padre de las muchachas. 11. Los caballos de los Franceses son hermosos. 12. El cazador sale del bosque con los perros. 13. Los hermanos del general son pobres. 14. El dependiente escribe al comerciante. 15. Los muchachos del Francés tienen manzanas. 16. Las cerezas del jardín son dulces. 17. El carnicero vende la carne á las cocineras. 18. El buque viene del Norte. 19. Los Americanos son amigos de los Franceses. 20. La hija del carpintero escribe á las amigas de mi madre. 21. La madre del carpintero es cocinera en la casa del comerciante. 22. La madre del médico da dinero al carnicero. 23. Los buques de los Americanos son nuevos. 24. El padre del príncipe es rico. 25. El dependiente da cerezas á mi hijo. 26. ¿ Quién da dinero al carpintero ? 27. El comerciante da dinero al hermano del carpintero. 28. Las manzanas del Norte son dulces.

Exercise 6.

1. Charles's brother is my father's clerk. 2. Louisa writes to my father and mother. 3. The horses of the Englishmen are large. 4. The apples of the garden are sweet. 5. Henry writes to the two friends. 6. The dog comes [out] of the garden. 7. The sons of the physicians are clerks. 8. The generals of the prince are very prudent. 9. The horses of the general are black. 10. Who gives money to the sons of the Frenchman? 11. My father gives money to the sons and (to the) daughters of the Frenchman and of the Englishman. 12. The trees of the forest are green. 13. The merchants of the city are very rich. 14. The ship of Charles's father is new. 15. The sailors of the vessel are skillful. 16. My friend's sisters are very young 17. My uncle has the key of the houses. 18. Charles and Henry are the friends of the two Americans. 19. Who has the fans of the ladies? 20. Louisa's sisters have the fans. 21. The advice of the physician to the merchant is good. 22. The carpenter is the brother of the butcher. 23. The mother gives money to the cook for (para) the butcher. 24. The dog of the hunter is good. 25. The brothers of the clerk are rich.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Of the, from the, are rendered in Spanish in the masculine singular by **del** (instead of *de el*), while **to the, at the,** also in the masculine singular, are rendered by **al** (instead of *á el*):

El libro del muchacho,	*The boy's book* (the book *of the* boy).
El general habla al soldado,	*The general speaks to the soldier.*

2. Nouns undergo in Spanish no change of form in the possessive case, possession being indicated by placing the name of the object possessed before **de,** *of;* and the name of the possessor *after* it:

El libro de Carlos,	*Charles's book* (the book *of* Charles).
La pluma de la muchacha,	*The girl's pen* (the pen *of the* girl).
La casa del hijo del médico,	*The physician's son's house* (the house *of the* son *of the* physician).

Lección IV. Lesson IV.

PRONOUNS.

Verb, **tener**, *to have.*

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Yo,	*I.*	**Nosotros, nosotras, nos,**	*we.*
Tú,	*thou.*	**Vosotros, vosotras, vos (usted,**[1] **ustedes**[1]**),**	*you.*
Él,	*he.*	**Ellos,**	*they,* masc.
Ella,	*she.*	**Ellas,**	*they,* fem.

Present Tense of **tener**, *to have.*

Affirmatively.		**Interrogatively.**	
Yo tengo,	*I have.*	¿ Tengo yo ?	*have I?*
Tú tienes,	*thou hast.*	¿ Tienes tú ?	*hast thou?*
Él tiene,	*he has.*	¿ Tiene él ?	*has he?*
Ella tiene,	*she has.*	¿ Tiene ella ?	*has she?*
Usted tiene,	*you have.*	¿ Tiene usted ?	*have you?*
Nosotros tenemos,	*we have.*	¿ Tenemos nosotros ?	*have we?*
Vosotros tenéis,	*you have.*	¿ Tenéis vosotros ?	*have you?*
Ellos tienen,	*they* (masc.) *have.*	¿ Tienen ellos ?	*have they* (masc.) ?
Ellas tienen,	*they* (fem.) *have.*	¿ Tienen ellas ?	*have they* (fem.) ?
Ustedes tienen,	*you have.*	¿ Tienen ustedes ?	*have you?*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿ Tiene el hombre dinero ? / ¿ Tiene dinero el hombre ?	Has the man money ?
El tiene dinero y crédito.	He has money and credit.
¿ Qué tiene V. ?	What have you ?
Tengo oro y plata.	I have gold and silver.
¿ Qué tiene la mujer ?	What has the woman ?
Ella tiene manzanas y peras.	She has apples and pears.
¿ Qué tienen VV. ?	What have you ?

[1] **Usted,** *sing.*, **ustedes,** *pl.*, were abbreviated in the following way : **V^m.** **V^md.** or **V^d.** (for the singular), and **V^ms.** **V^mds.** or **V^ds.** (for the plural) ; but at present **usted** is represented by **V.**, and **ustedes** by **VV.**

Tenemos pan y queso.	We have bread and cheese.
¿ Tienen fusiles los soldados ?	Have the soldiers any guns ?
Tienen fusiles y sables.	They have guns and sabers.
¿ Tengo yo vino ?	Have I any wine ?
V. tiene poco vino.	You have little wine.
¿ Quién tiene las plumas ?	Who has the pens ?
Las muchachas tienen las plumas.	The girls have the pens.

Interrogative Form used Affirmatively.

Tiene V. un hermoso caballo.	You have a fine horse.
Tienen los Ingleses muchos buques.	The English have many ships.
Tiene la señora dos hijos.	The lady has two sons.
Tiene Carlos un lápiz y una pluma.	Charles has a pencil and a pen.

Vocabulario.

El amigo, *the friend.*	**La mesa**, *the table.*
El crédito, *the credit.*	**La pera**, *the pear.*
El fusil, *the gun.*	**La plata**, *the silver.*
El hombre, *the man.*	**Algo**, *something, anything.*
El pan, *the bread.*	**Aquí**, *here.*
El pollo, *the chicken.*	**Bueno**, *good.*
El queso, *the cheese.*	**Con**, *with.*
El sable, *the saber.*	**En**, *in.*
El vino, *the wine.*	**Hoy**, *to-day.*

Vocabulary.

Mucho, a, *much.*	
Muchos, as, *many.*	
No, *no.*	
Pero, *but.*	
Poco, adv., *little.*	
Qué, *what.*	
Señor, *sir, Mr.*	
Sí, *yes.*	
Sobre, *on, upon.*	

Exercise 7.

1. ¿ Tiene V. algo sobre la mesa ? 2. Sí, señor, tengo un libro sobre la mesa. 3. ¿ Tiene carne el carnicero ? 4. Tiene carne y pollos. 5. ¿ Tiene el Inglés una casa en la ciudad ? 6. Él tiene dos casas aquí. 7. ¿ Tienen VV. mucho dinero ? 8. Tenemos poco dinero, pero mucho crédito. 9. ¿ Qué tiene la hija del panadero ? 10. Ella tiene manzanas y peras. 11. ¿ Qué tienen los muchachos ? 12. Tienen cerezas. 13. ¿ Á quién escribe Carlos ? 14. Él escribe á mi amigo. 15. ¿ Habla V. á los muchachos ? 16. No, señor, mi hermano habla á los muchachos y á las muchachas. 17. ¿ Con quién sale V.? 18. Con mi padre y mi madre. 19. ¿ Tiene el general un hijo ? 20. Él tiene un hijo y dos hijas. 21. Los comerciantes tienen buenos dependientes. 22. ¿ Qué da V. al pobre hombre ? 23. Pan y dinero. 24. Los cazadores tienen buenos perros. 25. ¿ Tienen buenos fusiles ? 26. Sí, tienen.

Exercise 8.

1. Have the generals good horses? 2. They have very good horses. 3. Has the Englishman much money? 4. He has very little. 5. Have the merchants much wine? 6. They have very little wine. 7. Are you Charles's friend? 8. No, Charles is my brother's friend. 9. Have you (any) chickens to-day? 10. Yes, sir, we have chickens and meat. 11. The English have many ships, and the French have many soldiers. 12. My brother has a horse, and I have a dog. 13. We have a very fine theater in the city. 14. Has my brother (any) books on the table? 15. Yes, sir, he has books, pens, and pencils on the table. 16. Do you go out to-day? 17. No, sir, but my brother goes out with my sister. 18. What do you give to Charles? 19. A handsome hat. 20. The baker's sons have a room in my house. 21. To whom do you write? 22. To Henry's brother. 23. We have two dogs in the garden. 24. Have the children a book? 25. They have two.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The pronoun **tú**, *thou*, is used more frequently in Spanish than in English. It indicates *familiarity*, *affection*, *intimacy*, and is therefore frequently used among relations, intimate friends, and older persons when addressing children, etc.:

¿ Qué tienes tú, Juanito ? *What have you, Johnny?*

2. We is rendered in Spanish by **nos** and **nosotros**, *masc.*; **nosotras**, *fem.*; but **nos** is used in the nominative case only by sovereigns, dignitaries, and tribunals in Church and State, in their official capacity:

Nos, D. N., Obispo de N. . . *We, D. N., Bishop of N. . .*
Nos los Inquisitores. . . *We the Inquisitors. . .*

NOTE. — In the usual style, **nosotros**, *masc.*, **nosotras**, *fem.*, is always used.

3. You is rendered in Spanish by **vos**, **vosotros**, *masc.*, **vosotras**, *fem.*; and also by **usted** (or **V.**) for the singular of both genders, and **ustedes** (or **VV.**) for the plural.

Vos is used only in elevated style, or when addressing the Deity, saints, kings, and sovereigns when the title of Majesty is omitted:

De vos espero alivio, Señor,	*From thee I expect relief, O Lord.*
Á vos elevo mis súplicas, Rey y Señor,	*To thee I raise my prayers, King and Lord.*
Vos, Señor, podéis remediar mi desgracia,	*Thou, O Lord, canst relieve my misery.*

Vosotros is used by orators and speakers when addressing their auditors.

Usted (**V.** or **Vd.**) in the singular, and **ustedes** (**VV.**, **Vs.**, or **Vds.**) in the plural is the only form of direct address that a stranger is likely to use. It is the universal conversational expression, since **vosotros** is never used, and **tú** marks a decided intimacy.

Usted is a contraction of **vuestra merced**, *your grace*, and requires the verb to be in the third person singular, as **ustedes** requires the third person plural:

Usted tiene, *you* (sing.) *have.*	**Ustedes tienen**, *you* (plur.) *have.*
Usted es, *you* (sing.) *are.*	**Ustedes son**, *you* (plur.) *are.*
Usted da, *you* (sing.) *give.*	**Ustedes dan**, *you* (plur.) *give.*

NOTE. — We use, in fact, the same form of expressing ourselves in English when we say, speaking to a judge, an archbishop, etc.: *Your Honor knows . . . ; your Grace is . . . ;* etc., instead of the plain and usual: *You know . . . ; you are . . . ;* etc.

4. Verbs are conjugated interrogatively by placing the verb before its subject. This takes place in all cases of interrogation, as is the case with *to have, to be, to will,* etc.:

¿ Tengo yo ?	*Have I ?*
¿ Tiene el hombre ?	*Has the man ?*
¿ Sabe el padre ?	*Does the father know* (lit. *knows the father*) *?*
¿ Van los muchachos ?	*Do the boys go ?*
¿ Qué dice la señora ?	*What does the lady say ?*
¿ Qué decían los hombres ?	*What did the men say ?*
¿ Sabe V. cuando viene mi padre ?	*Do you know when my father comes* (lit. *when comes my father*) *?*

5. In interrogative sentences it is considered an elegant way of expressing one's self, to place the object before the subject when the latter is not a pronoun:

¿ Tiene dinero el hombre ?	*Has the man any money?*
¿ Es bueno el vino ?	*Is the wine good ?*

6. Each person of the verb having generally in Spanish, as in Latin, a different termination, the accompanying pronouns may be and are generally left out in conversation, and even in the conjugation, when the sentence is otherwise sufficiently clear. But **usted** and **ustedes** should not be left out, however, as they accompany the verb in the third person singular and third person plural, as well as **él**, *he ;* **ella**, *she ;* and **ellos** (masc.), **ellas** (fem.), *they*, and as their omission might create confusion :

Tengo, *I have.*	Tenemos, *we have.*
Tienes, *thou hast.*	Tienen, *they have.*
Sale, *he* or *she goes out.*	Salen, *they go out.*

Observation. — In interrogative sentences it is also better to preserve the pronouns.

7. As a sentence may be construed in different ways in Spanish, as will be seen hereafter, the interrogative form may often be found in affirmative sentences :

Tiene V. razón,	*You are right.*
Es V. muy bueno,	*You are very kind.*
Habla V. muy bien,	*You speak very well.*

8. *Some* or *any* before nouns is generally not expressed in Spanish :

¿ Tiene V. vino ?	*Have you* (any) *wine?*
No tenemos queso,	*We have n't* (any) *cheese.*

Observation. — When *some* or *any* stands alone, **alguno, alguna, algunos, algunas** is used:

Tengo alguno,	*I have some* (vino).
Tiene algunas,	*He has some* (peras).

Lección V. Lesson V.

Verbs **ser** and **estar**, *to be*.

Present Tense of **ser**, *to be*.

Affirmatively.		Interrogatively.	
Yo soy,	*I am.*	¿ Soy yo ?	*am I?*
Tú eres,	*thou art.*	¿ Eres tú ?	*art thou?*
Él es,	*he is.*	¿ Es él ?	*is he?*
Ella es,	*she is.*	¿ Es ella ?	*is she?*
Usted es,	*you are.*	¿ Es usted ?	*are you?*
Nosotros somos,	*we are.*	¿ Somos nosotros ?	*are we?*
Vosotros sois,	*you are.*	¿ Sois vosotros ?	*are you?*
Ellos son,	*they* (masc.) *are.*	¿ Son ellos ?	*are they* (masc.) ?
Ellas son,	*they* (fem.) *are.*	¿ Son ellas ?	*are they* (fem.) ?
Ustedes son,	*you are.*	¿ Son ustedes ?	*are you?*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
La vida es corta.	Life is short.
Somos mortales.	We are mortal.
Mi padre es médico.	My father is *a* physician.
Mis hermanos son pintores.	My brothers are painters.
Carlos es bueno.	Charles is good.
Juan y Enrique son malos.	John and Henry are bad.
El profesor es muy docto.	The professor is very learned.
V. es muy alto.	You are very tall.
Los muchachos son pequeños.	The boys are small.
María es mi hermana.	Mary is my sister.
La madre es vieja.	The mother is old.
El padre es ciego.	The father is blind.
La muchacha es bonita.	The girl is pretty.
La leche es blanca[1].	Milk is white.
El plomo es pesado.	Lead is heavy.
El reloj es de oro.	The watch is of gold.
Los candeleros son de plata.	The candlesticks are of silver.
El dinero es mío.	The money is mine.

[1] See L. 8.

La casa es del médico.	The house belongs to the physician.
Este vino es de España.	This wine is from Spain.
La flor es para mi hermana.	The flower is for my sister.
La máquina es para copiar cartas.	The machine is to copy letters.
¿ Quién es V. ?	Who are you ?
El amor de Dios es el principio de la sabiduría.	The love of God is the beginning of wisdom.

Present Tense of **estar**, *to be.*

Affirmatively.		**Interrogatively.**	
Yo estoy,	*I am.*	¿ Estoy yo ?	*am I ?*
Tú estás,	*thou art.*	¿ Estás tú ?	*art thou ?*
Él está,	*he is.*	¿ Está él ?	*is he ?*
Ella está,	*she is.*	¿ Está ella ?	*is she ?*
Usted está,	*you are.*	¿ Está usted ?	*are you ?*
Nosotros estamos,	*we are.*	¿ Estamos nosotros ?	*are we ?*
Vosotros estáis,	*you are.*	¿ Estáis vosotros ?	*are you ?*
Ellos están,	*they* (masc.) *are.*	¿ Están ellos ?	*are they* (masc.) ?
Ellas están,	*they* (fem.) *are.*	¿ Están ellas ?	*are they* (fem.) ?
Ustedes están,	*you are.*	¿ Están ustedes ?	*are you ?*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Mi hermana está triste.	My sister is sad.
Yo estoy muy contento.	I am very pleased.
El café está frío.	The coffee is cold.
La carne está asada.	The meat is roasted.
Los muchachos están en la calle.	The boys are in the street.
Mi amigo está en París.	My friend is in Paris.
Carlos está enfermo.	Charles is sick.
¿ Dónde está mi sombrero ?	Where is my hat ?
El sombrero esta de moda.	The hat is in the fashion.

Ser and **estar** compared.

Ser bueno, *to be good.*	Estar bueno, *to be well* (in health).
Ser malo, *to be bad* (wicked).	Estar malo, *to be ill* (sick).
Ser vivo, *to be lively.*	Estar vivo, *to be alive.*
Ser cansado, *to be tiresome.*	Estar cansado, *to be tired.*

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El abogado, *the lawyer.*	**Bueno**, *good, well.*	**Lejos**, *far.*
El campo, *the country.*	**Cerrado**, *closed, shut.*	**Londres**, *London.*
La calle, *the street.*	**Contento**, *pleased, satisfied.*	**Malo**, *bad, ill.*
La puerta, *the door.*	**Donde**, *where.*	**Nadie**, *nobody, no one.*
Agrio, *sour.*	**Gracias**, *thank you.*	**Triste**, *sad.*
Ahora, *now.*	**Joven**, *young.*	**¿Sabe V.?** *do you know?*

Exercise 9.

1. Los dos hermanos de Carlos están ahora en París. 2. ¿ Quién es V. ? 3. Soy el hijo del médico. 4. ¿ Dónde están los libros ? 5. Están sobre la mesa en mi cuarto. 6. ¿ Es V. médico ? 7. No, señor, soy abogado. 8. ¿ Es bueno el vino ? 9. Está agrio. 10. Las muchachas están en el jardín, y los muchachos están en la calle. 11. La hija del panadero es muy joven. 12. Juan y María están en la casa del general. 13. Mi casa está muy lejos de aquí. 14. Los dos médicos son Franceses. 15. ¿ Es V. Americano ? 16. No, señor, soy Inglés. 17. ¿ Es V. de Londres ? 18. Sí, señor, soy de Londres, y mi padre es de Liverpool. 19. Los dos hijos del carpintero están muy malos. 20. ¿ Dónde está Juan ? 21. Está con mi hermano. 22. El café es bueno, pero está frío. 23. ¿ Están VV. contentos ? 24. Estamos muy contentos ahora. 25. ¿ Quién está en mi cuarto ? 26. Nadie, el cuarto está cerrado. 27. La hija del general es muy amable. 28. ¿ Con quién está mi madre ? 29. Ella está con mis (*my*) dos hermanas. 30. Los cazadores están en el bosque.

Exercise 10.

1. Do you know where the book is (where is the book) ? 2. The book is on the table. 3. Where is the father now ? 4. He is in London. 5. Is he well ? 6. He is very well, thank you. 7. Are the Americans and the English friends ? 8. They are friends now. 9. Who are you ? 10. I am Charles's friend. 11. Where is he ? 12. He is in the country. 13. The two sons of the physician are small, but they are very bad. 14. Here is my book. 15. Is the cheese good ? 16. The cheese and the bread are very good. 17. Is the baker an American ? 18. No, sir, he is a Frenchman. 19. The two hunters are brothers. 20. Are you pleased here ? 21. Yes, we have money, and we are pleased. 22. My brother's friend is a lawyer.

23. Who is at the door? 24. A boy with apples. 25. John and Henry are in the city. 26. Where are the chickens? 27. The chickens are now in the garden. 28. The wine is sour and bad. 29. Who is sad? 30. Nobody is sad here.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Although the two Spanish verbs **ser** and **estar** are both rendered in English by the verb **to be**, they cannot be used indifferently one for the other; each has its distinct meaning.

Ser is used when the attribute of the subject is *inherent, essential,* or *lasting,* while **estar** is to be used when the attribute is only *accidental* or *temporary.*

The usage will be shown in the following examples:

Es general,	*He is a general.*
Es profesor,	*He is a professor.*
Es bonita,	*She is pretty.*
Son grandes,	*They are tall.*
La miel es dulce,	*Honey is sweet.*
Es tarde,	*It is late.*
Está bueno,	*He is well.*
El agua está caliente,	*The water is warm.*
Estamos de priesa,	*We are in a hurry.*
El niño es feo,	*The child is homely.*
El niño está cansado,	*The child is tired.*
La muchacha es buena,	*The girl is good.*
La muchacha está buena,	*The girl is well.*
La mujer es alegre,	*The woman is of a jolly nature.*
La mujer está alegre,	*The woman feels jolly.*

NOTE. — *Position,* even though permanent, is indicated by **estar** (which here has its original Latin meaning, *stare* = to stand).

Está en Francia,	*He is in France.*
Mi casa está en el campo,	*My house is in the country.*
Madrid está en España,	*Madrid is in Spain.*

NOTE 2. — A predicate noun requires **ser**.

2. Ser is used to express *possession*, *origin*, *destination*, *aptness*, in combination with certain prepositions:

Este jardín es de mi tío,	*This garden is my uncle's.*
Este vino es de Francia,	*This wine is from France.*
El libro es para V.,	*The book is for you.*
Él no es para trabajar,	*He is not fit to work.*

3. Estar is used to express *occupation*, *intention*, or *willingness*, and *futurity*, in combination with certain prepositions:

Hoy estoy de guardia,	*To-day I am on duty.*
Yo estoy para salir,	*I intend to go out.*
La casa está por acabar,	*The house is not yet finished.*

Lección VI. Lesson VI.

USE OF THE PREPOSITIONS **DE** AND **PARA**.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Pablo tiene un reloj de oro.	Paul has a gold watch (a watch of gold).
Tenemos dos mesas de mármol.	We have two marble tables.
¿Tienen VV. plumas de acero?	Have you any steel pens?
Tenemos plumas de oro y de acero.	We have gold and steel pens.
Adolfo tiene un chaleco de seda.	Adolphus has a silk waistcoat.
El médico tiene una casa de madera.	The physician has a wooden house.
Los muchachos tienen un tintero de plomo.	The boys have a leaden inkstand.
Tenemos una máquina de lavar.	We have a washing machine.
Compañía de Relojes de Nueva York.	New York Watch Company.
Carruages de primera clase.	First-class carriages.
Una bomba de vapor.	A fire engine.
Agua de Florida.	Florida water.
Un maestro de escuela.	A schoolmaster.
Una máquina de coser.	A sewing machine.
Mesas *para* comedor.	Dining room tables (tables for dining rooms).

Tinte *para* el pelo.	Hair dye (dye for the hair).
Polvos *para* insectos.	Insect powders (powder for insects).
Efectos *para* marineros.	Sailors' goods (goods for sailors).

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El algodón, *the cotton.*	**La caja,** *the safe, the box.*
El almacén, *the store.*	**La caña,**[2] *the cane.*
El arce, *the maple.*	**La caoba,** *the mahogany.*
El azúcar, *the sugar.*	**La cerveza,** *the beer.*
El billar, *the billiard.*	**La hacienda,** *the estate.*
El cuchillo, *the knife.*	**La seda,** *the silk.*
El extinguidor, *the extinguisher.*	**Allí,** *there.*
El fabricante, *the manufacturer.*	**Célebre,** *celebrated.*
El fuego, *the fire.*	**Champaña,** *Champagne.*
El hierro, *the iron.*	**Desde,** *since.*
El instrumento, *the instrument.*	**Escribo,** *I write.*
El joyero, *the jeweler.*	**Para,** *for.*
El pedazo, *the piece.*	**¿ Quiere V. ?** *Will you have? Do you wish?*
El plomo, *the lead.*	**Quiero,** *I wish, I will have.*
El tiempo, *the time.*	**Señor,** *sir.*
El tintero, *the inkstand.*	**Señora,** *madam, Mrs.*
El vapor, *the steam.*	**Vende,** *sells.*
El vidrio,[1] *the glass.*	

Exercise 11.

1. ¿ Qué vino tiene V. en la casa ? 2. Tengo vino de Champaña. 3. Las plumas de acero de Spéncer son muy célebres. 4. Tenemos una caja de hierro en el almacén. 5. Tenemos también un extinguidor de fuego. 6. ¿ Tienen VV. una mesa de billar ? 7. Tenemos dos. 8. Mi hermano vende instrumentos para joyeros. 9. ¿ Y qué vende V. ? 10. Soy fabricante de mesas para comedor. 11. Mi hermano es dependiente en la Compañía de Manhattan. 12. ¿ Tienen VV. una máquina de vapor en la hacienda ? 13. Sí, señor, tenemos una desde mucho tiempo (a long time). 14. ¿ Quiere V. un paraguas de seda ó de algodón ? 15. Quiero uno de seda. 16. El padre de Enrique tiene una casa de campo. 17. Mi hermana tiene un traje de seda. 18. Tenemos una mesa de caoba. 19. ¿ Quiere V. azúcar de caña ? 20. Quiero azúcar de arce.

---

[1] **Vidrio,** *glass,* refers only to the *substance* called *glass,* while **vaso** is used for *a glass to drink from.*

[2] **Caña,** *cane,* does not refer to *a walking stick,* which is **un bastón.**

Exercise 12.

1. What will you have? 2. I wish a piece of bread. 3. Do you write with a gold pen? 4. No, sir, I write with a steel pen. 5. In what company are you (a) clerk? 6. In the New York Watch Company. 7. What does your (*su*) brother sell? 8. He sells silk hats. 9. Have you a glass inkstand? 10. No, sir, I have a leaden inkstand. 11. What knife will you have? 12. I wish a butcher's knife. 13. What hat has Henry? 14. He has a hunter's hat. 15. Does the merchant sell wine? 16. He sells wine and beer. 17. With whom are the hunters in the wood? 18. They are there with the young soldier. 19. Have the ladies a fan? 20. They have two fans.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The *material of which a thing is made* is indicated by the preposition **de**, *of, from*, between the name of the thing and that of the material:

Un sombrero de seda,	*A silk hat* (lit. *a hat of silk*).
Un reloj de oro,	*A gold watch* (*a watch of gold*).

2. The word representing the *nature, species, locality* or *quality of a thing*, which in English is placed first, comes second in Spanish, and is joined to the first noun by **de**, *of, from:*

Un traje de verano,	*A summer dress.*
Agua de lluvia,	*Rain water.*
Vino de Burdeos,	*Bordeaux wine, claret.*
Caña de azúcar,	*Sugar cane.*

3. The word representing *a particular use, appendage, purpose, physical* or *moral property, place where things are kept*, etc., comes second in Spanish, and is generally joined to the first noun by the prepositions **para**, *for;* or **de**, *of, from:*

Máquina para gas,	*Gas machine.*
Jaulas para pájaros,	*Bird cages.*
Estante para sombreros,	*Hat stand.*
Máquinas de coser,	*Sewing machines.*

Lección VII. Lesson VII.

THE NEGATIVE.

No tener, *not to have.*

Negatively.

Yo no tengo (no tengo),	*I have not.*
Tú no tienes,	*thou hast not.*
Él no tiene,	*he has not.*
Ella no tiene,	*she has not.*
Usted no tiene,	*you have not.*
Nosotros no tenemos,	*we have not.*
Vosotros no tenéis,	*you have not.*
Ellos no tienen,	*they* (masc.) *have not.*
Ellas no tienen,	*they* (fem.) *have not.*
Ustedes no tienen,	*you have not.*

Negatively and Interrogatively.

¿ No tengo yo ?	*have I not ?*
¿ No tienes tú ?	*hast thou not ?*
¿ No tiene él ?	*has he not ?*
¿ No tiene ella ?	*has she not ?*
¿ No tiene usted ?	*have you not ?*
¿ No tenemos nosotros ?	*have we not ?*
¿ No tenéis vosotros ?	*have you not ?*
¿ No tienen ellos ?	*have they* (masc.) *not ?*
¿ No tienen ellas ?	*have they* (fem.) *not ?*
¿ No tienen ustedes ?	*have you not ?*

Ser and **estar**, *to be.*

Negatively.		**Negatively and Interrogatively.**	
Yo no soy,	*I am not.*	¿ No soy yo ?	*am I not ?*
Yo no estoy,		¿ No estoy yo ?	
etc.	*etc.*	etc.	*etc.*

Negative with

Jamás, *never, ever.*
Nada, *nothing, not anything.*
Nadie, *nobody, not anybody.*
Ni, *neither, nor.*
Ninguno, (sing.) *no one, none,* **no,**
Ningunos, (pl.) *not any.*
Nunca, *never.*

Yo no tengo nada, *or* **nada tengo.**	**I have nothing ; I don't have anything.**
Yo no quiero ninguno, *or* **ninguno quiero.**	**I don't wish any.**
Él no está jamás en casa, *or* **jamás está él en casa.**	**He is never at home.**
Él no tiene nunca dinero, *or* **nunca tiene él dinero.**	**He never has any money.**
No sale nadie, *or* **nadie sale.**	**Nobody goes out.**
No tengo ni pan ni queso, *or* **ni pan ni queso tengo.**	**I have neither bread nor cheese.**

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿ Es pobre el hombre ?	Is the man poor ?
No es pobre, es rico.	He is not poor, he is rich.
¿ No tiene V. dinero ?	Have you no money ?
Ni dinero ni crédito tengo.	I have neither money nor credit.
¿ No quiere V. pan ?	Don't you wish any bread ?
Nada quiero hoy.	I don't wish anything to-day.
¿ No sale mi padre hoy ?	Does not my father go out to-day ?
Él no sale.	He does not go out.
Luisa no es amable.	Louisa is not amiable.
¿ Vende sombreros el comerciante ?	Does the merchant sell hats ?
Él no vende ningunos.	He does not sell any.
¿ Qué tiene V. en la caja ?	What have you in the box ?
Nada tengo.	I have nothing.
Nadie sabe la lección.	Nobody knows the lesson.
Isabel no es dichosa.	Isabel is not happy.
Ni libros ni plumas tengo.	I have neither books nor pens.

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El aceite, *the oil.*	**Compra V.?** *do you buy?*	**Nunca**, *never.*
La lámpara, *the lamp.*	**Compro**, *I buy.*	**¿Porqué?** *why?*
La lección, *the lesson.*	**Esto**, *this, this thing.*	**Porque**, *because.*
La luz, *the light.*	**Jamás**, *never, ever.*	**¿Sabe V.?** *do you know?*
Abajo, *downstairs.*	**Listo**, *ready.*	**Yo sé**, *I know.*
Alguno, *some, any, some one, any one, somebody, anybody.*	**Nada**, *nothing, not anything.*	**Sin**, *without.*
	Nadie, *nobody, not anybody.*	**Todavía**, *yet.*
Aquello, *that, that thing.*	**Ni**, *neither, nor.*	**Vendo**, *I sell.*
	Ninguno, *not any, none, no.*	

Exercise 13.

1. ¿ Tiene V. dinero hoy ? 2. Tengo dinero, pero no tengo pan en la casa. 3. ¿ Está malo el muchacho ? 4. No está malo hoy, está muy bueno. 5. ¿ Está aquí el panadero ? 6. El panadero no está aquí, pero el carnicero está aquí. 7. ¿ Es V. el amigo de Carlos ? 8. No, señor, soy el amigo de Enrique. 9. ¿ Quiere V. un pedazo de pan con queso ? 10. Quiero pan, pero sin queso. 11. ¿ Quiere V. el dinero ? 12. Todavía no. 13. ¿ Dónde está Juan ? 14. No está aquí, está abajo. 15. ¿ No está la casa del general en la calle de Madrid ? 16. El general no tiene casa aquí. 17. ¿ Quiere V. esto ó aquello ? 18. Quiero esto, pero no aquello. 19. ¿ Tienen pan los muchachos ? 20. Tienen pan, pero no tienen carne. 21. ¿ No tiene V. oro ? 22. No tengo oro, pero tengo plata. 23. ¿ Porqué no está V. en el jardín con los muchachos ? 24. Porque no quiero. 25. ¿ Es rico el médico ? 26. No es rico, pero tiene una casa en Nueva York. 27. ¿ Porqué no tiene V. luz en el cuarto ? 28. Porque no tengo aceite para mi lámpara. 29. ¿ Compra V. vino ó cerveza ? 30. No compro ni vino ni cerveza ; no compro nada. 31. Nunca sabe V. la lección. 32. ¿ Tiene alguno mi libro ? 33. Nadie tiene el libro.

Exercise 14.

1. Have you a silk umbrella ? 2. I have two umbrellas, but not of silk. 3. Are you a physician ? 4. No, sir, I am a merchant. 5. Have you not a store in Broadway ? 6. No, sir, my store is not in Broadway. 7. Are you not ready ? 8. No, sir, not yet. 9. The Frenchman and the Englishman are not friends. 10. Have the soldiers any guns ? 11. They have no guns, but they have sabers.

12. The wine is not good; do you know why? 13. I don't know why. 14. Have you a theater in the city? 15. We have no theater yet. 16. Who is in the garden? 17. Nobody is in the garden. 18. Have you anything for my brother? 19. I have nothing to-day. 20. Has John any friends? 21. He has neither friends nor money. 22. Do you know the lesson to-day? 23. Nobody knows the lesson. 24. Why not? 25. Because we are sick. 26. Are the boys in the room? 27. The boys are not in the room, but the girls are there. 28. What do you sell to Henry? 29. I don't sell anything to anybody. 30. The trees of the garden are not green. 31. Is Charles with any one in the room? 32. No, sir, with no one.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. In negative sentences, **no** is placed *before* the verb:

Yo no tengo,	*I have not.*
¿ No quiere él ?	*Does he not wish?*
¿ No han llegado ?	*Have they not arrived?*
Él no quiere,	*He does not wish.*

2. The Spaniards use a double negative to render the negation stronger:

No quiero nada,	*I wish for nothing. I don't wish anything.*
No tengo ninguno,	*I have none.*
No le hablo nunca,	*I never speak to him.*

Observation. — The adverb **no** is, however, omitted when we place another negative before the verb, or when the verb is not expressed (a literary construction):

Nada quiero. Ninguno tengo. Nadie.

3. **Jamás** and **nunca** have the same meaning in the negative, and are generally placed at the beginning of the sentence, without the adverb **no**:

Jamás ví tal cosa *or* nunca ví tal cosa, *I never saw such a thing.*

4. **Jamás** is often used with **siempre**, *ever*, and **nunca**, *never*, to strengthen them:

Nunca jamás lo dire,	*I shall never tell it.*
Por siempre jamás me acordaré de él,	*I shall remember him for ever and ever.*

NOTE. — **Jamás**, when not accompanied by **no**, and not at the beginning of the sentence, means *ever :*

¿ Ha visto V. jamás tal cosa ?	*Have you ever seen such a thing ?*

5. Nadie, *no one*, and **nada**, *nothing*, are used with the negative meaning either before the verb, after it in combination with **no**, or when used alone :

Nadie veo,	*I see no one. I don't see anybody.*
¿ No ve V. nada ?	*Do you see nothing ? Don't you see anything.*
Nada,	*Nothing.*

NOTE. — **Nadie, nada, jamás** (also **ninguno** and **nunca**) are used in the positive sense after verbs when a negative idea is implied :

¿ Ha visto V. nada ?	*Did you see anything ?*
¡ Yo hablar á nadie !	*I speak to anybody !*
Sin ver á nadie,	*Without seeing anybody.*

6. Although **no** is used to form the negative, it is sometimes used redundantly in positive sentences :

Mejor es el trabajo que no la ociosidad,	*Labor is preferable to idleness.*
No partiré hasta que no llegue V.	*I shall not leave until you come.*

7. Ninguno (ninguna, ningunos, ningunas) may be used alone, or with a noun. In the former case it means *none, no one, etc.*, in the latter, *no* (*not any*).

No tengo ninguno, / Ninguno tengo,	*I have n't any.*
¿ No tiene V. ningún libro ?	*Have you no book ?* / *Have n't you any book ?*

OBSERVATION. — When a noun is expressed, **ninguno** may be omitted :

No tengo dinero,	*I have n't any money.*
No tiene libros,	*He has n't any books.*

NOTE. — **Ninguno** drops the last letter before a masculine singular noun.

No quiere ningún dinero,	*He does n't want any money.*

8. No, connected with a pronoun, an adverb, and even with other parts of speech, is generally placed last, when used without a verb:

Yo no, *not I.*	Así no, *not so.*
Eso no, *not that.*	Todavía no, *not yet.*
Hoy no, *not to-day.*	

9. Alguno (alguna, algunos, algunas), meaning *some, any, some one, any one, somebody, anybody,* drops the last letter (like **ninguno**)[1] before a masculine noun in the singular, and may either come in the sentence or be omitted:

Tiene V. algún dinero? or ¿Tiene V. dinero?	*Have you any money?*

OBSERVATION. — The student should be careful never to translate **not anything** by *no algo*, nor **not anybody** by *no alguno*, — a mistake which is very common among beginners. **Nada, nadie**, or **ninguno** must be used in these cases.

Lección VIII. Lesson VIII.

ADJECTIVES. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
El muchacho es bueno.	The boy is good.
La muchacha es buena.	The girl is good.
El caballo es hermoso.	The horse is fine.
La casa es hermosa.	The house is fine.
El hijo es feo.	The son is ugly.
La hija es bonita.	The daughter is pretty.
El caballero es Francés.	The gentleman is French.
La señora es Inglesa.	The lady is English.
Antonio es holgazán.	Anthony is lazy.
Cristina es holgazana.	Christina is lazy.
José es trabajador.	Joseph is industrious.
Juana es trabajadora.	Jane is industrious.

---

[1] **Ningún** and **algún** then require the written accent as the stress falls on the last syllable.

El padre es grave.	The father is grave.
La madre es alegre.	The mother is lively.
El azúcar es dulce.	The sugar is sweet.
La yerba es verde.	The grass is green.
El trabajo es fácil.	The work is easy.
La flor es azul.	The flower is blue.
Fernando es joven.	Ferdinand is young.
Julia es cortés.	Julia is polite.

Agreement of Adjectives.

¿ Es Guillermo bueno ó malo ?	Is William good or bad ?
¿ Es Isabel buena ó mala ?	Is Isabel good or bad ?
El tío y el padre son viejos.	The uncle and the father are old.
La tía y la madre son viejas.	The aunt and the mother are old.
El tío y la tía son ricos.	The uncle and aunt are rich.

Adjectives used Substantively.

El pobre.	The poor man.
El pobre viejo.	The poor old man.
La pobre vieja.	The poor old woman.
Un ciego. — Una ciega.	A blind man. — A blind woman.
El sabio es prudente.	The wise man is prudent.
El grande. — La grande.	The large one (masc.). — The large one (fem.).

Vocabulario.

El café, *the coffee.*
El conde, *the count.*
El criado, *the servant,* m.
El primo, *the cousin,* m.
El rey, *the king.*
El té, *the tea.*
El trabajo, *the work.*
El traje, *the dress.*
La condesa, *the countess.*
La criada, *the servant girl.*
La isla, *the island.*
La legumbre, *the vegetable.*
La mujer, *the woman, wife.*
La prima, *the cousin,* f.
La reina, *the queen.*
La torre, *the tower.*
Agradable, *agreeable.*
Alegre, *lively.*
Alemán, *German.*
Alto, *high, tall.*
Bonito, *pretty.*
Ciego, *blind.*
Difícil, *difficult.*
Enfermo, *sick, ill.*

Vocabulary.

Fácil, *easy.*
Feliz, *happy.*
Feo, *ugly, homely.*
Fiel, *faithful.*
Infeliz, *unhappy.*
Orgulloso, *proud.*
Sabio, *wise.*
Sordo, *deaf.*
Tímido, *timid.*
Valiente, *brave.*
Viejo, *old.*
Tonto, *stupid.*

Exercise 15.

1. El hijo de Juan es muy tonto. 2. Las dos hijas del panadero son muy bonitas. 3. El padre del comerciante es todavía muy joven.

4. Los soldados del príncipe son muy valientes. 5. Mi lección es muy difícil. 6. El primo y la prima son feos. 7. La mujer (*wife*) de Pedro es sorda. 8. El pobre viejo está malo. 9. ¿ Qué pedazo quiere V. ? — Quiero el grande. 10. Las dos señoras son Alemanas. 11. Los caballos de mi tío son negros. 12. La torre es muy alta. 13. El conde es orgulloso, pero la condesa es muy amable. 14. El hermano de Luisa es muy feliz. 15. Las dos muchachas son hermanas. 16. ¿ Cuántos criados tiene V. ? 17. Tengo dos criados y tres criadas. 18. Mi hermana tiene un hermoso traje de seda. 19. El rey de la isla es viejo, pero la reina es joven. 20. El general tiene una hermosa casa en el campo. 21. ¿ Es bueno el café ? 22. El café es bueno, pero el té es malo. 23. ¿ Qué vende la mujer ? 24. Vende buenas manzanas. 25. ¿ Porqué está V. triste ? 26. Porque mi padre está enfermo. 27. La ciudad es pequeña, pero muy agradable. 28. El perro es fiel. 29. ¿ Están VV. contentas, señoras ? 30. Estamos muy contentas ahora. 31. Las cerezas no son dulces.

Exercise 16.

1. Are the horses good ? 2. They are good, but small. 3. Have you (*plur.*) flowers in the two gardens ? 4. We have flowers in the little one, and vegetables in the large one. 5. Why are you so sad, madam ? 6. Because the children are sick. 7. The French women are lively and amiable. 8. The houses of New York are high. 9. The English women are handsome. 10. The general's sister is happy, but his (*su*) brother is unhappy. 11. The father, mother, and children are sick. 12. The houses of the city are large. 13. Are the two ladies American ? 14. No, sir, they are German. 15. Is the woman blind ? 16. She is deaf. 17. Is the baker's daughter pretty ? 18. She is very homely, but very amiable. 19. My work is easy, but my brother's work is very difficult. 20. Louisa and Mary are cousins. 21. Mary is very lively, but Louisa is very timid. 22. Charles's father is wise and prudent. 23. Henry's brother is very rich, but he is not proud. 24. Julia and Mary are the good friends of my sister. 25. Have you (*plur.*) wine in the house ? 26. We have no wine, but we have very good beer.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Adjectives agree in Spanish, as in almost all other languages, in gender and number with the noun which they qualify.

Adjectives ending in **o** form their feminine by changing **o** into **a**, as:

Bueno (*m.*), buena (*f.*), *good*; Malo (*m.*), mala (*f.*), *bad*;
Alto (*m.*), alta (*f.*), *high*; etc.

The same rule applies to nouns having a feminine:

Un panadero, *a baker*; una panadera, *a (female) baker*, or *a baker's wife.*
Un criado, *a (male) servant*; una criada, *a (female) servant.*
Un tío, *an uncle*; una tía, *an aunt.*
Mi primo, *my (male) cousin*; mi prima, *my (female) cousin.*
Mi hermano, *my brother*; mi hermana, *my sister.*
Un viudo, *a widower*; una viuda, *a widow.*
Un cocinero, *a (male) cook*; una cocinera, *a (female) cook.*

Observations. — Augmentatives and diminutives ending in **ete** or **ote** also change the last letter into **a** for the feminine:

Regordete (*m.*), regordeta (*f.*), *small and stout*;
Altote (*m.*), altota (*f.*), *very tall*; etc.

2. Adjectives ending in **-an** and **-on** add an **a** for the feminine:
Holgazán, m., *idle*; holgazana, *f.* **Harón**, m., *lazy*; harona, *f.*

Exceptions. — **Ruin**, *contemptible*; **común**, *common*; and all adjectives ending in **en**, as **joven**, *young*; remain unchanged.

3. Adjectives referring to the nationality and ending with a consonant add **a** for the feminine:

Francés, m.,	*French*;	francesa, *f.*
Inglés, m.,	*English*;	inglesa, *f.*
Alemán, m.,	*German*;	alemana, *f.*
Irlandés, m.,	*Irish*;	irlandesa, *f.*
Español, m.,	*Spanish*;	española, *f.*

Note. — Among the adjectives of this last class, some are found that terminate in **a**, and do not undergo any change in the feminine, as **persa**, *Persian*; **moscovita**, *Muscovite*; etc.

4. Adjectives ending in **or** also add **a** for the feminine:

Trabajador, m., *industrious, diligent;*	trabajadora, *f.*
Traidor, m., *treacherous;*	traidora, *f.*

NOTE. — Comparatives in **or** do not change: la mayor parte, *the greater part.* La puerta interior, *the inner door.*

5. Those adjectives which end in the masculine with any other letter do not change in the feminine:

Un hombre cortés, *a polite man;* una mujer cortés, *a polite woman.*
Un hombre grave, *a grave man;* una materia grave, *a grave matter.*
El trabajo es fácil, *the work is easy;* la cosa es fácil, *the thing is easy.*

6. When an adjective relates to two or more nouns in the singular, it must be put in the plural:

El padre y el hijo son buenos, *The father and son are good.*

7. An adjective qualifying two or more nouns of different genders is put in the masculine plural:

El padre y la madre son ricos, *The father and mother are rich.*

OBSERVATION. — When, however, the adjective stands near a feminine noun in the plural it must agree with the feminine noun, but such constructions must be avoided as much as possible, and it is preferable to qualify each noun by an adjective having a corresponding meaning, or select an adjective having but one termination for both genders:

Los caudales y la hacienda eran grandes,	*The capital and the property were large.*
El general tiene un valor maravilloso y una constancia portentosa,	*The general has (a) wonderful bravery and persistence* (is wonderfully brave and persistent).

8. Adjectives are often used substantively either in the singular or plural:

El bueno y el malo,	*The good and the bad one.*
Los ricos y los pobres,	*The rich and the poor.*

Lección IX. Lesson IX.

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Adjectives preceding the Noun.	
Mateo es un buen muchacho.	Matthew is a good boy.
Carolina es una hermosa muchacha.	Caroline is a handsome girl.
¡ Qué excelente vino !	What an excellent wine !
¿ Dónde está la joven Ágata ?	Where is young Agatha ?
Tengo un bonito libro.	I have a pretty book.
El pulpero tiene dulce miel.	The grocer has sweet honey.
Mi amigo tiene un gran caballo.	My friend has a famous horse, *m.*
Domingo es mi grande amigo.	Dominic is my great (good) friend.
Adjectives following the Noun.	
Tenemos un caballo blanco.	We have a white horse.
Tengo un libro francés.	I have a French book.
Aprendo la lengua española.	I learn the Spanish language.
Tengo una mesa redonda.	I have a round table.
El juez es un hombre justo.	The judge is a just man.
Vivo en la calle nueva.	I live in the new street.
Pedro es un hombre viejo.	Peter is an old man.
Octavio es un muchacho feo.	Octavius is a homely boy.
El comerciante es un hombre muy rico.	The merchant is a very rich man.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El animal, *the animal.*	**Blanco**, *white.*
El buque, *the ship, the vessel.*	**Buenos días**, *good morning, good day.*
El capitán, *the captain.*	**Colorado**, *red.*
El discípulo, *the pupil.*	**Dichoso**, *happy.*
El oficial, *the officer.*	**Era**, *was.*
El paño, *the cloth.*	**Excelente**, *excellent.*
El puerto, *the port.*	**Español**, *Spanish, Spaniard.*
El río, *the river.*	**Inglaterra**, *England.*
El sastre, *the tailor.*	**Inteligente**, *intelligent.*
El tomo, *the volume.*	**Mismo**, *same.*
La escuela, *the school.*	**Obediente**, *obedient.*

La historia, *the history.*
La rosa, *the rose.*
La vaca, *the cow.*
Azul, *blue.*

Primero, *first.*
Ruso, *Russian.*
Si, *if.*
Útil, *useful.*
Ó, *or.*

Exercise 17.

1. ¿ Tienen ustedes una vaca ? 2. Sí, tenemos una vaca negra y blanca. 3. El perro es un animal fiel y útil. 4. Don Juan es un hombre muy amable. 5. Los dos niños están enfermos, la pobre madre está muy triste. 6. La señora con el traje negro es la hermana del oficial inglés. 7. ¿ Quiere V. pan blanco ó pan negro ? 8. No quiero pan. 9. El hijo del general es un joven inteligente. 10. ¿ Sabe V. si el comerciante tiene paño azul ? 11. Él no tiene paño azul, pero tiene excelente paño negro. 12. ¿ Tiene V. el primer tomo de la Historia de Inglaterra ? 13. Tengo los dos primeros tomos. 14. El hermano de María es muy rico, tiene dos casas grandes y hermosas en la calle nueva. 15. ¿ Dónde está el buque ruso ? 16. Está en el puerto nuevo. 17. ¿ Buenos días, señora, dónde está la criada ? 18. Está en el cuarto grande. 19. ¿ Quién es el primer discípulo de la escuela ? 20. Yo no sé quién es el primero. 21. El sastre tiene un hijo ciego. 22. El capitán es un buen soldado. 23. El padre de Enrique es dichoso, porque tiene un hijo obediente. 24. Napoleón era un gran general. 25. ¿ Dónde está el Río Colorado ? 26. Yo no sé.

Exercise 18.

1. The English drink (*beben*) beer, good wine, and excellent tea. 2. We have good friends in the city. 3. Mary's mother is already an old woman. 4. The general is a prudent soldier. 5. The two English captains have large ships. 6. We have white roses in the garden. 7. The children are sick because they eat (*comen*) green apples. 8. Louisa's mother is an unhappy woman. 9. The butcher has good meat to-day. 10. Have you French or English money ? 11. We have neither French nor English money, we have American gold. 12. The lesson of to-day is a difficult lesson. 13. Paris is a large city. 14. The count is a proud man, but the countess is an amiable lady. 15. The island of Cuba is a fine island. 16. Do you sell French wines ? 17. I sell French and Spanish wines. 18. My uncle has a fine estate in Cuba. 19. The sons and daughters of the merchant are

small. 20. Who is the tall gentleman in the garden? 21. The gentleman with the white hat is my uncle. 22. Are you the brother of the Russian captain? 23. No, sir, I am the cousin of the German captain. 24. Has the captain a new ship? 25. No, sir, he has the same old ship.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Adjectives in Spanish, as in French, are placed either before the noun which they qualify, or after it; but not in such a way as to leave their position to the discretion of the speaker or writer. Their normal position is *after* the noun, but this may be modified by usage or euphony. Therefore no absolute rules can be given. As a matter of euphony it will be noticed that a long adjective often follows a short noun, and a short adjective precedes a long noun:

El orden admirable,	*The wonderful arrangement.*
La rancia enseñanza,	*The out-of-date instruction.*

The following rules may, however, be followed in most cases.

2. Adjectives generally placed ***before*** the noun are:

1. The numeral adjectives when accompanied by the article:

El primer tomo, *the first volume.* La tercera casa, *the third house.*

2. Adjectives expressing a quality pertaining to the very nature of the noun which they qualify:

Un poderoso emperador,	*A powerful emperor.*
Un rico banquero,	*A rich banker.*
Dulce miel,	*Sweet honey.*
Amarga adelfa,	*Bitter oleander.*

NOTE. — Should we say **miel dulce**, **adelfa amarga**, it might imply that there exist honey and oleander of a different taste.

3. Adjectives when used figuratively:

Un delicioso viaje,	*A delightful journey.*
Una negra acción,	*A dark deed.*

4. Adjectives used emphatically or in exclamatory sentences:

¡ Admirable acción ! *Admirable action !*

3. In most other cases adjectives are placed *after* the noun. They are more specially so:

1. When the adjective denotes *color, nationality, shape,* and *taste :*

Un caballo blanco, *a white horse.*	Un libro inglés, *an English book.*
Una mesa redonda, *a round table.*	Vino agrio, *sour wine.*

2. When the adjective has the form of the past participle of a verb:

Una ventana cerrada,	*A closed window.*
Una puerta abierta,	*An open door.*

3. When the adjective may be used substantively:

Un hombre justo, / Un justo,	*A just man.*	Un hombre malvado, / Un malvado,	*A wicked man.*

4. When the adjective does not express a special or essential property pertaining to the noun:

Una calle ancha,	*A broad street.*
Un hombre feo,	*An ugly man.*
Una casa vieja,	*An old house.*

5. When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, it is preferable to place them *after* the noun:

Es un hombre sabio, justo y poderoso,	*He is a wise, just, and powerful man.*

4. Certain adjectives have different meanings according to their place *before* or *after* the noun:

Una cierta cosa,	*A certain thing.*
Una cosa cierta,	*A sure thing.*
Un pobre hombre,	*A poor man* (poor in wits).
Un hombre pobre,	*A poor man* (poor in money).

5. The Spaniards use the same word to designate *Englishman* and *English*, *Frenchman* and *French*, *Spaniard* and *Spanish*,

etc.; but they write the word with a capital letter when used substantively, and with a small letter in other cases:

Un Español, *a Spaniard;* un libro español, *a Spanish book.*
Un Inglés, *an Englishman;* un buque inglés, *an English ship.*

6. The Spaniards use instead of *Mr.* and *Mrs.*, **Don**, *m.*, and **Doña**, *f.*, before Christian names, and **el Señor**, *m.*, **la Señora**, *f.*, before family names:

Don Juan, *Mr. John.* El Señor Hernández, *Mr. Hernandez.*
Doña María, *Mrs. Mary.* La Señora Smith, *Mrs. Smith.*
El Sr. Dn. Carlos Marty, *Mr. Charles Marty.*

Remarks on certain Adjectives. — 1. **Alguno**, *any one, anybody, some one, somebody;* **bueno**, *good;* **malo**, *bad, ill;* **ninguno**, *none, no one, nobody;* **postrero**, *last;* **primero**, *first;* **tercero**, *third;* **uno**, *a, an, one;* drop the **o** *before* a masculine noun in the singular:

Buen amo, *good master.* El primer hombre, *the first man.*
Ningún libro, *no book.* Un hábil médico, *a skillful physician;* etc.

But if they come *after* the noun they preserve the **o**:

Un hombre malo, *a bad man.* Libro tercero, *third book;* etc.

The **o** is also preserved whenever the noun referring to the adjective is not expressed:

Es bueno, *He is good.*
El primero de todos, *The first of all.*
Uno de estos señores, *One of these gentlemen;* etc.

2. **Santo**, *saint*, drops the last syllable before proper names of saints:

San Pedro, *St. Peter;* San Juan, *St. John;* etc.

Observation. — If the name of the saint begins with **To** or **Do**, the full form is used:

Santo Domingo, *St. Dominic;* Santo Tomás, *St. Thomas.*

However, when speaking of *the island of St. Thomas*, we say, **la isla de San Tomás**.

3. **Grande** drops the last syllable before a noun beginning with a consonant, whenever it means *great in merit* or *qualities*, *celebrated* or *famous*:

Una gran mujer,	*A distinguished woman.*
Un gran poeta,	*A great poet.*
Un gran caballo,	*An excellent* or *famous horse.*

NOTE. — If the noun begins with a vowel or an **h**, *grande* or *gran* may be used indiscriminately.

Grande preserves the last syllable if it only expresses *extent* or *dimension*, and is then placed preferably *after* the noun:

Una casa grande, *a large house.*	Un campo grande, *a large field.*
El teatro grande de Burdeos es un gran teatro,	*The large theater in Bordeaux is a splendid theater.*

Lección X. — Lesson X.

DIMINUTIVE AND AUGMENTATIVE NOUNS.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Juanito tiene un perrito.	Johnny has a little dog.
¡Qué bonita casita!	What a pretty little house!
¿Dónde está mi hermanita?	Where is my little sister?
Está con la mujercita.	She is with the little woman.
El caballito de mi hermanito es un bonito animalito.	My little brother's little horse is a pretty little animal.
Dos lamparitas ardían en el cuartito.	Two small lamps were burning in the little room.
Hay pececitos en el río.	There are little fishes in the river.
El pobrecito está malo.	The poor little fellow is sick.
El hombrecillo quiere dinero.	The miserable little man wants money.
Yo no quiero ese perrillo.	I don't wish that ugly little dog.
Mi mesa es muy chiquita.	My table is very small.
Tenemos un jardincito en el campo.	We have a little garden in the country.
El señorito y la señorita están aquí.	The young gentleman and the young lady are here.
Enrique es un muchachón y su padre un hombronazo.	Henry is a big fat boy and his father a big strong man.
La hermana de Pedro es una mujerona.	Peter's sister is a big stout woman.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El autor, *the author.*	**La especulación**, *the speculation.*
El bastonazo, *the blow* (with a stick).	**La flor**, *the flower.*
El gusto, *the pleasure.*	**La legua**, *the league.*
El ladrón, *the thief.*	**La mano**, *the hand.*
El pájaro, *the bird.*	**La pelea**, *the fight.*
El patio, *the yard.*	**La pieza**, *the piece.*
El pícaro, *the rogue.*	**La puñalada**, *the stab* (with a poniard).
El pueblo, *the town, village.*	**Aquí**, *here.*
El ricachón, *the very rich man.*	**Arriba**, *upstairs.*
El talento, *the talent.*	**Chiquito**, *little.*
Los contornos, *the suburbs.*	**Ignorante**, *ignorant.*
La boca, *the mouth.*	**Solo**, *alone.*
La callejuela, *the lane.*	**Su**, *his, her.*
La cara, *the face.*	**Todo**, *all.*
La cruz, *the cross.*	**Vive**, *lives.*

Exercise 19.

1. La hermanita de Carlos está mala. 2. ¿ Qué tiene el muchachito ? 3. Él no tiene nada. 4. El comerciante tiene una casita de campo en los contornos de la ciudad. 5. ¿ Dónde está Juanito ? 6. Está en el jardín con su amiguito. 7. ¿ Dónde están las dos señoritas ? 8. Están en el cuartito arriba. 9. ¿ Estaba V. (*were you*) solo en el cuarto ? 10. Sí, señor, yo estaba (*was*) solito. 11. ¿ Quién es el hombrecito ? 12. Es el hermano de Luisita. 13. María tiene una crucecita de oro. 14. Los árboles del jardín son todavía chiquititos. 15. El amigo de Enrique es un picarón. 16. Y Enrique es un ladronzuelo. 17. El perro recibió (*received*) dos bastonazos. 18. Mi amigo recibió dos puñaladas en la pelea. 19. El general es un hombrachón. 20. Los dos jovencitos son primos. 21. Tenemos tres pajaritos en el jardín. 22. ¿ Quiere V. un pedazito de carne ? 23. Sí, señor, con mucho gusto. 24. Pedro vive en una callejuela de la ciudad. 25. ¿ Porqué no compra el ricachón una casa grande ? 26. Porque tiene todo su dinero en grandes especulaciones. 27. La hermana del panadero es una mujercilla muy fea. 28. Los pollitos están en el patio.

Exercise 20.

1. The little boy and the little girl are sick. 2. The little tailor is very ignorant. 3. The brothers Ramirez have two small houses in the city. 4. Who is in the little garden ? 5. Louisa and my little

friend. 6 The merchant's sons have two small horses. 7. The little child has a pretty little face. 8. There are (*hay*) many birds on (*en*) the small island. 9. With whom were you in Paris? 10. With my little brother. 11. Charles has an ugly little dog. 12. The general's brother is a very rich man. 13. Little John and little Louisa are in the country now (*desde*) two days. 14. Here is a pretty little book for you. 15. What a pretty little flower! 16. Is Henry an author? 17. Yes, but a miserable author without talent. 18. Mary has a pretty little mouth and pretty little hands. 19. Julia is a pretty young lady. 20. The baker is a big stout man, but his sister is a very small woman. 21. My aunt has a very, very small dog. 22. The banker's children are yet very small. 23. Where do you live now? 24. In a very pretty little town not far from here. 25. Charles received (*recibió*) a short letter from his friend. 26. The captain of the small vessel is an ugly little man. 27. Have you a table in your room? 28. Yes, sir, I have a very small table.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The Spanish language abounds in *diminutives* and *augmentatives.*

2. The *diminutives* serve to decrease or soften the signification of the word from which they are derived.

Those most in use end in **ico**, **illo**, **cillo**, **ito**, **cito**, **uelo**, **zuelo**, and **ejo**, for the masculine, as: **hombrecico, hombrecillo, hombrecito, hombrezuelo,** *little man;* and in **ica**, **illa**, **cilla**, **ita**, **cita**, **zuela**, **eta**, **eja**, for the feminine, as: **mujercilla, mujercita, mujercica, mujerzuela,** *little woman;* etc.

1. Diminutives ending in **uelo** always denote *contempt* or *irony.*

2. Diminutives ending in **illo** and **cillo** often express *contempt, pity*, or *ugliness;* while those in **ito** generally express *affection. gentleness,* or *beauty:*

Mujercilla,	*Contemptible little woman.*
Pobrecillo,	*Poor little fellow.*
Hijito mío,	*My dear little son.*
Pobrecito,	*Poor good little fellow.*

NOTE. — Some Spanish words have the termination of the **diminutive**, without being diminutive, as:

Acerico, *needle cushion.* Anzuelo, *fishhook*, etc.

3. The diminutives **ito, ita**, may be used with different parts of speech to give a special expression to the words:

Vengo solito, *I come quite alone.*

4. Diminutives in **ete, ejo**, etc., are comparatively little used.

3. The *augmentatives* serve to increase the signification of the words from which they are derived. They end in **ón, achón, azo, onazo,** or **ote** for the masculine; and in **ona, aza, onaza,** or **ota** for the feminine, as:

Hombrón, hombrachón, hombronazo (from *hombre*, man), *big, strong man.*
Grandón, grandote, grandazo, grandonazo (from *grande*, large), *very large.*
Mujerona, mujeraza, mujeronaza (from *mujer*, woman), *large, strong woman.*

1. There are many words, however, ending in **azo**, which express an *action, motion*, or *result*, and are, therefore, not augmentatives:

Fusil, *rifle, gun;*	fusilazo, *a shot from a rifle.*
Pistola, *pistol;*	pistoletazo, *a shot from a pistol.*
Cañón, *gun;*	cañonazo, *a shot from a gun.*

2. Words which express *a blow struck with a blunt instrument* or *object* also end in **azo**, as **bastonazo** or **garrotazo**, *blow with a stick;* while those expressing *a wound made by a sharp instrument* or *weapon* end in **ada**, as:

Puñalada, *stab with a dagger;* lanzada, *a wound from a lance;* etc.

EXCEPTIONS. — **Hacha**, *ax;* **machete**, *cutlass;* and **sable**, *saber;* form, however, **hachazo, machetazo**, and **sablazo.**

4. FORMATION OF DIMINUTIVES AND AUGMENTATIVES. — 1. Words ending in **o** or **a** drop the last letter and add **ito, ita: ico, ica; illo, illa;** according to their gender:

Herman-**ito**, herman-**ico**, herman-**illo**, *little brother;* from **hermano**, *brother.*
Cas-**ita**, cas-**ica**, cas-**illa**, *little house;* from **casa**, *house.*

NOTE. — Words ending in **go** besides dropping the **o**, insert **a u** after the **g** to preserve the hard sound of this letter :

Un amigo, *a friend ;* un amiguito, *a little friend.*

Those ending in **co** change the **c** into **qu**, also to preserve the hard sound of the **c** :

Un barco, *a ship ;* un barquito, *a little ship.*

A few words ending in **o** and **a**, after dropping the last letter, add, however, the termination **ecico, ecillo,** etc. :

Un huevo, *an egg ;* un huevecillo, *a small egg.*
Una mano, *a hand ;* una manecita, *a small hand.*

2. Monosyllables ending with a consonant form their diminutive by adding **ecito, ecico, ecillo,** or **ezuelo :**

Una flor, *a flower ;* una florecita, *a little flower.*
Una cruz, *a cross ;* una crucecita, *a little cross.*
Un pez, *a fish ;* un pececito, *a little fish.*
Un rey, *a king ;* un reyezuelo, *a king* (with a small kingdom).

NOTE. — Observe that **cruz** and **pez** change the **z** into **c.**

3. Words of two or more syllables ending with a consonant form their diminutive by adding **ito, ico, illo, ejo :**

Un papel, *a paper ;* un papelito, *a small paper.*
Un reloj, *a watch ;* un relojito, *a small watch.*

4. Words of two syllables ending with an **e,** and those of several syllables ending with an **n** or a **z,** add **cito, cico, cillo,** or **zuelo :**

Un sastre, *a tailor ;* un sastrecillo, *a little tailor.*
Una nube, *a cloud ;* una nubecilla, *a little cloud.*
Un capitán, *a captain ;* un capitancillo, *a little captain.*
Un autor, *an author ;* un autorzuelo, *an insignificant author.*
Una mujer, *a woman ;* una mujercita, *a little woman.*

EXCEPTIONS. — **Juanito,** from **Juan,** *John ;* **volcanejo,** from **volcán,** *volcano ;* and all words ending in **in,** form an exception to this rule, the latter adding **ito,** etc. Thus :

Jardín, *garden ;* **ruin,** *worthless ;*
Rocín, *jade ;* serafín, *seraph ;*

form in the Diminutive **jardinito, rocinito, ruinito,** and **serafinito. Jardincito** is, however, often used.

5. Diminutives may be yet decreased in the following way:

From **chico**, *small:* chiquillo *or* chiquito, chiquitillo, chiquitito, chiquituelo, chiquitilluelo, chiquitillito, chiquirritin, chiquirritito, chiquirritillo, chiquirrituelo, etc.

The English would say in such cases, *very, very small.*

Even augmentatives may be decreased in the same way:

Picarón, *big rogue;* picaronzillo *or* picaronzuelo, *little rogue;* etc.

6. Many diminutives as well as augmentatives drop or preserve the letter **i** in the diphthong **ie**:

Un ciego, *a blind man;* un cieguecillo, *or* ceguecillo, *a little blind man.*
Un diente, *a tooth;* un dientecillo *or* dentecillo, *a small tooth.*
Una piedra, *a stone;* una piedrezuela *or* pedrezuela, *a small stone.*

7. Other words change the diphthong **ue** into **o** or remain unchanged:

Un buey, *an ox;* un bueyecillo *or* buyecillo, *a small ox.*
Un hueso, *a bone;* un huesecillo *or* osecillo, *a small bone.*

8. There are words in Spanish with diminutive and augmentative terminations, which may have been used formerly as such, but which at present have a determined signification:

Matón, *bravo, cutthroat.* Islilla, *side.*
Cegato, *shortsighted.* Peluquín, *wig.*
Espadín, *sword of the state;* etc., etc.

9. Augmentatives are formed by adding the terminations given in Rule 2 to the word, when the same ends with a consonant:

León, *lion;* leonazo, *big lion;* etc.

When the words end, however, with a vowel, the latter is dropped before adding the given termination:

Gigante, *giant;* gigantazo, *large giant.*
Libro, *book;* librote, *large book.*

General Observations. — The words **pequeño**, *small,* and **grande**, *large,* may be used at all times with the noun, but in many cases they would not answer to the genius of the Spanish language, which would require the diminutive or augmentative. This is specially the case with the diminutives.

The pronunciation of diminutives or augmentatives is generally different from that of the word from which they are derived, and the written accent of the primitive word is left out in the derived word, as:

Árbol, *tree;*	arbolito, *small tree.*
Pájaro, *bird;*	pajarito, *small bird;* etc.

5. Verb **tener**, *to have.*

The verb **tener** is often rendered in English by ***to be something the matter:***

¿ Qué tiene V. ?	*What is the matter with you?*
Yo no tengo nada,	*Nothing is the matter with me.*

Lección XI. Lesson XI.

ADJECTIVES. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE RELATIVE.

Adjectives compared regularly:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Hermoso, m. / Hermosa, f. *handsome;*	más hermoso, / más hermosa, *handsomer;*	el más hermoso, / la más hermosa, *the handsomest.*
Prudente, m. / Prudente, f. *prudent;*	más prudente, / más prudente, *more prudent;*	el más prudente, / la más prudente, *the most prudent.*
Rico, m. / Rica, f. *rich;*	más rico, / más rica, *richer;*	el más rico, / la más rica, *the richest.*
Útiles, pl. *useful;*	más útiles, *more useful;*	los más útiles, m. / las más útiles, f. *the most useful.*
Fácil, n. *easy;*	más facil, *easier;*	lo más fácil, *the easiest thing.*

Adjectives compared irregularly:

Bueno, *good;*	mejor, *better;*	~~óptimo~~, *best.*
Malo, *bad;*	peor, *worse;*	pésimo, *worst.*
Grande, *great, large;*	~~mayor~~, *greater, larger;*	máximo, *greatest, largest.*

Pequeño, *small;*	menor, *less, smaller;*	mínimo, *smallest.*
Bajo, *low;*	inferior, *lower;*	ínfimo, *lowest.*
Alto, *high;*	superior, *higher;*	supremo, *highest.*

Adverbs:

Bien, *well;*	mejor, *better;*	lo mejor, *the best.*
Mal, *bad, badly;*	peor, *worse;*	lo peor, *the worst.*
Poco, *little;*	menos, *less;*	lo menos, *the least.*
Mucho, *much;*	más, *more;*	lo más, *the most.*

Comparative of Inferiority:

Duro, m. / Dura, f. } *hard;* menos duro, menos dura, } *less hard;* el menos duro, la menos dura, } *the least hard.*

Fuertes, pl. *strong;* menos fuertes, *less strong;* los menos fuertes, m. / las menos fuertes, f. } *the least strong.*

Bien, *well;* menos bien, *less well;* lo menos bien, *the least well.*

menos...que..., *less* or *fewer...than...*

No tanto, *m.*...como... / No tanta, *f.*....como... } *not so much ...as...* no tantos, *m.*....como... / no tantas, *f.*.....como... } *not so many ...as...*

no tan...como..., *not so...as...*

Comparative of Equality:

Tanto, *m.*...como .. / Tanta, *f.*.....como... } *as much...as...* tantos, *m.*....como... / tantas, *f.*.....como... } *as many...as...*

tan.. como..., *as...as...*, *so ..as....*

Cuanto más.....tanto más..... / Cuantos más.....tantos más.... / Cuanta más .....tanta más..... / Cuantas más.....tantas más.... } *the more. .the more...*

Cuanto menos.....tanto menos... *the less...the less...*

Cuanto más.....tanto menos... *the more...the less...*

Cuanto menos.....tanto más..... *the less...the more...*

Ejemplos.

Carlos es rico, Juan es más rico; pero Enrique es el más rico de los tres hermanos.

Luisa es más joven que María.

Nueva York es más grande que París.

Juan habla bien, pero su hermano habla mejor.

Examples.

Charles is rich, John is richer; but Henry is the richest of the three brothers.

Louisa is younger than Mary.

New York is larger than Paris.

John speaks well, but his brother speaks better.

Soy más viejo que V.	I am older than you.
Julia es la menos bonita de las hermanas.	Julia is the least pretty of the sisters.
Tenemos menos dinero que él.	We have less money than he.
No tengo tanto tiempo como V.	I have not as much time as you.
Ellas no tienen tantas amigas como nosotras.	They have not so many friends as we.
Yo no hablo tan bien como V.	I do not speak as well as you.
El médico no es tan viejo como el abogado.	The physician is not so old as the lawyer.
Soy tan alto como V.	I am as tall as you.
Tengo tantas plumas como lápices.	I have as many pens as pencils.
Cuanto más virtuosos son los hombres, tanto más felices son.	The more virtuous men are, the happier they are.
Cuanto más sale, tanto menos estudia.	The more he goes out the less he learns.
Cuantos más amigos tenga V. tanto más poderoso será.	The more friends you have the more powerful you will be.

Vocabulario.

El amo, *the master.*
El banquero, *the banker.*
El mérito, *the merit.*
El regimiento, *the regiment.*
La clase, *the class.*
La suerte, *the luck.*
La escuela, *the school.*
La fruta, *the fruit.*
La parte, *the part.*

Vocabulary.

Atento, *attentive.*
Déme V., *give me.*
Dulce, *sweet.*
Eduardo, *Edward.*
Estudioso, *studious.*
Felipe, *Philip.*
Fresco, *cool.*
Frío, *cold.*
Fuerte, *strong.*

Gana, *earns.*
Gasta, *spends.*
Habla, *speaks.*
Otro, *other.*
Pasado, *past, last.*
Soberbio, *haughty.*
Temprano, *early.*
Tonto, *foolish.*
Todo, *all.*

Exercise 21.

1. Carlos es más rico y Felipe más pobre que Juan. 2. El hijo es más joven que la hija. 3. El amo no tiene tantos amigos como el criado. 4. El hermano es tan hábil como la hermana, y la madre no menos que el padre. 5. Él tiene más suerte que mérito. 6. El príncipe no es tan soberbio como el conde. 7. El comerciante no tiene tanto dinero como el banquero, pero tiene más amigos que éste (*the latter*). 8. Mi hermano es más estudioso y más atento que yo.

9. ¿ Tiene V. un buen cuarto ? 10. Tengo el cuarto más frío en la casa. 11. Tenemos la casa más grande de la ciudad. 12. María es más amable que Luisa. 13. Julia es menos atenta que mi hermana. 14. Mi amigo tiene la casa más hermosa de la calle. 15. Déme V. algo mejor. 16. No tengo nada mejor. 17. Eduardo es más pequeño que su hermano, pero es más fuerte que él. 18. María es la mejor amiga de mi hermana. 19. Carlos y Enrique son los más grandes, pero los menos atentos de la clase. 20. Cuanto menos dinero gana, tanto más gasta. 21. ¿ Es la hija tan grande como el padre ? 22. Es menos grande que el padre, pero es más grande que la madre. 23. La hija no es tan amable como la madre. 24. Las manzanas no son menos dulces que las peras. 25. El hermano de Felipe es el hombre más rico de la ciudad. 26. ¿ Habla V. español tan bien como su hermano ? 27. Él habla mejor que yo.

Exercise 22.

1. The more money he earns the less he spends. 2. Charles is a bad boy, but Henry is the worst boy in the school. 3. The son is as rich as the father; he has four houses in the best part of the city. 4. Is Edward attentive ? 5. He is more attentive than the other boys. 6. Are you well now ? 7. I am better in the country than in the city. 8. My mother is not so old as my aunt. 9. Philip is the youngest officer of the regiment. 10. He is not less brave than the old officers. 11. I have as many books as my brother. 12. The small room is cooler than the large one. 13. The green apples are not so sweet as the others. 14. We have not so much fruit this (*este*) year as last year. 15. Henry, Peter, and John are three good boys, but John is the best of all. 16. The dog is the most faithful of all animals. 17. Is your daughter young ? 18. She is younger than my son. 19. Have you any flowers in the garden ? 20. We have the most beautiful flowers in the city. 21. The new theater is much larger than the old theater. 22. The French baker has the best bread here. 23. Will you have a piece of bread ? 24. Give me the smallest piece. 25. We are less rich than the English, but we are as happy as they. 26. Do you go out earlier than I ? 27. Yes, much earlier. 28. Here is the largest house in the city.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The comparative is usually formed in Spanish by means of adverbs, and not, as in many cases in English, by a change of termination:

V. es más rico que yo, *You are richer than I.*

2. The comparative of superiority is formed by placing **más**, *more*, before the positive, and **que**, *than*, after it:

Es más hábil que su hermano, *He is more skillful than his brother.*
Él tiene más libros que yo, *He has more books than I.*

3. The comparative of inferiority is formed by placing **menos**, *less, fewer*, before the positive, and **que**, *than*, after it:

Es menos prudente que V., *He is less prudent than you.*
Tengo menos libros que V., *I have fewer books than you.*

NOTE. — **De** is used in place of **que** before numerals. Quiero más de once naranjas, *I want more than eleven oranges.*

1. If the comparison refers, however, to a verb different from the first one, **de lo que** takes the place of **que**:

Él tiene menos dinero de lo que V. cree, *He has less money than you think.*

2. If the comparison depends on a noun, **del que** (**de la que**, **de los que**, **de las que**) is used in place of **que**, varying with the gender of the noun:

Tenía más soldados de los que creía, *He had more soldiers than he thought.*

3. If the comparative of inferiority is expressed by **no**...**tanto** (or **tanta**, **tantos**, **tantas**), or by **no**...**tan**, then the second part of the comparative is rendered by **como**:

Él no tiene tanto dinero como V., *He has not so much money as you.*
Ellos no tienen tanta plata como nosotros, *They have not as much silver as we.*
Él no es tan joven como yo, *He is not so young as I am.*

4. The comparative of equality is expressed by **tanto** (or **tanta, tantos, tantas**, according to the gender and number of the noun) and **como**, *as;* or by **tan**...**como** with an adjective or an adverb:

El hijo es tan docto como el padre, *The son is as learned as the father.*
Él obra con tanta prudencia como valor, *He acts with as much prudence as courage.*

1. **Not less than** is always translated by **no**...**menos que**...:

Yo no trabajo menos que V., *I do not work less than you.*

2. In regard to verbs, **as much as** is rendered either by **tanto como** or by **tanto cuanto**:

Pago tanto como *or* tanto cuanto vale, *I pay as much as it is worth.*

Observation. — From the above examples it will be seen that **menos** is always invariable, whilst **tanto** and **cuanto** agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer.

Cuanto, the same as **tanto**, drops the last syllable before an adjective or adverb and becomes **cuan.**

5. When several nouns or adjectives follow each other, it is sufficient to use the words **más, menos, tan**, or **tanto** before the first adjective only:

Enrique es más joven, tímido y crédulo que su hermano, *Henry is younger, more timid, and more credulous than his brother.*

Note. — It would not be a mistake, however, to repeat the adverb before every adjective in order to give more expression to the sentence.

6. The superlative relative which generally ends in English in **est** is rendered in Spanish by the adverbs **más** or **menos** joined to the positive and accompanied by the definite article, a possessive adjective, or a personal pronoun:

El más hermoso libro *or* **El** libro más hermoso, } *The handsomest book.*
El muchacho menos obediente, *The least obedient boy.*
Su más interesante obra, *His most interesting work.*

OBSERVATION. — The superlative relative of those adjectives which are placed *before* the noun may come in the superlative *before* or after the noun:

El más bonito muchacho *or* El muchacho más bonito, } — *The prettiest boy.*

But in the case of those adjectives which are placed *after* the noun, the superlative must also come *last:*

El clima más frío, *The coldest climate.*

7. When the superlative relative is an adverb modifying the verb, it is expressed by the adverbs **más** or **menos** without the definite article:

¿ Que estrella luce más ? *Which star shines the most?*
Yo creo que Venus luce más, *I think Venus shines the most.*

OBSERVATION. — These superlative relatives do not properly belong to the Spanish language, although they are always considered as comparatives, and they require a cultivated ear to be used correctly.

8. The comparatives of the adjectives **bueno**, *good;* **malo**, *bad;* **grande**, *large;* **pequeño**, *little, small;* **bajo**, *low;* **alto**, *high;* which is irregular, may also be formed regularly by means of the adverb **más**, *more:*

Bueno, *good;* más bueno, *better.*
Grande, *large;* más grande, *larger.*

OBSERVATION. — When speaking, however, of the differences of ages of two persons, **mayor** and **menor** must be used:

La hija mayor, *the eldest daughter;* el hijo menor, *the youngest son.*

Inferior and **menor** are never used when speaking of physical size, that is, of the volume or size of the objects.

9. Cuanto más...**tanto**..., *the more...the...*; **cuanto ménos**... **tanto**..., *the less...the...*, used adjectively, must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer:

Cuantas más reflexiones hace, tantas más faltas comete, — *The more he reflects* (he makes reflections), *the more mistakes he makes.*

NOTE. — Instead of **cuanto más**..., **mientras más** may be used.

Lección XII. Lesson XII.

SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Formation of the Superlative Absolute.

Pequeño, *small;*	pequeñísim-**o**, *m.*, **a**, *f. or* muy pequeñ-**o**, *m.*, **a**, *f.*,	*very small, smallest.*
Prudente, *prudent;*	prudentísimo, *very prudent.*	
Feliz, *happy;*	felicísimo, *very happy.*	
Cortés, *polite;*	cortesísimo, *very polite.*	

Adjectives ending in **co** *and* **go**:

Rico, *rich;*	riquísimo, *very rich.*
Vago, *vague;*	vaguísimo, *very vague.*

Adjectives ending in **ble**:

Amable, *amiable;*	amabilísimo, *or* muy amable, *very amiable.*
Afable, *affable;*	afabilísimo, *or* muy afable, *very affable.*

Adjectives ending in **iente**:

Ardiente, *ardent;*	ardentísimo, *very ardent.*
Ferviente, *fervent;*	ferventísimo, *very fervent.*
Luciente, *shining;*	lucentísimo, *very shining.*
Valiente, *brave;*	valentísimo, *very brave.*

Adjectives ending in **io**:

Limpio, *clean;*	limpísimo, *very clean.*
Sucio, *dirty;*	sucísimo, *very dirty.*

Irregular Superlatives.

Acre, *bitter;*	acérrimo, *very bitter.*
Amigo, *friendly;*	amicísimo, *very friendly.*
Antiguo, *ancient;*	antiquísimo, *very ancient.*
Aspero, *harsh;*	asperísimo *or* aspérrimo, *very harsh.*
Benéfico, *benevolent;*	beneficentísimo, *very benevolent.*

Bueno, *good ;*	bonísimo, *very good.*
Célebre, *celebrated ;*	celebérrimo, *very celebrated.*
Fiel, *faithful ;*	fidelísimo, *very faithful.*
Fuerte, *strong ;*	fortísimo, *very strong.*
Integro, *upright ;*	integérrimo, *very upright.*
Libre, *free ;*	libérrimo, *very free.*
Magnífico, *magnificent ;*	magnificentísimo, *very magnificent.*
Mísero, *miserable ;*	misérrimo, *very miserable.*
Pobre, *poor ;*	paupérrimo, pobrísimo, *very poor.*
Sagrado, *sacred ;*	sacratísimo, *very sacred.*
Salubre, *healthy ;*	salubérrimo, *very healthy.*
Sabio, *wise ;*	sapientísimo, *very wise.*
Venéfico, *poisonous ;*	veneficentísimo, *very poisonous.*

Adverbs.

Dulcemente, *sweetly ;*	dulcísimamente, *very* or *most sweetly.*
Sabiamente, *wisely ;*	muy sabiamente, *very wisely.*
Amablemente, *amiably ;*	amabilísimamente, *most amiably.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Pedro es rico, pero Juan es riquísimo.	Peter is rich, but John is very rich
París es una ciudad muy hermosa.	Paris is a very handsome city.
El comerciante es honradísimo.	The merchant is very honest.
La madre de María es viejísima.	Mary's mother is very old.
La torre es altísima.	The tower is very high.
El maestro es sapientísimo.	The teacher is very wise.
El caballero es cortesísimo.	The gentleman is very polite.
El general es prudentísimo.	The general is very prudent.
La señora es hermosísima.	The lady is very handsome.
Es segurísimo.	It is very sure.
El camino es larguísimo.	The road is very long.
El clima es friísimo.	The climate is very cold.
Luisa es amabilísima.	Louisa is very amiable.
Mi hermana dibuja hermosísimamente.	My sister draws most beautifully.
Él obra prudentísimamente.	He acts very prudently.

Vocabulario.	**Vocabulary.**
El amor, *the love.*	**Contento**, *satisfied.*
El camino, *the road.*	**Femenil**, *effeminate.*
El clima, *the climate.*	**Filial**, *filial.*
El comportamiento, *the behavior.*	**Gloriosamente**, *gloriously.*

El león, *the lion.*
El maestro, *the teacher.*
El pozo, *the well.*
La acción, *the action.*
La aldea, *the village.*
La comedia, *the comedy.*
La hormiga, *the ant.*
La iglesia, *the church.*
La lluvia, *the rain.*
Afable, *affable.*
Agrio, *sour.*
Benéfico, *benevolent.*
Común, *ordinary, low.*
Honrado, *honest.*
Inteligente, *intelligent.*
Interesante, *interesting.*
Largo, *long.*
Lejos, *far.*
Paternal, *paternal.*
Pío, *pious.*
Profundo, *deep.*
Sabiamente, *wisely.*
Salubre, *healthy.*
Sucio, *dirty.*
Valiente, *brave.*

Exercise 23.

1. Los dos hermanos del general son riquísimos, pero el general es muy pobre. 2. La torre de la iglesia es altísima. 3. Luisa y María son amabilísimas. 4. Los caminos estan malísimos desde la lluvia. 5. El oficial es un valentísimo soldado. 6. El clima de la isla es salubérrimo. 7. El hombrecito tiene una casa grandísima. 8. La hermana de Juan es hermosísima. 9. Las comedias de Moratín son muy hermosas. 10. Sócrates era sapientísimo. 11. Las primas de Enrique son muy pías. 12. Las calles de la ciudad son larguísimas. 13. El panadero tiene una hija muy bonita. 14. Las hormigas son pequeñísimas. 15. Juan es muy femenil. 16. El maestro habla muy sabiamente. 17. Su (*his*) amor es muy filial. 18. El príncipe es muy benéfico. 19. El vino del comerciante no es bueno; está muy agrio. 20. Los habitantes de la aldea son muy industriosos y muy afables. 21. El padre y la madre de Pedro son viejísimos. 22. Las dos señoras son muy jóvenes. 23. El soldado murió (*died*) muy gloriosamente. 24. Su comportamiento es muy común. 25. El monumento es antiquísimo.

Exercise 24.

1. The merchant is a very honest man. 2. My father is very benevolent. 3. My brother's friends are very poor. 4. His action is very paternal. 5. His love is very filial. 6. The banker's house is very large. 7. New York is a very rich city. 8. The physician has very good sons. 9. The climate of the island is very cold. 10. The lion is very strong. 11. Henry's sister is very amiable, but his cousin

(*fem.*) is more affable. 12. The apples are very sweet. 13. The rooms in (*de*) the house are very small. 14. The river is very deep. 15. The trees in the (*del*) garden are very green. 16. The two boys are very sick. 17. We have now a very good servant. 18. The water in the well is very cold. 19. Mary's brothers are very intelligent. 20. I am very happy to-day. 21. The two Frenchmen are very far from here. 22. The soldiers of the general are very brave. 23. The streets are now very dirty. 24. My book is very interesting.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The superlative absolute is either formed by placing the adverb **muy**, *very*, before the positive, or by adding to the same the termination **ísimo** (**ísima, ísimos, ísimas**, according to the gender and number of the noun to which the adjective refers) if it ends with a consonant.

If the positive ends with a vowel, however, this last letter is dropped and the same terminations added:

Grande, *large;* muy grande, *or* grandísimo, *very large.*
Cortés, *polite;* muy cortés, *or* cortesísimo, *very polite.*

2. Adjectives ending in **co** and **go** form their superlative in **quísimo** and **guísimo** to preserve the hard sound of **c** and **g**, which they have in the positive:

Rico, *rich;* riquísimo, *very rich.*
Vago, *vague;* vaguísimo, *very vague.*

3. Adjectives ending in **ble** change this last syllable into **bilísimo**:

Amable, *amiable;* amabilísimo, *very amiable.*
Afable, *affable;* afabilísimo, *very affable.*

4. Adjectives ending in **iente** drop the **i** in the superlative, and change the termination **iente** into **entísimo**:

Ardiente, *ardent;* ardentísimo, *very ardent.*
Valiente, *brave;* valentísimo, *very brave.*

5. Adjectives ending in **io** drop these two letters to avoid the repetition of the **i**, and add **ísimo**:

Limpio, *clean;* limpísimo, *very clean.*

EXCEPTIONS. — The adjectives **frío**, *cold*, and **pío**, *pious*, make, however, **friísimo** and **piísimo** in the superlative.

6. The superlative absolute of adverbs ending in **mente** is also formed by placing the adverb **muy**, *very*, before them, or by changing the termination **emente** or **amente** into **ísimamente**.

Dulcemente, *sweetly;*	dulcísimamente, *very* or *most sweetly.*
Amablemente, *amiably;*	amabilísimamente, *very* or *most amiably.*

7. It must be observed that the superlative formed with the termination **ísimo** is stronger than that formed with the adverb **muy**, *very*. **Riquísimo** expresses, therefore, a higher degree than **muy rico**, *very rich*. Elegance requires also the termination **ísimo** instead of the adverb **muy** when the superlative is preceded by the indefinite article **un, uno, una**. Therefore, **es un valentísimo soldado**, *he is a very brave soldier*, is preferable to **es un muy valiente soldado.**

8. Certain adjectives and adverbs do not admit of the termination of the superlative. This is more especially the case with those ending with **l, i, n**, and a few with **r**, as:

Paternal, *paternal;* maternal, *maternal;* filial, *filial;* femenil, *effeminate;* igual, *equal;* varonil, *manly;* turquí, *dark blue;* ruin, *low;* común, *ordinary.*

In case of doubt the student will, therefore, adopt preferably the adverb, **muy.**

9. Some adjectives form their superlative most irregularly, as is seen by the list given above.

Lección XIII. Lesson XIII.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

PREPOSITIVE.

Singular.		Plural.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.	
Mi,		**mis;**		*my.*
Tu,		**tus;**		*thy.*
Su,		**sus;**		*his, her, its.*
Nuestro,	**nuestra,**	**nuestros,**	**nuestras;**	*our.*
Vuestro,	**vuestra,**	**vuestros,**	**vuestras;**	*your.*
Su,		**sus;**		*their, your.*

POSTPOSITIVE.

Mío,	**mía,**	**míos,**	**mías;**	*my.*
Tuyo,	**tuya,**	**tuyos,**	**tuyas;**	*thy.*
Suyo,	**suya,**	**suyos,**	**suyas;**	*his, her, its.*
Nuestro,	**nuestra,**	**nuestros,**	**nuestras;**	*our.*
Vuestro,	**vuestra,**	**vuestros,**	**vuestras;**	*your.*
Suyo,	**suya,**	**suyos,**	**suyas;**	*their, your.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Mi padre es bueno.	My father is good.
Mi madre es buena.	My mother is good.
Tu hermano es pequeño.	Thy brother is small.
Tu hermana es pequeña.	Thy sister is small.
Su hermano es alto.	His *or* her brother is tall.
Su hermana es alta.	His *or* her sister is tall.
Nuestro tío es bueno.	Our uncle is good.
Nuestra tía es buena.	Our aunt is good.
Su amigo es joven.	Your friend is young.
Su amigo de V. es joven.	
El amigo de V. es joven.	
Su casa es grande.	Their house is large.
Su casa de ellos es grande.	
Mis amigos son felices.	My friends are happy.
Sus hermanos son ricos.	His (her *or* their) brothers are rich.
Sus libros están aquí.	Your books are here.
Sus libros de V. están aquí.	
Los libros de V. están aquí.	

Mi hermano y mi hermana son jóvenes.	My brother and sister are young.
Su tío, su tía, y sus primos están malos.	His (*or* her) uncle, aunt, and cousins are sick.
Aquí está uno de mis amigos.	Here is one of my friends.
El perro está con su amo.	The dog is with its master.
El árbol pierde sus hojas.	The tree loses its leaves.

Déme V. *la* mano.	Give me *your* hand.
Él tiene su sombrero en *la* mano.	He has his hat in *his* hand.
El soldado ha perdido *el* brazo.	The soldier has lost *his* arm.

Su, *his, her, your, their.*

Su libro *or* el libro de él.	His book.
Su libro *or* el libro de ella.	Her book.
Su (*or* el) libro de V., *sing.*	Your book.
Su (*or* el) libro de VV., *pl.*	
Su (*or* el) libro de ellos, *masc.*	Their book.
Su (*or* el) libro de ellas, *fem.*	
Sus libros *or* los libros de él, etc. etc.	His books, etc.

Adiós, padre mío.	Good-by, father.
Sí, madre mía.	Yes, mother.
No, hijo mío.	No, my son.
Son amigos nuestros.	They are our friends.
Son enemigos suyos.	They are his enemies.
Un amigo mío.	A friend of mine.
Un criado nuestro.	A servant of ours.
Un amigo suyo.	A friend of his.

Vocabulario.

El bastón, *the cane.*
El bollo, *the cake.*
El condiscípulo, *the fellow-scholar.*
El discípulo, *the scholar, pupil.*
El ejemplo, *the example.*
El marido, *the husband.*
El padrino, *the godfather.*
El papel, *the paper.*
El privilegio, *the privilege.*
La familia, *the family.*
La leche, *the milk.*
La libertad, *the liberty.*

Vocabulary.

La madrina, *the godmother.*
La pizarra, *the slate.*
La propiedad, *the property.*
La rienda, *the bridle.*
La silla, *the saddle.*
Al contrario, *on the contrary.*
Caliente, *warm.*
En casa, *at home.*
Más, *more.*
Sagrado, *sacred.*
Siguen, *follow.*
También, *too, also.*

Exercise 25.

1. Mi hermano y mi hermana están en casa. 2. Mis padres (*parents*) están en el jardín. 3. Nuestras casas son hermosas. 4. ¿ Quién tiene mi papel, mi pluma y mis lápices ? 5. No tenemos ni el papel, ni la pluma ni los lápices de V. 6. La mujer de nuestro médico es la hermana de mi banquero. 7. ¿ Tienen los discípulos sus libros ? 8. Tienen sus libros y sus pizarras. 9. El marido de mi prima está en París. 10. ¿ Buenos días, tía, dónde están mis primos ? 11. Están en el jardín. 12. ¿ Dónde estás, hijo mío ? 13. Estoy aquí en el cuarto. 14. Mi amigo es pobre, pero un hermano suyo es muy rico. 15. Nuestro tío quiere comprar la casa de mi amigo. 16. ¿ Dónde está su padre de V. ahora ? 17. Yo no sé dónde está. 18. Los sombreros de VV. son muy pequeños. 19. Nuestro cuarto está caliente. 20. Las casas de ellos son muy grandes. 21. ¿ Es V. mi amigo ? 22. Sí, señor, soy el amigo de V. y de toda su familia. 23. Los primos de Juan son los condiscípulos de mi hermano. 24. ¿ Quién quiere un pedazo de mi bollo ? 25. Yo, déme V. un pedacito. 26. ¿ Qué tiene V. en la mano ? 27. Tengo un bastoncito. 28. Los hijos siguen el ejemplo de su padre. 29. Nuestra libertad, nuestra propiedad y nuestros privilegios son sagrados. 30. Adiós, amigo mío.

Exercise 26.

1. Where is your cousin (*f.*) ? 2. She is with her husband. 3. Where is your slate ? 4. My slate is on the table. 5. Who is your godfather ? 6. Mr. Harris is my godfather, and his sister is my godmother. 7. Who is in your father's room ? 8. A friend of his. 9. Give me your hand, my friend. 10. Is Henry the friend of your brothers ? 11. He is their friend. 12. Is your physician tall or little ? 13. Our physician is very tall. 14. Who is upstairs in our room ? 15. Nobody is in your room, but some one is in your brother's room. 16. With whom are your children ? 17. They are with their mother. 18. Is your father at home ? 19. He is in his store (*tienda*). 20. Are the little boys with their aunt ? 21. They are with their uncle and aunt. 22. My sister's friend (*f.*) is very amiable, and her brothers too. 23. Our physician is already an old man. 24. Will you have more milk in your coffee ? 25. On the contrary, give me more coffee. 26. Who is in the garden ? 27. My father and mother. 28. Have you the saddle of my horse ? 29. I have its bridle, but not its saddle.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. Possessive adjectives do not agree in gender and number with the antecedent or possessor, as in English, but with the object possessed. Every possessive adjective must, therefore, agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Mi libro, *my book.* Nuestra mesa, *our table.* Mis amigos, *my friends.*

2. The possessive adjective must be repeated with every noun, unless it refers to the same person or object:

Mi padre, mi madre, y mi hermana están malos,	*My father, mother, and sister are sick.*
Señor mío y amigo,	*Sir and friend.*

3. The possessive adjective **vuestro,** *masc. sing.*, **vuestra,** *fem. sing.*, **vuestros,** *masc. pl.*, **vuestras,** *fem. pl.*, *your*, is only used in the elevated style, or when addressing the divinity, the saints, or persons in elevated situation:

Príncipe, imploro vuestro amparo, *Prince, I implore your protection.*

In place of **vuestro** the Spaniards use in the usual style the possessive adjective **su,** which also means *his, her, their.* **Vuestro** may, in fact, be compared with the personal pronoun **vosotros,** instead of which we use **usted,** *sing.*, and **ustedes,** *pl.*, with the verb in the third person singular or plural. In the same way, instead of **vuestro,** the Spaniards use the possessive adjective in the third person singular or plural.

Su sombrero, *your hat,* is therefore used instead of **vuestro sombrero;** but as it might also be translated by *his hat, her hat, their hat,* the expression **de V.** is added after the noun, and we would therefore have to say **su sombrero de V.** This addition of **de V.,** or **de VV.** may, however, be left out when the sense of the sentence sufficiently indicates to what person **su** refers:

¿ Tiene V. su sombrero? *Have you your hat?*

Remark. — The omission of **de usted** when addressing respectable persons is, however, considered vulgar and impolite.

4. Instead of **su** or **sus, el, la, los,** or **las** may be used with **de usted, de ustedes:**

El libro de V., *your book.*	La mesa de V., *your table.*
Los libros de V., *your books.*	Las mesas de V., *your tables.*

5. In order to avoid the ambiguity which might arise from the use of **su** and **sus,** the definite article is used with **de él, de ella, de ellos, de ellas:**

El libro de él, *his book.*	La casa de ellos, *their* (m.) *house.*
El libro de ella, *her book.*	La casa de ellas, *their* (f.) *house.*

6. The possessive **its** must be rendered by **su** or **sus** according to the number of the following noun:

Mi padre tiene un hermoso caballo, su color es negro,	*My father has a pretty horse, its color is black.*
El árbol pierde sus hojas,	*The tree loses its leaves.*

7. The definite article is substituted in Spanish for the possessive adjective whenever the sense of the sentence sufficiently indicates who the possessor is. This is more especially the case, when parts of the body are mentioned:

Tengo algo en *el* ojo,	*I have something in* my *eye.*
Que tiene V. en *la* mano,	*What have you* (*got*) *in* your *hand.*

8. Whenever addressing a relative or friend, the Spaniards use the noun alone, as in English, or with the possessive after the same:

Buenos días, padre (*or* padre mío),	*Good morning, father.*
Hijo (*or* hijo mío), ven aquí,	*Son, come here.*

9. The possessive adjectives **mi, tu, su,** etc., when coming *after* the noun are replaced by **mío, tuyo, suyo,** *masc. sing.;* **míos, tuyos, suyos,** *masc. pl.;* **mía, tuya, suya,** *fem. sing.;* **mías, tuyas, suyas,** *fem. pl.:*

¡ Padre mío ! *my father!*	Madre mía, *my mother;* etc.

These adjectives are placed after the noun:

1. In the vocative: **¡hijos míos!** *my sons!* If, however, an adjective or a participle precedes the noun, both forms may be used:

Mi querido padre *or* querido padre mío,	*My dear father.*

2. When an article precedes the noun:

El caballo tuyo es mayor que el mío, *Thy (your) horse is larger than mine.*
Un criado mío *or* uno de mis criados, *A servant of mine.*

3. When an adverb precedes the noun:

Tan amigos nuestros se mostraron, *They showed themselves so much our friends.*

Lección XIV. Lesson XIV.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.	
El mío,	la mía,	los míos,	las mías,	*mine, my own.*
~~El tuyo,~~	~~la tuya,~~	~~los tuyos,~~	~~las tuyas,~~	~~*thine, thy own.*~~
El suyo,	la suya,	los suyos,	las suyas,	*his, hers, its.*
El nuestro,	la nuestra,	los nuestros,	las nuestras,	*ours, our own.*
~~El vuestro,~~	~~la vuestra,~~	~~los vuestros,~~	~~las vuestras,~~	
El suyo,	la suya,	los suyos,	las suyas,	*yours, your own*
El suyo,	la suya,	los suyos,	las suyas,	*theirs, their own.*

El de él,	la de él,	los de él,	las de él,	*his.*
El de ella,	la de ella,	los de ella,	las de ella,	*hers.*
El de nosotros,	la de nosotros,	los de nosotros,	las de nosotros,	*ours.*
El de usted,	la de usted,	los de usted,	las de usted,[1]	*your*
El de ustedes,	la de ustedes,	los de ustedes,	las de ustedes,[2]	*your*
El de ellos,	la de ellos,	los de ellos,	las de ellos,[3]	*theirs.*
El de ellas,	la de ellas,	los de ellas,	las de ellas,[4]	*theirs.*

Declension.

Masculine Singular.		Feminine Singular.	
El mío,	*mine;*	la mía,	*mine.*
Del mío,	*of mine;*	de la mía,	*of mine.*
Al mío,	*to mine;*	á la mía,	*to mine.*

[1] Singular. [2] Plural. [3] Masculine. [4] Feminine.

Masculine Plural.		*Feminine Plural.*	
Los míos,	*mine;*	**las mías,**	*mine.*
De los míos,	*of mine;*	**de las mías,**	*of mine.*
Á los míos,	*to mine;*	**á las mías,**	*to mine.*
ETC.,	*etc.,*	ETC.,	*etc.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Mi padre y el tuyo son amigos.	My father and thine are friends.
Tu hermano y el mío están aquí.	Thy brother and mine are here.
Tengo el libro de V. y el mío.	I have your book and mine.
Mi lápiz y el de V. son de oro.	My pencil and yours are of gold.
Su amigo de V. y el nuestro son altos.	Your friend and ours are tall.
Su caballo de V. y el de ellos son negros,	Your horse and theirs are black.
Mi casa y la suya (la de él) son nuevas.	My house and his are new.
Su pluma (la pluma de él) y la nuestra son de acero.	His pen and ours are of steel.
Mis libros y los suyos son hermosos.	My books and his are handsome.
Nuestros amigos y los de V. están en Francia.	Our friends and yours are in France.
Nuestras sillas y las de ellos son de caoba.	Our chairs and theirs are of mahogany.
¿ Tiene él mi lápiz ? — Tiene el suyo.	Has he my pencil ? — He has his own.
¿ Tiene ella mi libro ? — Tiene el suyo.	Has she my book ? — She has her own.
¿ Tiene V. mi pluma ? — Tengo la mía,	Have you my pen ? — I have mine.
¿ Tiene ella su aguja ? — Tiene la suya.	Has she her needle ? — She has her own.
Hablo de mi padre y del suyo (del de V.).	I speak of my father and of yours.
Escribo á mi madre y á la de V.	I write to my mother and to yours.
Él habla de mis hermanos y de los suyos.	He speaks of my brothers and of his.
Escribimos á nuestros amigos y á los de ellos.	We write to our friends and to theirs.
Quiero lo mío.	I wish for what is mine.
Cada uno quiere lo suyo.	Every one wishes for what is his.

Vocabulario.

El baile, *the ball.*
El cocinero, *the cook.*
El guante, *the glove.*
El maestro, *the teacher.*
El profesor, *the professor.*
La escritura, *the writing.*
La familia, *the family.*
En alguna parte, *somewhere, anywhere.*
Á lo menos, *at least.*
Alto, *tall.*
Como, *how.*

Vocabulary.

¿ Conoce V. ? *Do you know? are you acquainted with.*
Conozco, *I know, I am acquainted with.*
¿ De quién ? *whose?*
¿ Escribe V. ? *do you write?*
Escribo, *I write.*
¿ Habla V. ? *do you speak?*
Hablo, *I speak.*
Magnífico, *splendid.*
Otra cosa, *something else.*
Que, *which.*

Exercise 27.

1. ¿ Tiene V. mi libro ? 2. No, señor, no tengo el de V. 3. ¿ Como son los caballos ? 4. El mío es negro, y el de él es blanco. 5. Los hermanos de V. son altos, y los míos son pequeños. 6. Los Ingleses ricos tienen cocineros franceses, los de ellos no son tan buenos. 7. La familia de su madre de V. es rica, pero la familia de la mía es pobre. 8. ¿ Conoce V. los jardines de los Ingleses ? 9. Conozco sus jardines y sus casas. 10. Nuestros jardines son hermosos, pero los de ellos son magníficos. 11. ¿ Habla V. de mi casa ? 12. No hablo de la suya, hablo de la mía. 13. ¿ Quiere V. un pedazo de bollo ? 14. Sí, déme V. un pedazo del suyo. 15. ¿ Para quién son las manzanas, para su hermano de V. ó para el mío ? 16. Las manzanas son para el mío, tengo otra cosa para el de V. 17. ¿ Escribe V. á mis amigos ? 18. Escribo á los míos, á los de V., y á los de él. 19. ¿ Quién tiene nuestros libros ? 20. El profesor tiene los de V. y los nuestros. 21. La hermana de V. es joven, y la mía también. 22. La madre de V., y la de él están en el jardín. 23. ¿ Tiene V. mi lápiz ? 24. No, señor, tengo el mío, el de V. está sobre la mesa. 25. Don Carlos Marty es mi maestro de escritura, quién es el de V. ? 26. Es también el mío. 27. Enrique es el amigo de V., pero no es el mío. 28. ¿ De quién es la casa ? 29. La casa pequeña es mía, y la grande es de mi hermana. 30. La casa es pequeña, pero á lo menos es mía.

Exercise 28.

1. Who has my piece of cake ? 2. I have mine, but not yours. 3. Where are your gloves ? 4. Mine are here; where are yours ?

5. Mine are somewhere in the room. 6. Do you wish the large or the small hat? 7. I wish mine. 8. Have I your hat? 9. No, you have your own. 10. You have no inkstand, will you have mine? 11. No, thank you, I don't wish yours. 12. Is your house large? 13. Our house is very large. 14. My book is French, yours is English, and his is German. 15. Do you speak of our friends? 16. I speak of yours and of mine. 17. Who is in our room? 18. Your brother is in yours, and my sister is in mine. 19. Mr. Smith's children (*hijos*) are taller than ours. 20. My brother's house is large, but mine is larger. 21. The large book is mine, and the small one is his. 22. Which pens are the better, yours or mine? 23. Mine are the best. 24. My sister and yours are at (*en*) the ball. 25. Is the slate yours? 26. The slate is mine, but the pencil is not mine. 27. Do you write to your father? 28. I write to mine and to yours. 29. Have you two tables in your room? 30. I have one table in my room, but my brother has three tables in his. 31. Are the tables his? 32. Two are his, and one is mine. 33. All the books are ours.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The possessive pronouns, like the possessive adjectives, agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

Mi hermano y el suyo,	*My brother and his* (or *hers*).
Mi madre y la suya,	*My mother and his* (or *hers*).
Mis libros y los suyos,	*My books and his* (or *hers*).
Nuestras amigas y las suyas,	*My friends* (fem.) *and his* (or *hers*).

2. More expression can be given to these pronouns by adding to them the words **mismo**, masc., **misma**, fem., *very same;* and **propio**, masc., **propia**, fem., *own:*

El mío mismo,	*My own.*
La suya misma,	*His* (*her your*) *own.*
El suyo propio,	*His* (*her* or *your*) *own.*

3. Instead of *el vuestro, la vuestra, los vuestros, las vuestras,* the Spaniards use **el suyo**, *m. s.*, **la suya**, *f. s.*, which really

mean ***his*** or ***hers,*** when the meaning of the sentence is sufficiently clear:

Hablo de mi padre y del suyo,	*I speak of my father and of yours.*
Quiero mi pluma, y la suya,	*I want my pen and yours.*

4. When, however, the sentence is not sufficiently clear, **el (la, los, las, lo) de V.** is used for *yours:*

Mi libro y el de V.,	*My book and yours,* sing.
Mi casa y la de VV.,	*My house and yours,* pl.

5. In the same way, if we wish to indicate clearly the difference between *his, hers,* or *theirs,* we use **el de él, el de ella, el de ellos,** and **el de ellas,** instead of *el suyo, la suya,* etc.:

Aquí está mi casa y allá está la de ellos,	*Here is my house and there is theirs.*
La mesa es de él,	*The table is his.*

6. The definite article may also be used with the preposition **de** before **nosotros,** etc., instead of *el nuestro, la nuestra,* etc.:

Los libros de ellos y los de nosotros,	*Their books and ours.*

7. The possessive pronouns are also used with the neuter article **lo,** and mean *the property of, what belongs to,* etc.:

Lo tuyo y lo mío,	*Thine and mine* (tuum et meum). *Thy property and mine.* *What belongs to thee and to me.*

8. The verb **ser,** *to be,* with or without the adjective **mío,** *m.,* **mía,** *f.;* **tuyo,** *m.,* **tuya,** *f.;* **suyo,** *m.,* **suya,** *f.;* and **nuestro,** *m.,* **nuestra,** *f.,* is frequently used to express possession. When used without the adjective, it is accompanied by the preposition **de:**

El libro es mío,	*The book is mine.*
La casa es suya,	*The house is his* (*hers* or *yours*).
El caballo es nuestro,	*The horse is ours.*
El libro es de mi hermano,	*The book is my brother's.*

9. **¿Conoce V.?** (from *conocer*), and **¿sabe V.?** (from *saber*) both mean *do you know?* but **conocer** means rather *to know by*

the senses, while **saber** means more properly *to know by the mind, to be versed in.* **Conocer,** besides, is applied to persons and things, while **saber** is said only of things, and may precede another verb:

Yo conozco al hombre,[1]	*I know the man.*
¿ Conoce V. mi casa ?	*Do you know my house ?*
¿ Sabe V. su lección ?	*Do you know your lesson ?*
¿ Sabe V. leer ?	*Do you know how to read ?*
Conozco *or* sé el inglés,	*I know the English language.*

Lección XV. Lesson XV.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masculine.	Feminine.		Masculine.	Feminine.	
Este,	**esta,**	*this ;*	**estos,**	**estas,**	*these.*
Ese,	**esa,**	*that ;*	**esos,**	**esas,**	*those.*
Aquel,	**aquella,**	*that ;*	**aquellos,**	**aquellas,**	*those.*

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Este hombre es rico.	This man is rich.
Esta mujer es joven.	This woman is young.
Ese libro y esa pluma son míos.	That book and that pen are mine.
Aquel soldado es valiente.	That soldier is brave.
Aquella mujer es pobre.	That woman is poor.
Estos hombres son ricos.	These men are rich.
Estas mujeres son jóvenes.	These women are young.
Aquellos muchachos son jóvenes.	Those boys are young.

Adverbs and Adjectives of Quantity.

Cuanto, m., **cuanta,** f., *how much.*
Poco, m., **poca,** f., *little.*
Tanto, m., **tanta,** f., *so much, as much.*
Mucho, m., **mucha,** f., *much.*
Demasiado, m., **demasiada,** f., *too much, too.*
Unos cuantos, algunos, *some.*
Bastante, s., **bastantes,** pl., *enough.*
Cuantos, m., **cuantas,** f., *how many.*
Pocos, m., **pocas,** f., *few.* [*many.*
Tantos, m., **tantas,** f., *so many, as*
Muchos, m., **muchas,** f., *many.*
Demasiados, m., **demasiadas,** f., *too many, too.*
Unos pocos, *a few.*

[1] See page 106, 3.

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El baúl, *the trunk.*	**La experiencia**, *the experience.*	**Ahí**, *there.*
El clavel, *the pink.*	**La fiesta**, *the holy day.*	**Londres**, *London.*
El país, *the country.*	**La ropa**, *the clothes.*	**¿ Va V. ?** *are you going ?*
La carta, *the letter.*	**Á casa**, *to the house.*	**Voy**, *I am going.*

Exercise 29.

1. ¿ Quién es esta señora ? 2. Esta señora es mi madre, y este caballero es mi padre. 3. ¿ Á dónde va V. esta mañana ? 4. Voy á casa de mi primo. 5. ¿ Quiere V. esta rosa ó aquel clavel ? 6. No quiero ninguna flor. 7. Este muchachito es mi hermano, y esta muchachita es mi hermana. 8. El general es el padre de estos muchachos. 9. ¿ Son bonitas aquellas señoritas ? 10. Son jóvenes, pero no son muy bonitas. 11. ¿ Habla francés aquel hombre ? 12. Habla inglés, pero no habla francés. 13. Ese Inglés es el amigo de aquel Francés. 14. Aquel oficial es hermano de esta señora. 15. El capitan de este buque es joven, pero tiene mucha experiencia. 16. ¿ Es pobre esta mujer ? 17. Esta mujer es pobre, pero aquella mujer es rica. 18. ¿ Son franceses esos muchachos ? 19. Son alemanes. 20. ¿ Qué tiene V. en aquellos baúles ? 21. Tengo todos mis libros en el pequeño baúl, y mi ropa en el grande. 22. ¿ Son para V. estas cartas ? 23. No, señor, son para mi padre. 24. ¿ Quién vive en esa casa ? 25. El padre de esos muchachos vive ahí. 26. Este hombre es el padre de aquellos muchachos, y esta mujer es la madre de aquellas muchachas. 27. Esta señora es de París, y su prima de Londres.

Exercise 30.

1. Is this book yours ? 2. This book is mine, but that book is my brother's. 3. Who is that little boy ? 4. He is (*the*) son of that lady. 5. This gentleman and that lady are French. 6. Are you the brother of these ladies ? 7. I am their cousin. 8. Give me a piece of that cake. 9. That cake is not mine. 10. This book and pencil are for your brother. 11. This house is higher than that church. 12. Where are you going this afternoon ? 13. I don't know yet. 14. These flowers are very beautiful. 15. Are these two gentlemen brothers ? 16. They are not brothers, they are friends. 17. Do you know that country ? 18. I know all those countries. 19. Is this gentleman the husband of that lady ? 20. No, he is her brother.

21. This house is too small for us. 22. How many children has that man? 23. He has three or four. 24. Have you money enough (enough money)? 25. I have not much, but I have enough. 26. Have you much money? 27. I have very little. 28. You speak too much.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Este, *m.*, **esta**, *f.*, designate the person or object nearer to the speaker; **ese**, *m.*, **esa**, *f.*, the person or object nearer to the person spoken to; while **aquel**, *m.*, **aquella**, *f.*, designate the person or object equally distant and quite remote from the speaker and the person who is addressed:

Este hombre. — Ese libro. — Aquel lápiz.	*This man. — That book. — That pencil.*
Esta mujer. — Esa pluma. — Aquella cosa.	*This woman. — That pen. — That thing.*

The same rule is applicable to the plural of these demonstrative adjectives:

Estos hombres. — Esos libros. — Aquellos lápices.	*These men. — Those books. — Those pencils.*
Estas mujeres. — Esas plumas. — Aquellas cosas.	*These women. — These pens. — Those things.*

2. Although the demonstrative adjectives precede the nouns, they are placed sometimes after them to express contempt, anger, or irony:

Al pícaro ese le haré yo castigar,	*I will have this rogue punished.*

3. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated before every noun:

Este hombre, esta mujer y este muchacho están malos,	*This man, woman, and child are sick.*

4. Donde, *where*, is preceded by the preposition **á** when the verb expresses motion, and by **en** when it expresses position or situation. **Á donde** and **en donde** correspond in fact to the English ***whither*** and ***wherein:***

¿Á dónde va V.?	*Where are you going to?*
¿En dónde está V.?	*Where are you?*

Lección XVI. Lesson XVI.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular. Masculine.	Plural. Masculine.
Éste, *this one, the latter;*	**éstos,** *these, the latter.*
Ése, *that one;*	**ésos,** *those.*
Aquél, *that one, the former;*	**aquéllos,** *those, the former.*
Feminine.	**Feminine.**
Ésta, *this one, the latter;*	**éstas,** *these, the latter.*
Ésa, *that one;*	**ésas,** *those.*
Aquélla, *that one, the former;*	**aquéllas,** *those, the former.*

Neuter.

Esto, *this (this thing).*
Eso, **Aquello,** } *that (that thing).*

El, la, los, las, lo, *as Pronouns.*

El de, — la de,	*That of.*
Los de, — las de,	*Those of.*
El *or* la de hierro,	*The iron one* (that of iron).
Los *or* las de oro,	*The gold ones* (those of gold).
El *or* la que yo tengo,	*The one I have* (that which I have).
Los *or* las que yo tengo,	*Those I have* (those which I have).

El que, la que, los que, las que, lo que.

El que está aquí,	*The one who is here* (he who is here).
La que está allí,	*The one who is there* (she who is there).
Los que dicen eso,	*Those who say that* (they who say that).
Las que hablan,	*Those* (fem.) *who speak* (they (*fem.*) who speak).
Lo que yo tengo,	*What I have* (that which I have).

Es bueno, *it is good.*	Son buenos, *they are good.*
Es muy hermoso, *it is very pretty.*	Son muy hermosos, *they are very pretty.*
Es mi libro, *it is my book.*	Son míos, *they are mine.*
¿Qué es? *what is it?*	¿Está listo? *is it ready?*

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Mi lápiz y el de mi hermano.	My pencil and my brother's (that of my brother).
Mis lápices y los de mi hermano.	My pencils and my brother's (those of my brother).
Mi pluma y la de mi hermana.	My pen and my sister's (that of my sister).
Mis plumas y las de mi hermana.	My pens and my sister's (those of my sister).
Mis libros y los de mi amigo.	My books and my friend's (those of my friend).
Mis casas y las de mi hermano.	My houses and my brother's (those of my brother).
Éste es grande, aquél es pequeño, *m. sing.*	This one is large, that one is small.
Ésta es grande, aquélla es pequeña, *f. sing.*	This one is large, that one is small.
Éstos son buenos, aquéllos son malos, *m. pl.*	These are good, those are bad.
Éstas son buenas, aquéllas son malas, *f. pl.*	These are good, those are bad.
Esto es mío, aquello es suyo.	This (thing) is mine, that (thing) is his.
¿ Qué libro quiere V. ? — Éste ó aquél.	What (which) book will you have ? — This one or that one.
¿ Qué pluma quiere V. ? — Ésta ó aquélla.	What (which) pen will you have ? — This one or that one.
¿ Qué libros quiere V. ? — Estos ó aquéllos.	What (which) books will you have ? — These or those.
¿ Qué plumas quiere V. ? — Éstas ó aquéllas.	What (which) pens will you have ? — These or those.
¿ Qué quiere V. ? — Eso.	What will you have ? — That.
¿ Qué cuchillo vende V. ? — El de hierro.	What knife do you sell ? — The iron one.
¿ Qué casas compra V. ? — Las de madera.	What houses do you buy ? — The wooden ones.
Esto es bueno, aquello es malo.	This is good, that is bad.
Déme V. eso.	Give me that.
Lo que tengo es bueno.	What I have is good.

¿ Qué es eso ?	What is that ?
¿ Quién es ? — Soy yo.	Who is it ? — It is **I.**
¿ Quién habla? — Es ella.	Who speaks ? — It is **she.**
Él es Inglés.	He is English.
Ellas son Francesas.	They (*fem.*) are French.
Su hermano es sastre.	His brother is a tailor.

¿ V. tiene dinero, no es verdad ?	You have money, have you **not** ?
¿ Él está malo, no es verdad ?	He is sick, is he not ?
¿ V. habla inglés, no es verdad ?	You speak English, do you not ?
¿ V. quiere comprar la casa, no es verdad ?	You wish to buy the house, do you not ?
¿ V. puede venir, no es verdad ?	You can come, can you not ?
¿ V. salió, no es verdad ?	You went out, did you not ?

Vocabulario.

El baúl, *the trunk.*
El papel, *the paper.*
El paquete, *the package.*
El pulpero, *the grocer.*
El vaso, *the glass.*
La plata, *the silver.*
Las tijeras, *the scissors.*
Ayer, *yesterday.*

Vocabulary.

De este modo, *in this way.*
Demasiado, *too, too much, too many.*
Dice, *says.*
¿ Hace V. ? *do you do ?*
Julio, *Julius.*
Limpio, *clean.*
Por supuesto, *of course.*

Exercise 31.

1. ¿ Tiene V. mis tijeras ? 2. Tengo las de su hermana. 3. ¿ Quiere V. este pedazo de pan ó aquél ? 4. Déme V. ése. 5. ¿ Dónde están mis libros ? 6. Los de V. están en mi cuarto, pero los de su hermano están aquí. 7. ¿ Quiere V. el reloj de oro ó el de plata ? 8. Quiero el de oro, por supuesto. 9. Carlos y Eduardo ya tienen sus baúles, el de Carlos es muy grande, pero el de Eduardo es demasiado pequeño. 10. Déme V. otra pluma, la que tengo es muy mala. 11. Él que dice eso, es un hombre malo. 12. ¿ Tiene V. la pluma de Enrique ? 13. Tengo la de Julio. 14. Aquí está el libro de mi hermano y el mío ; éste es más bonito que aquél. 15. Las manzanas de hoy son mejores que las de ayer. 16. ¿ Quiere V. este vaso ó aquél ? 17. Déme V. el que V. tiene ; el que está allí no está limpio. 18. ¿ Sabe V. lo que tengo ? 19. Yo sé muy bien lo que V. tiene. 20. ¿ Qué quiere V. aquí ? 21. Yo quiero lo que es mío. 22. ¿ Qué es eso ? 23. Es

un pedazo de papel. 24. Estos dos hombres son hermanos, el que tiene el sombrero negro habla francés. 25. ¿ Quién está á la puerta ? 26. Es un muchacho con un paquete. 27. ¿ Es un paquete grande ? 28. No, es un paquete muy pequeño. 29. ¿ Es aquello para V. ? 30. No, es para mi hermano.

Exercise 32.

1. I have two pencils; this one is for you and that one for your sister. 2. These gentlemen are French, and those are English; the latter are rich, but the former are poor. 3. Are the apples good ? 4. Those of our grocer are very good. 5. Is this package for you ? 6. No; not this one, but that one. 7. What pen will you have ? 8. Give me the gold one. 9. My house is small, but my brother's is much smaller. 10. Give me that. 11. I want this, but not that. 12. Is this well ? 13. This is well, but that is not so well. 14. Are those gentlemen English ? 15. They are French. 16. Who is at the door ? is it Edward ? 17. No, sir, it is Henry. 18. What is that ? 19. It is a little box. 20. For whom is that ? 21. It is for your brother. 22. Is it good ? 23. It is not good. 24. How do you do that ? 25. In this way ; it is very easy. 26. Do you speak English or French ? 27. I speak English, but not French. 28. Who is the man at the door ? 29. It is not a man, it is a woman. 30. Will you have this or that ? 31. I don't wish anything. 32. Who is it ? 33. It is I.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. In the foregoing lesson the difference between **este, ese,** and **aquel** has been sufficiently explained. The same rule (L. 15, R. 1) is applicable to the neuter **esto, eso,** and **aquello,** that is to say, that **esto** refers to the object nearer to the speaker ; **eso** to the object nearer to the person spoken to, and **aquello** the object equally distant from the speaker and the person who is addressed :

Esto es bueno, eso es malo ; pero aquello es peor,	*This (thing) is good, that one is bad ; but that one there is worse.*

2. When there are two objects in the sentence to which ref-

erence is to be made, **aquel** is used for the first one mentioned, and **este** for the last mentioned.

The same rule is applicable to the feminine, the plural, and the neuter:

Carlos era grande, Federico ambicioso; éste (*Federico*) valiente, aquél (*Carlos*) poderoso,	*Charles was great, Frederic ambitious; the latter brave, the former powerful.*

3. Esto is also used when referring to something which the speaker has already mentioned; and **eso** when referring to something mentioned by the person who is addressed:

Esto que yo digo, es cierto,	*What I say is certain.*
Eso que V. dice, no es verdad,	*What you say is not true.*

4. When a fourth object is referred to, the adjective **otro,** *other,* is added to the adjective, or to the pronoun:

Aquel otro libro,	*That other book.*
Aquel otro,	*That other one.*

5. The word **mismo** is often added to the demonstrative pronouns to call attention more especially to them:

Éste mismo,	*This very* or *same one.*
Aquél mismo,	*That very* or *same one.*

6. That of is rendered by *el de* or *la de,* and **those of** by *los de* or *las de,* according to the gender of the noun referred to. The English formation of the possessive does not exist in Spanish:

Mi libro y el de mi amigo,	*My book and my friend's.*
Nuestra casa y la de nuestros amigos,	*Our house and our friends'.*
Mis amigos y los de V.	*My friends and yours.*
Sus libros de V. y los de Juan,	*Your books and John's.*

7. That which, the one which, are rendered by *el que* or *la que,* and **those which,** by *los que* or *las que.*

Quien, *who,* may be used instead of *que* at the beginning of a sentence when speaking of a person:

Él que *or* **él quien habla mal de su prójimo, no será admitido en mi casa,**	*He who (whoever) speaks ill of his neighbor shall not be admitted in my house.*

8. The article and the demonstrative or relative pronoun should never be separated in Spanish, and when this separation takes place in English a different construction must be adopted :

Yerran los que dicen eso, *Those are mistaken who say that.*

9. **Ello** is often used for *eso*, and corresponds also to the pronoun **it**:

Hablamos de ello, *We speak of it.*

10. The pronoun **it** and its corresponding **they** for the plural, when the subjects of a sentence, are generally suppressed in Spanish :

Es bueno, *it is good ;* Son buenos, *they are good.*
Está aquí, *it is here ;* Están allí, *they are there.*

Lección XVII. Lesson XVII.

AUXILIARY VERB **HABER**, *to have.*

Yo he,	*I have.*
Tú has,	*thou hast.*
Él ha,	*he has.*
Ella ha,	*she has.*
V. ha,	*you have.*
Nosotros hemos,	*we have.*
Vosotros habéis,	*you have.*
Ellos (*m.*) han,	*they have.*
Ellas (*f.*) han,	*they have.*
VV. han,	*you have.*

Regular Verbs.

Verbs of the 1st Conjugation, ending in **ar**:

Hablar, hablado,	*to speak, spoken.*
Cortar, cortado,	*to cut, cut.*
Tomar, tomado,	*to take, taken.*
Comprar, comprado,	*to buy, bought.*

Verbs of the 2d Conjugation, ending in **er**:

Comer, comido,	*to eat, eaten.*
Beber, bebido,	*to drink, drunk.*
Vender, vendido,	*to sell, sold.*
Temer, temido,	*to fear, feared.*

Verbs of the 3d Conjugation, ending in **ir**:

Recibir, recibido,	*to receive, received.*
Subir, subido,	*to ascend, to go up; ascended, gone up.*
Partir, partido,	*to divide, divided.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿ Á quién ha hablado V. ?	To whom have you spoken ?
He hablado á este hombre.	I have spoken to this man.
Mi hermano ha vendido su casa.	My brother has sold his house.
Los muchachos han comido el pan.	The boys have eaten the bread.
¿ Han recibido VV. dinero ?	Have you received any money ?
Hemos recibido un poco.	We have received a little.
¿ Dónde ha estado V. ?	Where have you been ?
He estado en la casa.	I have been in the house.
¿ Quién ha tomado mi sombrero ?	Who has taken my hat ?
Nadie ha tomado su sombrero.	Nobody has taken your hat.
Hemos sido muy felices.	We have been very happy.
¿ Quién ha salido ?	Who has gone out ?
Nadie ha salido.	Nobody has gone out.
No he comprado nada.	I have not bought anything.
He dado un pedazo de pan al pobre.	I have given a piece of bread to the poor man.

Vocabulario.	**Vocabulary.**
El cajón, *the drawer.*	**Estar**, *to be.*
El campo, *the country.*[1]	**Europa**, *Europe.*
El país, *the country.*[1]	**Hallar**, *to find.*
El pañuelo, *the handkerchief.*	**Malo**, *unwell.*
El duro, *the dollar.*	**Otro**, *another.*
El tiempo, *the time.*	**Perder**, *to lose.*
La cosa, *the thing.*	**Porque**, *because.*
Las mercancías, *the goods.*	**Salir**, *to go out.*
La sopa, *the soup.*	**Ser**, *to be.*
Aprender, *to learn.*	**Tener**, *to have.*
Castigar, *to punish.*	**Todo el mundo**, *everybody.*
Dar, *to give.*	**Varios, as**, *several.*
Desobediente, *disobedient.*	**Vivir**, *to live.*

[1] **Campo** refers to the country contrasted with the city, while **país** means a tract of land inhabited by a nation.

Exercise 33.

1. Los muchachos han comido todas las manzanas del jardín. 2. ¿ Ha dado V. el café al caballero ? 3. No, señora, pero he dado el té á la señora. 4. ¿ Ha comprado V. una mesa ? 5. Sí, señor, he comprado una mesa de caoba. 6. ¿ En dónde ha hallado V. esto ? 7. En nuestro jardín. 8. ¿ Quién ha tomado dinero de mi cajón ? 9. Su hermano de V. ha tomado dinero y papeles. 10. ¿ Qué sopa han tenido VV. ? 11. Hemos tenido una sopa muy buena. 12. ¿ Qué han comprado VV. hoy ? 13. Hemos comprado muchísimas cosas. 14. ¿ Qué ha perdido su hermana de V.? 15. Ha perdido su pañuelo. 16. ¿ Han comprado VV. manzanas ? 17. No, señor, hemos comprado peras. 18. ¿ Ha recibido V. algo de su padre ? 19. He recibido varias cosas. 20. ¿ Ha estado V. malo ? 21. Sí, señor, he estado bastante malo. 22. ¿ Quién ha estado en la casa ? 23. Nadie ha estado en la casa, pero alguno ha estado en el jardín. 24. ¿ Porqué no ha comprado V. la casa del médico, V. que es tan rico ? 25. Nunca he sido rico. 26. ¿ Ha aprendido V. su lección ? 27. Todavía no, no he tenido tiempo. 28. ¿ De quién ha hablado V.? 29. He hablado de mis buenos amigos. 30. Mi hermano ha vendido su caballo, pero ha comprado otro más grande.

Exercise 34.

1. The soldier has given an apple to the child. 2. My sister has received two letters from Paris. 3. The children have been in the garden with their little friends. 4. Have the boys eaten the cheese ? 5. They have eaten the bread. 6. Has the general bought a house ? 7. He has bought a house in our street. 8. Have you had any money ? 9. I have had two dollars. 10. Where have you been, John ? 11. I have been in the country. 12. Have you bought your silk dress in that large store ? 13. I have bought no dress. 14. Who has been sick at your house ? 15. Everybody has been sick. 16. Charles has been disobedient and he has been punished. 17. The merchant has received many goods from Europe. 18. Have you found anything in the drawer ? 19. I have not found anything in it (*en él*). 20. Why has not your brother gone out ? 21. Because he has not been well. 22. Have you brought anything for the children ? 23. Yes, I have brought something useful for them (*ellos*). 24. Have you lived in that country ? 25. No, sir, I have never been

in that country. 26. Have you eaten enough, my friend? 27. Yes, sir, I have eaten and drunk enough. 28. Has your father gone out? 29. He has not gone out yet. 30. The soldiers have received less bread than meat.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The verb *to have* is rendered in Spanish by two different verbs, **tener** and **haber.**

Tener, of which we have already spoken (L. IV., p. 36), is used as an active verb to indicate a material or immaterial possession, and generally means *to possess, to hold,* as :

Yo tengo dinero, *I have money.*	El tiene tiempo, *he has time.*
El tiene un bastón, *he has a stick.*	Tenemos pan, *we have bread.*

Haber is used as an auxiliary verb preceding the past participle as :

He recibido dinero,	*I have received money.*
Hemos comido pan,	*We have eaten bread.*

Haber cannot be separated from the principal verb as is the case in English in interrogative sentences. Thus : *Have you given?* must be rendered by **¿ha dado V.?** and *has he come?* by **¿ha venido él?**

2. Haber was formerly used as an active verb, and had then the following Imperative :

He tu, *thou shalt have ;*	habed, *you shall have.*

It may be used even now in sentences with the infinitive :

Aprovechare cuantos medios yo puedo haber,	*I will use all the means I may have.*
Él empleó cuanta influencia pudo haber.	*He used all the influence he could command* (have).

3. The verb **tener** may be used sometimes as auxiliary, and the sense of the sentence would be but slightly altered. In

this case the participle would have to agree in gender and number with the noun:

Tengo escritas las cartas,	*I have the letters (all) written.*
Tenemos el dinero contado,	*We have the money counted.*

This way of expressing one's self ought, however, to be avoided by all those not perfectly familiar with the language, as it might lead to mistakes in style.

4. All verbs in Spanish end in **ar, er,** or **ir.**

Verbs ending in **ar** belong to the 1st Conjugation, as:

Amar, *to love;* dar, *to give;* hablar, *to speak.*

Verbs ending in **er** belong to the 2d Conjugation, as:

Comer, *to eat;* beber, *to drink;* correr, *to run;* tener, *to have.*

Verbs ending in **ir** belong to the 3d Conjugation, as:

Recibir, *to receive;* huir, *to flee;* dividir, *to divide;* salir, *to go out.*

5. All regular verbs of the 1st Conjugation end in the past participle in **ado,** and those of the 2d and 3d Conjugations in **ido.** The same may be said of nearly all the irregular verbs in the three conjugations: *amar,* **amado;** *coger,* **cogido;** *atribuir,* **atribuido;** etc.

Lección XVIII. Lesson XVIII.

VERB **HABER,** *to have* (continued.)

Irregular Participles.

Abrir, *to open;*	**abierto,** *opened.*
Cubrir, *to cover;*	**cubierto,** *covered.*
Decir, *to say, to tell;*	**dicho,** *said, told.*
Escribir, *to write;*	**escrito,** *written.*
Hacer, *to make, to do;*	**hecho,** *made, done.*
Imprimir, *to print;*	**impreso,** *printed.*
Morir, *to die;*	**muerto,** *died.*
Poner, *to put;*	**puesto,** *put.*
Solver, *to loosen;*	**suelto,** *loosed.*
Ver, *to see;*	**visto,** *seen.*
Volver, *to return;*	**vuelto,** *returned.*

Haber de *and* **tener que:**

¿ Qué he de hacer ? / ¿ Qué tengo que hacer ?	*What am I to do?*
V. ha de estudiar, / V. tiene que estudiar,	*You must study.*
¿ Qué hemos de decir ? / ¿ Qué tenemos que decir ?	*What are we to say?*
VV. han de decir la verdad, / VV. tienen que decir la verdad,	*You must tell the truth.*

Preposition **á** *and Active Verbs:*

¿ Á quién ha visto V. ?	*Whom have you seen?*
He visto *á* su padre de V.	*I have seen your father.*
Amo *á* mis amigos,	*I love my friends.*
Juan ha perdido *á* su padre,	*John has lost his father.*
El médico cura *al* enfermo,	*The physician cures the patient.*

Pero *and* **sino:**

No tengo oro, pero tengo plata,	*I have not gold, but I have silver.*
No tengo oro, sino plata,	*I have not gold, but silver.*
Él es joven, pero es muy prudente,	*He is young, but he is very prudent.*
No tenemos hermanos, sino hermanas,	*We have no brothers, but sisters.*
No hablo inglés, sino español,	*I don't speak English, but Spanish.*
Él no habla inglés, pero habla español,	*He does not speak English, but he speaks Spanish.*

Ó and **ú,** *or;* **Y** and **é,** *and:*

Él ó yo,		*He or I.*
Uno ú otro (*before* **o**),		*One or the other.*
Tío y sobrino,		*Uncle and nephew.*
Verano é invierno,	*before* **i**	*Summer and winter.*
Padre é hijo,	*or* **hi.**	*Father and son.*

Vocabulario.		**Vocabulary.**
El criado, *the servant.*	**La nieve,** *the snow.*	**Enfermo,** *ill, sick.*
El dueño, *the owner.*	**La tierra,** *the earth.*	**Escribir,** 3. *to write.*
El maestro, *the teacher.*	**La ventana,** *the window.*	**España,** f., *Spain.*
El rincón, *the corner.*	**Alguien, alguno,** *somebody, anybody.*	**Europa,** f., *Europe.*
El teatro, *the theater.*	**Así,** *thus.*	**Francia,** f., *France.*
El viaje, *the journey.*	**Con,** *with.*	**Italia,** f., *Italy.*
La batalla, *the battle.*	**Desde,** *since.*	**Sino,** *but.*
La carta, *the letter.*	**Dos,** *two.*	**Tres,** *three.*
La mañana, *the morning.*		**Viajar,** 1. *to travel.*

Exercise 35.

1. ¿ Quién ha abierto la ventana ? 2. Creo que es el criado. 3. ¿ Á quién ha visto V. en el teatro ? 4. He visto á todos mis amigos. 5. ¿ Quién ha dicho eso ? 6. El panadero ha dicho eso á mi hermano. 7. ¿ Cómo ha hecho V. eso ? 8. Así. 9. ¿ Ha escrito V. á su padre ? 10. No, señor, no he escrito todavía á nadie. 11. ¿ Ha vuelto su familia del campo ? 12. Toda la familia ha vuelto á la ciudad desde tres días. 13. ¿ Quién ha muerto en esa casa ? 14. Nadie ha muerto, pero todo el mundo está enfermo. 15. ¿ Dónde ha puesto V. mi bastón ? 16. Está en el rincón. 17. ¿ Á quién ha hablado V. en aquella casa ? 18. He hablado al dueño de la casa. 19. ¿ Ha conocido V. á mi padre ? 20. He conocido á su padre y á su madre de V. en Francia. 21. ¿ Han comprado VV. buenas manzanas ? 22. Las manzanas que hemos comprado no son muy buenas. 23. ¿ Ha visto V. á mi hermana ? 24. No he visto á nadie. 25. ¿ Qué tiene V. que hacer ? 26. Tengo muchísimo que hacer. 27. ¿ Tiene V. oro ó papel ? 28. No tengo oro, pero tengo papel. 29. Este caballero no habla sino inglés.

Exercise 36.

1. Have you seen anybody in the garden ? 2. I have seen Mr. Rojas and his son. 3. Why have you said that ? 4. I have not said anything, I have not spoken. 5. Is the door open ? 6. The door and the window are closed. 7. Have you written to your father ? 8. I have written to my father, mother, and sisters. 9. Who has put my cane in the other room ? 10. I don't know, no one has been here since this morning. 11. Has your friend returned from Europe ? 12. He has not returned yet. 13. Is this gentleman your brother ? 14. He is not my brother, but my cousin. 15. Where must you go this afternoon ? 16. I have to go out with my father. 17. The general has died in the battle. 18. Where have the children been this morning ? 19. They have been in the house. 20. With what have you written that ? 21. I have written all that with a pencil. 22. Do you know what the teacher has said ? 23. I know very well what he has said. 24. Is your uncle rich ? 25. He has been rich, but he is poor now. 26. Have the children written their letters ? 27. They have written two or three letters. 28. Do you know this gentleman ? 29. I know his brother.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The past participle agrees in gender and number with its subject when accompanied by the verbs **estar**, **ser**, *to be.*

It remains invariable when used with the auxiliary **haber**, *to have.*

He comido. — Hemos comido,	*I have eaten. — We have eaten.*
Ellos (*or* ellas) han comido,	*They have eaten.*
La carta está escrita,	*The letter is written.*
Las cartas están escritas,	*The letters are written.*
Los caminos están cubiertos de nieve,	*The roads are covered with snow.*

2. The verb **haber** is also used to express obligation, and is then followed by the preposition **de** and the Infinitive of the principal verb. The verb **tener** followed by **que** is used in the same way, and both verbs correspond then to the English verb **must.** The active verb **deber** has also the same meaning:

He de ir á la ciudad,
Tengo que ir á la ciudad, } *I must go to the city.*
Debo ir á la ciudad,

3. The object of an active verb requires the preposition **á** before it when this object is a person, a rational animal, or a thing personified:

Veo *á* un hombre,	*I see a man.*
Vemos *al* hombre,	*We see the man.*
Conocemos *á* estos caballeros,	*We know these gentlemen.*
¿*Á* quién conoce V.?	*Whom do you know?*

4. The preposition **á,** which is not translated in English, must, however, be left out in Spanish after an active verb and a person, if by the addition of this preposition the sentence should not be clearly expressed:

Envío el hijo al padre (not: envío *al* hijo al padre),		*I send the son to the father.*
Han robado *un* niño,		*They have stolen a child.*
Han robado *á* un niño	*would mean*	*They have robbed a child.*
Quiero *un* criado,	" "	*I want a servant.*
Quiero *á* un criado,	" "	*I love a servant.*

5. **Pero** and **sino** are both rendered by *but*. **Pero** is used when a verb is expressed in the second part of the sentence, while **sino** is used when the first part of the sentence is negative and no verb is expressed in the second part.

Sino has also the meaning of *except*, and is used with the negative :

Hablo francés, pero no hablo inglés,	*I speak French, but I do not speak English.*
No hablo francés, sino inglés,	*I don't speak French, but English.*
Él no habla sino alemán,	*He speaks nothing but (except) German.*

6. **Solamente**, *only*, *but*, may be used instead of *sino* in the affirmative :

No tengo oro, tengo solamente papel,	*I have no gold, I have only paper*

NOTE. — Instead of **solamente**, **sólo** may be used.

Lección XIX. Lesson XIX.

THE GERUND.

1st Conjugation :

Amar ; amando,	*to love ; loving.*
Hablar ; hablando,	*to speak ; speaking.*
Comprar ; comprando,	*to buy ; buying.*
Tomar ; tomando,	*to take ; taking.*

2d Conjugation :

Comer ; comiendo,	*to eat, to dine ; eating, dining.*
Beber ; bebiendo,	*to drink ; drinking.*
Hacer ; haciendo,	*to do, to make ; doing, making.*
Perder ; perdiendo,	*to lose ; losing.*

3d Conjugation :

Recibir ; recibiendo,	*to receive ; receiving.*
Salir ; saliendo,	*to go out ; going out.*
Partir ; partiendo,	*to divide ; dividing.*
Subir ; subiendo,	*to ascend, to go up ; ascending, going up.*

Verbs in **eer** *and* **uir**:

Leer; leyendo,	*to read; reading.*
Instruir; instruyendo,	*to instruct; instructing.*

Irregular Verbs.

Decir; diciendo,	*to say, to tell; saying,* ***telling.***
Dormir; durmiendo,	*to sleep; sleeping.*
Morir; muriendo,	*to die; dying.*
Pedir; pidiendo,	*to ask for; asking for.*
Poder; pudiendo,	*to be able, can; being able.*
Sentir; sintiendo,	*to feel, to hear; feeling, hearing.*
Venir; viniendo,	*to come; coming.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿De qué está V. hablando?	Of what are you speaking?
Estoy hablando del tiempo.	I am speaking of the weather.
Los muchachos están jugando.	The boys are playing.
¿Qué está V. haciendo?	What are you doing?
Estoy escribiendo una carta.	I am writing a letter.
¿Qué están diciendo estos hombres?	What are these men saying?
No están hablando.	They are not speaking.
Mi madre está durmiendo.	My mother is sleeping.
Los niños *vienen* llorando.	The children are coming crying.
He estado leyendo todo el día.	I have been reading the whole day.
Aprendo estudiando y leyendo.	I learn by studying and reading.
¿Qué están VV. leyendo?	What are you reading?
Estamos leyendo un libro francés.	We are reading a French book.

Vocabulario.

El albañil, *the mason.*
El barco, *the vessel.*
El capitán, *the captain.*
El gusto, *the pleasure.*
El vaso, *the glass.*
La fonda, *the hotel.*
La tarde, *the afternoon.*
La noche, *the night.*
Abierto, *opened.*
Alemania, f., *Germany.*
Almorzar, 1. *to breakfast.*
Bebo, *I drink.*
Cantar, 1. *to sing.*
Concluir, 3. *to finish.*
Conocer, 2. *to know.*
Correr, 2. *to run.*
Estudiar, 1. *to study.*
Hasta, *until.*
Importante, *important.*
Jugar, 1. *to play.*
Llegar, 1. *to arrive.*
Llorar, 1. *to cry, to weep.*
Mandar, 1. *to send.*

Vocabulary.

Muchas gracias, *I* (or *we*) *thank you.*
Nosotros, *us.*
Pasar, 1. *to pass.*
Por, *through, by.*
Prestar, 1. *to lend.*
Tarde, *late.*
Tomar, 1. *to take.*
Va, *goes.*
Venir, 3. *to come.*
Ya, *already.*

Exercise 37.

1. ¿ Qué están haciendo los muchachos en el cuarto ? 2. Están jugando con sus amiguitos. 3. ¿ Quién está cantando en la calle ? 4. Una pobre mujer está cantando. 5. Mi hermano está leyendo, y mi hermana está escribiendo. 6. ¿ Ha hablado V. al capitán ? 7. Yo no he hablado á nadie, he estado en mi cuarto hasta ahora. 8. ¿ Á quién ha prestado V. dinero ? 9. He prestado dinero á su hermano de V. 10. ¿ Sabe V. si el general está en casa ? 11. Está en su cuarto, pero está durmiendo. 12. El muchacho va corriendo por las calles. 13. ¿ De qué está V. hablando ? 14. Estoy hablando de una cosa muy importante. 15. ¿ Quiere V. comer hoy con nosotros ? 16. Con mucho gusto. 17. ¿ En qué país ha vivido V. ? 18. He vivido dos años en Francia, y tres años en Alemania. 19. ¿ Cuántas cartas han escrito VV. ? 20. Hemos escrito dos ó tres. 21. ¿ Quiere V. tomar un vaso de vino ? 22. Muchas gracias, yo no bebo vino. 23. ¿ Qué ha dicho el médico ? 24. No sé lo que ha dicho, porque ha hablado con mi hermano. 25. ¿ Porqué está llorando ese muchacho ? 26. Él llora por nada. 27. He estado escribiendo desde esta mañana, y todavía no he concluido mis cartas. 28. ¿ Dónde ha pasado V. la noche ? 29. He pasado la noche en la fonda, no conociendo á nadie aquí. 30. ¿ Porqué no ha venido V. á mi casa ? 31. Porque no sabía (*I did not know*) dónde V. vivía (*lived*).

Exercise 38.

1. Where are the children ? 2. They are playing in the garden. 3. Have they studied their lessons ? 4. They have been studying all the morning. 5. With whom were you (*estaba V.*) speaking in the garden ? 6. I was speaking with a French gentleman. 7. Were you sleeping this afternoon ? 8. No, I was writing in my room. 9. Who is crying in the other room ? 10. The little boy is crying. 11. What is your brother doing now ? 12. I don't know where he is now. 13. Where are you going to ? 14. I am going home. 15. Why have you eaten my bread ? 16. Because I had (*había*) not eaten anything since this morning. 17. Has your father gone out ? 18. No, sir, he is in the house ; he is breakfasting. 19. The masons are building a splendid house in our street. 20. What was (*estaba*) that man saying ? 21. He was speaking of the weather. 22. Why are you running ? 23. Because it is already late. 24. Have you sent the money

to the tailor? 25. Not yet, I have not received my money. 26. This poor boy has lost his father and mother. 27. Do you know if the vessel has arrived? 28. Yes, sir, it has arrived; I have spoken to the captain. 29. Who has been in my room this morning? 30. Your brothers and sisters have been here and have opened your room. 31. What is that man asking for? 32. He is asking for money.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The gerund ends in Spanish in **ando,** for the 1st Conjugation; and in **iendo** for the 2d and 3d Conjugations. These terminations are added to the present of the infinitive after suppressing the terminations **ar, er,** and **ir.**

This is the case in regular verbs and also in most of the irregular verbs: the termination never changes, but the radical part of a few irregular verbs undergoes a slight change:

Hablar, hablando;	*to speak, speaking.*
Comer, comiendo;	*to eat, eating.*
Escribir, escribiendo;	*to write, writing.*
Pedir, *pidiendo;*	*to ask for, asking for.*
Dormir, *durmiendo;*	*to sleep, sleeping.*

2. Verbs ending in **eer** and **uir** change the **i** into **y:**

Leer, leyendo;	*to read, reading.*
Instruir, instruyendo;	*to instruct, instructing.*

3. The gerund used with the verb **estar,** *to be,* corresponds to the progressive form in English, and expresses the action of the verb as continuing and unfinished:

Estoy leyendo,	*I am reading.*
¿ Qué está V. haciendo ?	*What are you doing?*
Está lloviendo,	*It is raining.*
Él estaba escribiendo,	*He was writing.*
He estado leyendo todo el día,	*I have been reading the whole day.*

4. The verb **estar** is not used with the gerund of the verbs **ser,** *to be;* **ir,** *to go;* **venir,** *to come.* Thus we would not say: **estoy yendo,** *I am going,* but **voy,** *I go;* nor **esta viniendo,** *he is coming,* but **viene,** *he comes;* etc.

5. When other verbs are used as auxiliaries of the gerund, they sufficiently explain themselves:

El niño sigue durmiendo,	*The child continues sleeping.*
Él viene corriendo,	*He comes running.*

6. The gerund indicates a certain continuation of the action:

Andan entrando y saliendo,	*They continue coming in and going out.*

7. The gerund is also used to express the way in which a thing happens:

La tos se cura sudando,	*Coughing is cured by perspiring.*
Se aprende estudiando,	*One learns by studying.*

8. It is also used with the preposition **en,** *in;* and refers then to the action of the other verb:

En acabando irá,	*When he has finished he will go.*

OBSERVATION. — The preposition, may, however, be left out in most cases, without altering the sense of the sentence.

9. The gerund of the verb **estar** often precedes that of another verb:

Estando comiendo, recibió la carta,	*Whilst he was dining he received the letter.*

10. The gerund is used very frequently in Spanish for the sake of brevity and euphony, and in cases where the English use adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions, as: **when, as, while, whilst, since, if, by,** etc.:

Habla durmiendo,	*He talks while he sleeps.*
Se aprende leyendo,	*One learns by reading.*
Siendo así, no quiero ir,	*Since it is so, I shall not go.*
Dándole yo licencia, saldrá,	*If I give him permission, he will go out.*
Viendo que su hermano no venía, se fué.	*When he saw that his brother was not coming, he went away.*

Lección XX. Lesson XX.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The Cardinal Numbers are:

Uno, *m.*, una, *f.*	*One.*
Dos,	*Two.*
Tres,	*Three.*
Cuatro,	*Four.*
Cinco,	*Five.*
Seis,	*Six.*
Siete,	*Seven.*
Ocho,	*Eight.*
Nueve,	*Nine.*
Diez,	*Ten.*
Once,	*Eleven.*
Doce,	*Twelve.*
Trece,	*Thirteen.*
Catorce,	*Fourteen.*
Quince,	*Fifteen.*
Diez y seis,[1]	*Sixteen.*
Diez y siete,	*Seventeen.*
Diez y ocho,	*Eighteen.*
Diez y nueve,	*Nineteen.*
Veinte,	*Twenty.*
Veinte y uno,	*Twenty-one.*
Veinte y dos,	*Twenty-two.*
Veinte y tres,	*Twenty-three.*
Veinte y cuatro,	*Twenty-four.*
Veinte y cinco,	*Twenty-five.*
Veinte y seis,	*Twenty-six.*
Veinte y siete,	*Twenty-seven.*
Veinte y ocho,	*Twenty-eight.*
Veinte y nueve,	*Twenty-nine.*
Treinta,	*Thirty.*
Treinta y uno,	*Thirty-one.*
Cuarenta,	*Forty.*
Cincuenta,	*Fifty.*

[1] These numbers are also written in one word, as: **Dieciseis, veintiuno, treintaiuno**, etc.

Sesenta,	*Sixty.*
Setenta,	*Seventy.*
Ochenta,	*Eighty.*
Noventa,	*Ninety.*
Ciento,[1]	*One hundred.*
Ciento y uno,	*One hundred and one.*
Ciento y diez,	*One hundred and ten.*
Doscientos (-as, *f.*),	*Two hundred.*
Trescientos (-as, *f.*),	*Three hundred.*
Cuatrocientos (-as, *f.*),	*Four hundred.*
Quinientos (-as, *f.*),	*Five hundred.*
Seiscientos (-as, *f.*),	*Six hundred.*
Setecientos (-as, *f.*),	*Seven hundred.*
Ochocientos (-as, *f.*),	*Eight hundred.*
Novecientos (-as, *f.*),	*Nine hundred.*
Mil,	*One thousand.*
Mil y ciento,	*One thousand one hundred.*
Mil y doscientos (-as, *f.*),	*One thousand two hundred.*
Dos mil,	*Two thousand.*
Cien [1] mil,	*One hundred thousand.*
Doscientos (-as, *f.*) mil,	*Two hundred thousand.*
Un millón,	*One million.*
Dos millones,	*Two millions.*
Cero,	*Zero* or *cipher.*

Días de la semana.		**Days of the week.**	
Domingo,	*Sunday.*	El domingo,	*On Sunday.*
Lunes,	*Monday.*	Los lunes,	*On Mondays.*
Martes,	*Tuesday.*	El martes por la mañana,	*Tuesday morning.*
Miércoles,	*Wednesday.*	El miércoles por la noche,	*Wednesday evening.*
Jueves,	*Thursday.*	El jueves próximo,	*Next Thursday.*
Viernes,	*Friday.*	El jueves que viene,	
Sábado,	*Saturday.*	El sábado pasado,	*Last Saturday.*

Divisiones del día.	**Divisions of the day.**
La mañana,	*The morning.*
El día,	*The day.*
La tarde,	*The afternoon.*

[1] **Ciento** drops the syllable *to* before a noun. **Cien hombres**, *One hundred men.*

La noche,	*The evening, the night.*
Mañana por la mañana,	*To-morrow morning.*
Mañana por la noche,	*To-morrow evening.*
De día,	*In daytime.*
Por la noche, de noche,	*In the evening, at night.*
Buenos días,	*Good morning, good day.*
Buenas tardes,	*Good afternoon.*
Buenas noches,	*Good evening, good night.*

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El año, *the year.*	**La tripulación,** *the crew*
El banco, *the bank.*	**Anoche,** *last night.*
El bocoy, *the hogshead.*	**Como,** *about how.*
El correo, *the post office.*	**Contar,** *to count.*
El día, *the day.*	**Contiene,** *contains.*
El hotel, *the hotel.*	**Convidar,** *to invite.*
El mes, *the month.*	**Cuando,** *when.*
El minuto, *the minute.*	**En casa,** *at home.*
El saco, *the bag.*	**Lo siento,** *I am sorry for it.*
La biblioteca, *the library.*	**Más,** *more.*
La caballería, *the cavalry.*	**Matar,** *to kill.*
La caballeriza, *the stable.*	**¿ Puede V. ?** *can you?*
La carne de vaca, *the beef.*	**Puedo,** *I can.*
La estación, *the season.*	**Necesitar,** *to need.*
La hora, *the hour.*	**Nosotros,** *us.*
La libra, *the pound.*	**Público,** *public.*
La persona, *the person.*	**Solamente,** *only.*
La semana, *the week.*	**Unos pocos,** *a few.*

Exercise 39.

1. He comprado doscientos bocoyes de azúcar y trescientos sacos de café. 2. ¿ Qué han comprado VV. hoy ? 3. Hemos comprado diez pollos y cincuenta libras de carne de vaca. 4. ¿ Cuánto dinero ha recibido V. ? 5. He recibido cuatrocientos noventa y nueve duros. 6. ¿ Y porqué no quinientos ? 7. Porque hemos pagado un duro en el correo. 8. Un mes tiene veinte y ocho, veinte y nueve, treinta, ó treinta y un días. 9. El día tiene veinte y cuatro horas; la hora tiene sesenta minutos. 10. Un año tiene trescientos sesenta y cinco, ó trescientos sesenta y seis días. 11. ¿ Cuándo va V. á casa de su hermano ? 12. Voy los miércoles. 13. El general tenía (*had*) cincuenta mil hombres de infantería y diez mil hombres de caballería. 14. Esta

aldea no tiene sino dos calles. 15. El príncipe tiene más de cincuenta caballos en sus caballerizas. 16. ¿ Cuándo está V. en casa ? 17. Estoy en casa por la mañana y por la noche. 18. Hemos matado más de veinte pájaros en el jardín. 19. Una semana tiene siete días, ciento sesenta y ocho horas, y diez mil y ochenta minutos. 20. Un año tiene cincuenta y dos semanas, doce meses, y cuatro estaciones. 21. ¿ Ha contado V. todo el dinero ? 22. He contado tres mil duros en oro, y dos mil duros en papel. 23. ¿ Á cuántas personas ha convidado V. para el domingo ? 24. No he convidado todavía á nadie. 25. ¿ Ha perdido soldados el general ? 26. Ha perdido dos mil de sus mejores soldados. 27. ¿ Cuánto dinero quiere V. ? 28. Déme V. doscientos y cincuenta duros. 29. ¿ Es bastante ? 30. Es bastante con los ochenta duros que ya tengo.

Exercise 40.

1. Our city has now twenty thousand inhabitants ; in 1860, it had (*tenía*) only a few houses, and about five hundred inhabitants. 2. The vessel has a crew of twenty-two men. 3. Charles's father is one of the richest men in (*de*) our town ; he has at least two millions of dollars. 4. Have you bought apples or pears ? 5. I bought a hundred apples, but no pears. 6. Washington was born (*nació*) in 1732, and died (*murió*) in 1799. 7. Where are you going on Monday next ? 8. I don't know yet. 9. I go to school on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Thursdays, and Fridays ; on Saturdays I go to the country, and on Sundays to church. 10. Do you work in daytime or in the evening ? 11. I always work in the evening. 12. Can you come to-morrow morning ? 13. No, but I can come to-morrow evening. 14. Have you any money for us ? 15. I have twenty-five dollars for you, and fifty dollars for your brother. 16. It is not enough ; I need twelve dollars more. 17. I am sorry for it, but I have not one dollar more. 18. Mr. Felix Ronda has more than twenty houses in the city. 19. This hotel has more than two hundred rooms. 20. We have a hotel in our city which (*que*) contains three hundred. 21. How many dollars do you need to (*para*) buy that horse ? 22. I need one hundred and twenty dollars, having already one hundred and eighty dollars in the bank. 23. My father has given five hundred pounds of meat to the poor. 24. There are (*hay*) more than twenty thousand volumes in our Public Library. 25. There were (*había*) at least four thousand persons at (*en*) the theater last night.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. **Uno**, *one, a, an*, has for feminine **una**. Both add **s** in the plural when used substantively:

Los unos y los otros, *m.*, / Las unas y las otras, *f.*, } *The ones and the others.*

2. From **dos**, *two*, up to **ciento**, *hundred*, the numbers are plural and common to both genders; but from **doscientos**, *two hundred*, to **novecientos**, *nine hundred*, the termination **os** is changed into **as** for the feminine:

Tres hombres y cuatro mujeres, *Three men and four women.*
Doscientos hombres y trescientas mujeres, *Two hundred men and three hundred women.*

3. The conjunction **y**, *and*, is placed only before the last number:

Doscientos noventa *y* ocho, *Two hundred* and *ninety-eight.*

4. **Ciento** drops the last syllable before a noun. [In the same way **uno** drops also the **o** before a noun.]

Cien hombres y cien mujeres, *One hundred men and one hundred women.*
Veinte y un muchachos, *Twenty-one boys.*

5. Although **mil**, *one thousand*, has neither gender nor number, it may be used in certain cases in the plural, as in English, and is then a noun:

Este hombre ha gastado muchos miles, *This man has spent many thousands.*

6. The preposition **á** is left out after an active verb when the object of the sentence is preceded by a cardinal number:

He visto veinte hombres (*not* á veinte hombres), *I have seen twenty men.*

7. *More than, less than*, are rendered in Spanish by **más de**, and **menos de** before a cardinal number:

Más de cien duros, *More than a hundred dollars.*
Menos de tres días, *Less than three days.*

8. *Eleven hundred, twelve hundred, thirteen hundred*, etc., cannot be expressed as in English, but must be translated:

Mil y ciento, *One thousand one hundred.*
Mil y doscientos, *One thousand two hundred.*
Mil y trescientos, *One thousand three hundred.*

Lección XXI. Lesson XXI.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Primero (primo),	*First.*
Segundo,	*Second.*
Tercero,	*Third.*
Cuarto,	*Fourth.*
Quinto,	*Fifth.*
Sexto (sesto),	*Sixth.*
Séptimo (sétimo),	*Seventh.*
Octavo,	*Eighth.*
Noveno *or* nono,	*Ninth.*
Décimo,	*Tenth.*
Undécimo,	*Eleventh.*
Duodécimo,	*Twelfth.*
Décimo tercio,[1]	*Thirteenth.*
Décimo cuarto,	*Fourteenth.*
Décimo quinto,	*Fifteenth.*
Décimo sesto,	*Sixteenth.*
Décimo séptimo,	*Seventeenth.*
Décimo octavo,	*Eighteenth.*
Décimo nono,	*Nineteenth.*
Vigésimo,	*Twentieth.*
Vigésimo primo,	*Twenty-first.*
Vigésimo segundo,	*Twenty-second.*
Vigésimo tercero,	*Twenty-third.*
Trigésimo,	*Thirtieth.*
Cuadragésimo,	*Fortieth.*
Quincuagésimo,	*Fiftieth.*
Sexagésimo,	*Sixtieth.*
Septuagésimo,	*Seventieth.*
Octogésimo,	*Eightieth.*
Nonagésimo,	*Ninetieth.*
Centésimo,	*Hundredth.*
Centésimo primo,	*Hundred and first.*
Centésimo undécimo,	*Hundred and eleventh.*
Ducentésimo,	*Two hundredth.*

[1] These numbers are also written in one word, as **décimotercio, décimocuarto**, etc.

Trecentésimo,	*Three hundredth.*
Cuadragentésimo,	*Four hundredth.*
Quingentésimo,	*Five hundredth.*
Seiscentésimo,	*Six hundredth.*
Septengentésimo,	*Seven hundredth.*
Octogentésimo,	*Eight hundredth.*
Nonagentésimo,	*Nine hundredth.*
Milésimo,	*Thousandth.*
Dos milésimo,	*Two thousandth.*
Diez milésimo,	*Ten thousandth.*
Millonésimo,	*Millionth.*

Números fraccionarios.		**Fractional numbers.**	
La mitad,	*The half.*	Un décimo,	*One tenth.*
Un medio,	*One half.*	Un onzavo,	*One eleventh.*
Uno y medio, / Una y media,	*One and a half.*	Un dozavo,	*One twelfth.*
		Un trezavo,	*One thirteenth.*
Un tercio,	*One third.*	Dos catorzavos,	*Two fourteenths.*
Dos tercios,	*Two thirds.*	Ocho quinzavos,	*Eight fifteenths.*
Un cuarto,	*One fourth.*	Un diezisеisavo,	*One sixteenth.*
Tres cuartos,	*Three fourths.*	Un diezisietavo,	*One seventeenth.*
Un quinto,	*One fifth.*	etc.	*etc.*
Un sexto,	*One sixth.*	Un veintavo,	*One twentieth.*
Un séptimo,	*One seventh.*	Once treintavos,	*Eleven thirtieths.*
Un octavo, *or* / Un ochavo	*One eighth.*	Un centavo, *or* / Un centésimo,	*One hundredth.*
Un noveno,	*One ninth.*	Un milésimo,	*One thousandth.*

Collective Numbers.

Un par,	*A pair.*	Una quincena,	*Fifteen.*
Una docena,	*A dozen.*	Una sesentena,	*Sixty.*

Multiplicative Numbers.

Simple,	*Single.*	Séxtuplo,	*Sixfold.*
Doble,	*Double.*	Séptuplo,	*Sevenfold.*
Triple,	*Treble.*	Óctuplo,	*Eightfold.*
Cuádruplo *or* cuádruple,	*Quadruple.*	Décuplo,	*Tenfold.*
Quíntuplo *or* quíntuple,	*Fivefold.*	Céntuplo,	*A hundredfold.*

Una vez, *once.*	Esta vez, *this time.*
Dos veces, *twice.*	Aquella vez, *that time.*
Tres veces, *three times.*	Todas las veces, *every time.*

Varias veces, *several times.*
Algunas veces, *sometimes.*
La primera vez, *the first time.*
La última vez, *the last time.*

Cada vez, *each time.*
Muchas veces, *many times.*
Otra vez, *another time.*
La próxima vez, *next time.*

Meses del año.

Enero,	*January.*
Febrero,	*February.*
Marzo,	*March.*
Abril,	*April.*
Mayo,	*May.*
Junio,	*June.*

Months of the year.

Julio,	*July.*
Agosto,	*August.*
Setiembre,	*September.*
Octubre,	*October.*
Noviembre,	*November.*
Diciembre,	*December.*

Las estaciones.

La primavera, *the spring.*
El verano *or* el estío, *the summer.*

The seasons.

El otoño, *the autumn, the fall.*
El invierno, *the winter.*

Ejemplos.

¿ Á cuántos estamos ?
¿ Á cómo estamos (hoy) ?
¿ Qué día del mes tenemos ?

Hoy es el primero.
Mañana es el *cinco.*
Estamos á *dos* de Febrero.
Nací el *quince* de Mayo.
El vapor sale el *diez* de este mes.

¿ Qué tomo tiene V. ?
Tengo el primer tomo.
Enrique es el quinto en la clase.

Examples.

What day of the month is it ?

To-day is the first.
To-morrow is the fifth.
It is the second of February.
I was born on the fifteenth of May.
The steamer leaves on the tenth of this month.

Which volume have you ?
I have the first volume.
Henry is the fifth in the class.

Vocabulario.

El almuerzo, *the breakfast.*
El capítulo, *the chapter.*
El cuaderno, *the copybook.*
El emperador, *the emperor.*
El huevo, *the egg.*
El ingenio, *the genius.*
El jamón, *the ham.*
El pavo, *the turkey.*
El periódico, *the newspaper.*
El vapor, *the steamer.*
La onza, *the ounce.*
La parte, *the part.*
Así, *therefore.*
Cada, *each.*
Comer, *to eat.*
Corto, *short.*
Cuando, *when.*
Dar, *to give.*
Después de, *after.*
Leer, *to read.*
Pedro, *Peter.*
Pertenece, *belongs.*
Raro, *rare.*
Rusia, *Russia.*
Sale, *leaves.*
Siempre, *always.*
Viene, *comes.*

Vocabulary.

Exercise 41.

1. Febrero es el segundo mes del año. 2. Enrique y Eduardo son los dos primeros discípulos de la clase. 3. ¿ Cuándo ha escrito V. á su padre ? 4. He escrito la primera vez el tres de enero de mil ochocientos sesenta y cinco, y la segunda vez en el mes de mayo del mismo año. 5. ¿ Ha dado V. libros á los muchachos de la primera clase ? 6. He dado libros y cuadernos á los de la segunda clase. 7. El mes de julio tiene tantos días como el mes de agosto. 8. ¿ Cuándo ha recibido V. sus cartas ? 9. He recibido una el dos de abril, y la otra el cinco de setiembre. 10. Hemos tenido mucha lluvia el treinta de octubre. 11. ¿ Qué pan han comprado VV. ? 12. Hemos comprado cinco libras y media de pan francés. 13. Cada soldado ha recibido media libra de carne. 14. Estaremos (*we shall be*) en nuestra casa nueva el primero de mayo próximo. 15. El muchachito ha dado la mitad de su almuerzo al pobre. 16. He comprado una docena de pollos, y mi hermano ha comprado media docena de pavos. 17. ¿ Á cuántos estamos ? 18. Estamos á once ó doce. 19. Carlos Quinto fué (*was*) un gran emperador. 20. ¿ Cuántas veces ha sido V. el primero en su clase ? 21. He sido dos veces el primero ; tres veces, el segundo; y cuarto veces, el tercero. 22. ¿ No ha sido V. nunca el último ? 23. No, señor, mi primo es siempre el último. 24. ¿ Qué mes viene después del mes de abril ? 25. El mes de mayo, por supuesto. 26. ¿ Es frío el invierno en este país ? 27. El invierno es frío, pero corto.

Exercise 42.

1. Have you read the newspaper of the first of December ? 2. No, but I read that of the thirtieth of November. 3. My brother will be (*estará*) here in July or (in) August. 4. What day of the month is it ? 5. It is the thirteenth. 6. One half and one third are (*hacen*) five sixths. 7. This poor woman is sick for the third time this month. 8. The Seventh Regiment is a fine regiment. 9. How many chapters have you read ? 10. I have read the first two (two first). 11. December is the last month of the year. 12. That child is in his sixth year. 13. Have you been sick here ? 14. I have been very sick the first month, but I am very well now. 15. A half ounce is the thirty-second part of a pound ; therefore, eight ounces are the half, and four ounces the fourth part of a pound. 16. One third of

the money belongs to the father; one sixth, to the children; and one half, to the mother. 17. I have bought a dozen hams and sixty eggs. 18. Peter the First, emperor of Russia, had (*tenía*) a rare genius. 19. When does the steamer leave? 20. It leaves on the twenty-third of this month. 21. How many times have you been in Paris? 22. I have been once in Paris, and twice in London. 23. Has your father bought another horse? 24. He bought three horses. 25. When are you going to the country? 26. I go in the month of June. 27. Give me the half of your bread. 28. I cannot, I have eaten all the bread. 29. Where is your house? 30. My house is the seventh house after the church.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Ordinal numbers are considered as adjectives, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer:

Este muchacho es el primero,	*This boy is the first.*
Estas muchachas son las primeras,	*These girls are the first.*
La quinta avenida,	*The fifth avenue.*

2. **Primero,** *first*, **tercero,** *third*, and **postrero,** *last*, drop the **o** in the singular when they precede a masculine noun, or its adjective:

El primer hombre,	*The first man.*
El postrer discípulo,	*The last scholar.*
El tercer buen emperador,	*The third good emperor.*

3. **Primo** is used instead of *primero*, after another ordinal number:

Vigésimo primo,	*Twenty-first.*

4. Ordinal numbers are used in Spanish as in English after the names of sovereigns, but *without* the article:

Fernando segundo,	*Ferdinand the Second.*
Felipe cuarto,	*Philip the Fourth.*

Observation. — The Spaniards generally use, as being shorter, the cardinal numbers after the names of sovereigns when their order of succession exceeds ten. Thus, they prefer to say:

Luis Catorce, *Louis the Fourteenth.* Carlos Doce, *Charles the Twelfth.*

5. After the number *eleven* the cardinal or ordinal numbers may be used with equal propriety to indicate the divisions of a book or other works:

Capítulo quince *or* décimo quinto,	*Fifteenth chapter.*
Página veinte *or* vigésima,	*Twentieth page.*

6. In Spanish the cardinal numbers are used by abbreviation before the names of months. **Primero**, *first*, forms, however, an exception, and must be used instead of *uno:*

El *primero* de enero,	*The first of January.*
El *cinco* ó *seis* de mayo,	*The fifth or sixth of May.*

7. Mitad is synonymous with **medio**, *half;* but **medio** is an adjective, while **mitad** is a noun.

Medio and the other fractions take the feminine form when speaking of **libra**, *pound*, **vara**, *yard*, etc., even if these nouns are not expressed:

Media libra de azúcar,	*A half pound of sugar.*
Una cuarta de arroz,	*A quarter pound of rice.*
Media vara de paño,	*Half a yard of cloth.*
Tres cuartas de muselina,	*Three fourths of a yard of muslin.*

8. While the names of months regularly begin with small letters, there is much variation in this usage.

Lección XXII. Lesson XXII.

LO, LE, LA, LOS, LAS, AS PRONOUNS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

Yo lo (*or* la) tengo,	*I have it.*
Tú lo (*or* la) tienes,	*thou hast it.*
Él lo (*or* la) tiene,	*he has it.*
Ella lo (*or* la) tiene,	*she has it.*
Nosotros lo (*or* la) tenemos,	*we have it.*
Vosotros lo (*or* la) tenéis,	*you have it.*
Ellos lo (*or* la) tienen,	*they* (masc.) *have it.*
Ellas lo (*or* la) tienen,	*they* (fem.) *have it.*

Yo no lo (*or* la) tengo,	*I have it not.*
Tú no lo (*or* la) tienes,	*thou hast it not.*
Él no lo (*or* la) tiene,	*he has it not.*
Ella no lo (*or* la) tiene,	*she has it not.*
Nosotros no lo (*or* la) tenemos,	*we have it not.*
Vosotros no lo (*or* la) tenéis,	*you have it not.*
Ellos no lo (*or* la) tienen,	*they* (masc.) *have it not.*
Ellas no lo (*or* la) tienen,	*they* (fem.) *have it not.*
¿ Lo (*or* la) tengo yo ?	*have I it ?*
etc.	*etc.*
¿ No lo (*or* la) tengo yo ?	*have I it not ?*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo los (*or* las) tengo,	*I have them.*
Tú los (*or* las) tienes,	*thou hast them.*
Él los (*or* las) tiene,	*he has them.*
Ella los (*or* las) tiene,	*she has them.*
Nosotros los (*or* las) tenemos,	*we have them.*
Vosotros los (*or* las) tenéis,	*you have them.*
Ellos los (*or* las) tienen,	*they* (masc.) *have them.*
Ellas los (*or* las) tienen,	*they* (fem.) *have them.*
Yo no los (*or* las) tengo,	*I have them not.*
Tú no los (*or* las) tienes,	*thou hast them not.*
Él no los (*or* las) tiene,	*he has them not.*
Ella no los (*or* las) tiene,	*she has them not.*
Nosotros no los (*or* las) tenemos,	*we have them not.*
Vosotros no los (*or* las) tenéis,	*you have them not.*
Ellos no los (*or* las) tienen,	*they* (masc.) *have them not.*
Ellas no los (*or* las) tienen,	*they* (fem.) *have them not.*
¿ Los (*or* las) tengo yo ?	*have I them ?*
etc.	*etc.*
¿ No los (*or* las) tengo yo ?	*have I them not ?*
etc.	*etc.*

Lo, le, la, los, las, *as Pronouns in Compound Tenses.*

Yo lo (*or* la) he tenido,	*I have had it.*
etc.	*etc.*

¿ Lo (*or* la) he tenido yo ?	*have I had it ?*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo no lo (*or* la) he tenido,	*I have not had it.*
etc.	*etc.*
¿ No lo (*or* la) he tenido yo ?	*have I not had it ?*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo los (*or* las) he tenido,	*I have had them.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo no los (*or* las) he tenido,	*I have not had them.*
etc.	*etc.*
¿ Los (*or* las) he tenido yo ?	*have I had them ?*
etc.	*etc.*
¿ No los (*or* las) he tenido yo ?	*have I not had them ?*
etc.	*etc.*

Lo, le, la, los, las, *joined with the Infinitive and the Gerund.*

Tenerlo, tenerla,	*to have it.*
Tenerlos, tenerlas,	*to have them.*
Teniéndolo, teniéndola,	*having it.*
Teniéndolos, teniéndolas,	*having them.*

Lo, le, la, los, las, *placed after the Verb.*

Téngolo, téngola,	*I have it.*
Téngolos, téngolas,	*I have them.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿ Quién tiene mi libro ?	Who has my book ?
Yo lo tengo.	I have it.
¿ Ha visto V. mi lápiz ?	Have you seen my pencil ?
Lo he visto.	I have seen it.
¿ Tiene V. mis plumas ?	Have you my pens ?
Las tengo.	I have them.
¿ Ha tenido V. mis plumas ?	Have you had my pens ?
Las he tenido.	I have had them.
¿ Vende V. su casa ?	Do you sell your house ?
La vendo.	I sell it.
¿ Quién ha tomado mis papeles ?	Who has taken my papers ?

Nadie los ha tomado.	Nobody has taken **them.**
¿ Lo tiene su amigo de V. ?	Has your friend **it** ?
Él no lo tiene.	He has it not.
¿ Los tienen sus amigos ?	Have your friends **them** ?
Ellos no los tienen.	They have them not.
¿ Lo tiene la señora ?	Has the lady it ?
Ella no lo tiene.	She has it not.
¿ Los tienen las señoritas ?	Have the young ladies **them** ?
Ellas no los tienen.	They have them not.
¿ Quién los tiene ?	Who has them ?
Nadie los tiene.	Nobody has them.
¿ Á quién lo da V. ?	To whom do you give **it** ?
Lo doy á mi amigo.	I give it to my friend.
¿ Lo sabe V. ?	Do you know **it** ?
Lo sé.	I know it.
Tómelo V.	Take it.
No lo tome V.	Do not take **it** ?

Lo, *Declinable and Undeclinable.*

¿ Está V. mala, señora ?	Are you sick, madam ?
Lo estoy.	I am (so).
¿ Es V. la enferma ?	Are you the patient (*fem.*) ?
La soy.	I am (she).
¿ Están VV. satisfechos ?	Are you pleased ?
Lo estamos.	We are (so).
¿ Son VV. los hijos del Señor Pable ?	Are you the sons of Mr. Paul ?
Los somos.	We are (they).
¿ Son VV. las hijas de María ?	Are you the daughters of Mary ?
Las somos.	We are (they).

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El armario, *the closet.*	**Ausente**, *absent.*
El botón, *the button.*	**Bien**, *well.*
El zapato, *the shoe.*	**Donde**, *where.*
El zapatero, *the shoemaker.*	**Demasiado**, *too, too much.*
La bodega, *the cellar.*	**Necesitar**, *to need.*
La cama, *the bed.*	**No...más**, *no...more.*
La cocina, *the kitchen.*	**Tampoco**, *not either, neither.*
La gallina, *the fowl, the chicken.*	**Tarde**, *late.*
La lavandera, *the washerwoman.*	**Traer**, *to bring.*
La mañana, *the morning.*	**¿ Ve V. ?** *do you see ?*
La sábana, *the sheet.*	**Veo**, *I see.*
Aun, *even.*	**¿ Vende V. ?** *do you sell ?*

Exercise 43.

1. ¿ Carlos, tiene V. mis botones de oro ? 2. Yo no los tengo ; su hermano de V. los tiene. 3. ¿ Porqué los ha tomado él ? 4. Yo no lo sé. 5. ¿ Eduardo, sabe V. su lección ? 6. Yo no la sé muy bien. 7. ¿ Ha visto V. el caballo de mi tío ? 8. ¿ Qué caballo ? 9. Su caballo blanco. 10. Lo he visto esta mañana. 11. ¿ Tiene su hermano todavía su casa ? 12. No la tiene más ; la ha vendido. 13. ¿ Ha tenido V. mi libro ? 14. No lo he tenido ; V. lo ha tenido V. mismo 15. ¿ Tiene su hermana de V. mis cuadernos ? 16. Sí, ella los tiene en su cuarto. 17. ¿ Dónde tienen VV. sus gallinas ? 18. Las tenemos en el patio. 19. ¿ No las tienen VV. en el jardín ? 20. No, no las tenemos allí desde que tenemos flores y legumbres. 21. ¿ Quién tiene sus zapatos de V. ? 22. El zapatero los tiene. 23. ¿ Tiene él también los míos ? 24. Él no los tiene. 25. ¿ Quién los tiene ? 26. Yo no sé quién los tiene. 27. Nadie los tiene, están en el cuartito. 28. ¿ Tiene V. mis plumas ? 29. Las he tenido, pero no las tengo ahora. 30. ¿ Las tiene su hermano ? 31. No las tiene tampoco. 32. ¿ Ha visto V. á Carlos ? 33. Le he visto en el jardín. 34. ¿ Ha traído la lavandera la ropa ? 35. Todavía no. 36. ¿ Porqué no la ha traído ? 37. Porque la ha recibido demasiado tarde. 38. ¿ Está V. malo ? 39. Lo estoy siempre. 40. ¿ Están VV. malos ? 41. Lo estamos.

Exercise 44.

1. Has the cook the vegetables ? 2. She has them. 3. Has she (got) them in the kitchen ? 4. No, sir, she has them in the closet. 5. Where have you your wine ? 6. We have it in the cellar. 7. The sheets are on the bed. 8. Yes, madam, I know it. 9. Have you my knife ? 10. I have it not. 11. Has your brother it ? 12. Yes, sir, he has it. 13. Do you sell your house ? 14. I do not sell it. 15. Where is the little boy ? 16. He is in the garden. 17. Do you see my hat ? 18. I don't see it. 19. Are you sick ? 20. I am (so). 21. Have you had my book ? 22. I have had it this morning, but I do not have it now. 23. Have you found your copybook ? 24. I have found it in your room. 25. Do you wish it ? 26. I don't wish it. 27. Where have you bought this sugar ? 28. I have bought it at (*en*) your store. 29. Have you seen my father ? 30. I have seen him this morning. 31. Have you the money to-day ? 32. No, sir, I have it not. 33. Do you see those men ? 34. Yes, sir, I see them.

35. Is your sister absent? 36. She is not (so), she is in my mother's room. 37. Why have you taken my books? 38. I have not taken them; I have not even seen them. 39. If you want my book, take it. 40. I don't want it. 41. Do you need this piece of paper? 42. Yes, I need it; do not take it.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. **Lo, le,** *masc.*, **la,** *fem.*, meaning *it, him, her,* or *so,* and **los,** *masc.*, **las,** *fem.*, meaning *them, they,* are generally placed before the verb, except in the *imperative* affirmative, the *infinitive,* and the *gerund.*

In these three cases the pronouns are placed after the verb and joined to it so as to form one word:

Yo lo tengo,	*I have it.*
Él lo dice,	*He says so.*
Los compramos,	*We buy them.*
¿ Quién los quiere ?	*Who wants them.*
Yo no los quiero,	*I don't wish them.*
Yo le vendo mi caballo,	*I sell him* (or *her*) *my horse.*
Ella lo sabe,	*She knows it.*
¿ Está él malo ?	*Is he sick ?*
Lo está,	*He is.*
Tómelo V.,	*Take it.*
No lo tome V.,	*Do not take it.*
Véndala V.,	*Sell it* (fem.).
Tráigalos V.,	*Bring them.*
Délas V.,	*Give them* (fem.).
No las dé V.,	*Do not give them.*
Sabiéndolo, lo haré,	*Knowing it, I will do it.*
Vendiéndolo, tendré dinero,	*By selling it, I will have money.*
No quiero verlo,	*I do not wish to see it.*
No puedo hacerlo,	*I cannot do it.*
Sé decirlo,	*I know how to say it.*

2. The same pronouns may also be placed *after* the verb, forming one word with it. But, in this case, the personal pronoun must be left out.

This way of expressing one's self, although rarely used in

conversation, is considered elegant in writing, and is, **therefore**, often used by good writers:

Téngolo,	*I have it.*
Diólo á su hermano,	*He gave it to his brother.*
Vendiólas ayer,	*He sold them* (fem.) *yesterday.*
Comprólos todos,	*He bought them all.*
Víle ayer,	*I saw him yesterday.*

NOTE. — This order is more often found in connection with the imperfect and past definite tenses, especially when these come at the beginning of the phrase.

3. These pronouns, when used with compound tenses, are placed before the auxiliary:

Yo lo he tenido,	*I have had it.*
Los hemos visto,	*We have seen them.*
Él lo ha comprado,	*He has bought it.*

4. In sentences containing an infinitive besides the principal verb, the same pronouns may be placed either after the infinitive or before the principal verb. The better usage is, however, to put the pronoun with the verb with which it belongs:

Yo quiero comprarlo *or* Yo lo quiero comprar,	*I wish to buy it.*
Él ha querido venderlo *or* Él lo ha querido vender,	*He has wished to sell it.*

5. **Lo** remains invariable when it can be translated by ***so***, either expressed or understood:

¿ Es V. viuda ? — Lo soy,	*Are you a widow ? I am* (so).
¿ Están VV. enfermos ? — Lo estamos,	*Are you sick ? — We are* (so).
¿ Podemos entrar ? — VV. lo pueden,	*May we come in ? — You may* (do so).

But **lo** takes the gender and number of the noun which it represents, when the noun is used in a determinate sense, i. e. when accompanied by the article, or a possessive or demonstrative adjective:

¿ Es V. la viuda ? — La soy,	*Are you the widow ? I am* (she).
¿ Son VV. los hijos de Manuel ? — Los somos,	*Are you the sons of Manuel ? — We are* (they).

6. *Observations on* lo, le, *and* la.

Opinions are divided about the rendering of the pronoun **it**, when referring to a masculine noun. and used as direct object.

Some grammarians do not admit that **lo** should be used when referring to a noun, and are in favor of **le**. According to them we should say:

¿Tiene V. el libro? — Si, yo le tengo, *Have you the book?— Yes, I have it.*

Lo should be used only when referring to the complement of a verb, as:

¿Sabe V. que su hermano está aquí? — Sí, yo lo sé, *Do you know that your brother is here? — Yes, I know it.*

This opinion is opposed by others, who consider **le** as the dative case, either masculine or feminine, and, therefore, use **lo** for *it* or *him*.

Yo *lo* veo, *I see it*
Yo *le* vendo mi caballo, *I sell him* (or *her*) *my horse.*

We have adopted the last rule, which appears to us to have most followers, but would add, that in presence of conflicting opinions, we consider that either **le** or **lo** may be used with equal propriety. A statement often made is: that **le** is used for persons and **lo** for things.

According to the rule laid down by us, **los**, **las** must be used in the accusative case for *them;* and **les** in the dative case for *to them*. We find, however, **la** and **las** used in the dative feminine instead of *le* and *les* by classic authors, but the *Academia Española* does not approve of this

---

Lección XXIII. Lesson XXIII.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative.

Que, *who, whom, which, that.*

Quien, sing., **quienes,** pl., *who, whom, whoever, whomsoever, he who.*

El cual or **cual,** *who, which, that which, which ones.*

Cuyo, m. s., **cuya,** f. s., **cuyos,** m. pl., **cuyas,** f. pl., *whose, of which.*

Cual *declined.*

Singular.		Plural.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.	
El cual,	**la cual,**	**los cuales,**	**las cuales,**	*who, whom, which, which one, which ones.*
Del cual,	**de la cual,**	**de los cuales,**	**de las cuales,**	*of whom, from whom, whose, of which one, of which ones.*
Al cual,	**á la cual,**	**á los cuales,**	**á las cuales,**	*to whom, to which, to which one, to which ones.*

Interrogative.

Quién? Quiénes? *who?* **Cuál? Cuáles?** *which? which one?*
Qué? *what? which?* **Cúyo? Cúya? Cúyos? Cúyas?** *whose?*

Ejemplos.	Examples.
El caballero que vive aquí, es Francés.	The gentleman who lives here is a Frenchman.
El hombre á quien hablo es pobre.	The man to whom I speak is poor.
¿ De quién habla V. ?	Of whom do you speak ?
El libro que él tiene, es mío.	The book which he has is mine.
¿ Qué quiere V. ?	What do you wish ?
¡ Qué bonito es !	How pretty it is !
Pedro es el que lo ha dicho.	Peter is the one who said it.
He encontrado á Pedro, el cual me dió una carta.	I met Peter, who gave me a letter.
Éste es el hombre al cual V. debe dinero.	This is the man to whom you owe money.
Yo sé cuál es la causa de esto.	I know what is the cause of this.
¿ Cuál de los dos habla mejor ?	Which of the two speaks better ?
El hombre, cuyo hijo está aquí.	The man whose son is here.
La casa, cuyas ventanas vemos.	The house of which we see the windows.
¿ Á cuál de mis amigos ha dado V. el libro ?	To which of my friends have you given the book ?
¿ De quién (*or* cúyo) es este perro ?	Whose dog is this ?
¿ De quién (*or* cúyas) son estas tijeras ?	Whose scissors are these ?
¿ Quién es esa mujer ?	Who is that woman ?
¿ Quiénes son aquellos hombres ?	Who are these men ?

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El padrino, *the godfather.*	**Debe,** *owes.*	**Murió,** *died* (preter.).
El puente, *the bridge.*	**Deseamos,** *we wish.*	**Necesito,** *I need.*
La fruta, *the fruit.*	**Dicho,** *said.*	**Pagar,** 1. *to pay.*
La prima, *the cousin* (f.).	**Dormir,** 3. *to sleep.*	**Parecen,** *seem.*
La tía, *the aunt.*	**Enseña,** *teaches.*	**Probablemente,** *probably.*
La vida, *the life.*	**Gana,** *earns.*	**Puesto,** *put.*
Aquí, *here.*	**Hablan,** *they speak.*	**Ríe,** *laughs.*
Bien, *good.*	**Hecho,** *done.*	**Sabe,** *knows.*
Canta, *sings.*	**Inteligente,** *intelligent.*	**Tan,** *so.*
Contento, *pleased.*	**Loco,** *insane.*	**Trabaja,** *works.*
Cortado, *cut.*	**Llora,** *weeps.*	**Viajar,** 1. *to travel.*
Dado, *given.*	**Muerto,** *died* (past part).	**Visto,** *seen.*

Exercise 45.

1. Juan es un hombre que sabe mucho. 2. Es una cosa de que hablan mucho. 3. Mi hermano, mi tía y mis primas que han venido ayer, están en mi casa. 4. He visto al muchacho que V. enseña. 5. Él es quien ha dicho esto. 6. He estado en el campo, lo que me ha hecho mucho bien. 7. Me ha pagado, con lo que estoy contento. 8. He visto á Pedro, el cual me ha dicho muchas cosas. 9. Estos hombres parecen locos: cual (*one*) llora, cual canta y cual ríe. 10. Estas frutas son tales cuales (*such as*) las deseamos. 11. Él es á quien V. debe la vida. 12. El hombre, cuya mujer ha muerto, está muy triste. 13. Él que no trabaja no gana dinero. 14. He estado en la casa en la cual he visto á su padre de V. 15. Veo la casa cuyas ventanas son tan grandes. 16. El comerciante cuya familia está aquí, es muy rico. 17. ¿ Á cuál de mis amigos ha dado V. el libro ? 18. No lo he dada á ninguno. 19. La casa que tiene mi padre es muy grande. 20. Aquí está el cuarto en el cual murió. 21. ¿ Con qué ha hecho V. esto ? 22. Con un lápiz. 23. ¿ Tiene V. lo que V. necesita ? 24. Sí, señor, tengo todo lo que necesito. 25. La casa que V. tiene, es más pequeña que la que yo tengo.

Exercise 46.

1. The gentleman to whom you have written has not received your letter. 2. Is it you who have written this letter? 3. It is I. 4. Here is the knife with which I have cut the bread. 5. I have found an umbrella, it is probably the one you have lost. 6. Here is the book of which you have spoken. 7. The bridge on which we are is the largest in the city. 8. The trunk in which I have put my clothes is not large enough (enough large) for me. 9. How intelligent that child is (is that child) ! 10. The house which you have is not as large as the house which your brother has. 11. The gentleman whose sister you have seen is a friend of my father. 12. Have you all that you want ? 13. No, I want many things yet. 14. The month in which we are is the coldest of the year. 15. The boy for (*para*) whom I have bought this book is sick. 16. Have you seen the trunk with which I have been traveling ? 17. No, where is it ? 18. It is in the room in which I slept. 19. The gentleman of whom I received this book is my godfather. 20. Whose apples are these ? 21. They are mine. 22. Which horse have you bought ? 23. I bought the one you saw yesterday. 24. Here are all the books which we have.

25. Your brother is in the room. 26. In which one? 27. In the large one. 28. Of what are you speaking? 29. I am speaking of many things. 30. We are speaking of my aunt.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Que, as a subject or nominative, is used for persons as well as for things, and may refer to several nouns of different number and gender:

Es un hombre que sabe mucho,	*He is a man who knows much.*
Es una cosa de que hablan mucho,	*It is a thing of which they speak a great deal.*
Su hermano, sus tías y sus hermanas que han venido ayer, se van hoy,	*His brother, his aunts, and his sisters, who came yesterday, are going away to-day.*

2. Que, relating to an accusative, does not require the preposition *á*, even when referring to a person:

He visto al niño que V. enseña (*not* á que V. enseña),	*I have seen the child that you teach.*

3. The relative **que** is accompanied by the article **el, la, los, las, lo,** according to gender and number.

a. To avoid ambiguity when the relative is separated from the noun:

Pidió la libertad de su hijo, la que consiguió,	*He begged for the liberty of his son, and obtained it* (lit. *which he obtained*).

b. When the relative **que** serves to complete the action of the verb:

Pedro es el que lo ha dicho,	*Peter is the one who said so.*

c. When the relative **que** refers to a whole sentence:

He estado en el campo, lo que me ha hecho mucho bien,	*I have been in the country, which has done me much good.*

d. When the relative is accompanied by a preposition and refers to a thing:

Me ha pagado, con lo que estoy contento,	*He has paid me, and I am pleased with it* (lit. *with which I am pleased*).

4. **Que** is never suppressed like its corresponding English pronoun, but must be repeated before every verb that follows it:

La casa que tenemos,	*The house (which) we have.*
El libro que él tiene,	*The book (which) he has.*
El caballo que yo vendí y que volví á comprar,	*The horse which I have sold and bought again.*

Observation. — In a relative clause (after **que**) there is usually inversion of the subject:

La canción que cantaba María,	*The song which Mary sang.*
La herida que tenía el soldado,	*The wound which the soldier had.*

5. **Quien, quienes,** for both genders, relate only to persons:

Él es á quien debo la vida,	*It is to him I owe my life.*

Observation. — When the relative pronoun follows immediately the noun to which it relates, it is preferable to use **que**, even when referring to persons. It would be better, therefore, to say:

Éste es el hombre *que* me dió el libro,

instead of

Quien me dió el libro,	*This is the man who gave me the book,*

But we must say:

Éste es el hombre á quien V. debe la vida,	*This is the man to whom you owe your life,*

since **quien** must be used with a preposition in speaking of people.

6. The relatives **el cual, la cual, lo cual, los cuales, las cuales,** have but one termination for the different genders, and relate as well to persons as to things. In the accusative they take the preposition **á** when they relate to persons:

He encontrado á Pedro con su mujer, el cual me ha contado muchas cosas.	*I met Peter with his wife, and he (who) told me many things.*
Éste es el hombre al cual V. debe entregar la carta,	*This is the man to whom you must deliver the letter.*

7. The article is omitted:

a. When the relative is separated from the noun by a verb and completes the action of another verb:

La prisión le habia abierto los ojos, y conocio cual era la verdadera causa de su desgracia. — PADRE DE ISLA.	*The prison had opened his eyes, and he knew which was the real cause of his misfortunes.*

b. When the pronoun may be used as partitive:

Estos hombres parecen locos: cual llora, cual canta, y cual ríe,	*These men appear to be insane: one weeps, another sings and still another laughs.*
Es difícil decir cuál de los dos canta mejor.	*It is difficult to say which of the two sings better.*

c. **Cual** is also used instead of the comparative, with **tal,** both words agreeing in number with the noun:

Estas frutas son *tales* las deseamos, *or* Estas frutas son *cuales* las *deseamos,*	*These fruits are just as we wish them.*

8. Cuyo takes the gender and number of the noun which it *precedes:*

La amiga cuyo hermano está enfermo,	*The friend whose brother is sick.*
El hombre cuya mujer ha muerto,	*The man whose wife has died.*
El príncipe cuyos caballos hemos visto,	*The prince whose horses we have seen.*
Cicerón, de cuyo grande orador he leído las obras,	*Cicero, the great orator, whose works I have read.*

9. Que and **cual** may in many cases be used with equal propriety when accompanied by prepositions:

He estado en la casa en que (*or* en la cual) murió,	*I have been in the house in which (where) he died.*
Éste es el cuchillo con que (*or* con el cual) mató la gallina,	*This is the knife with which he killed the hen.*

10. Donde is used also in Spanish, when the relative *which* may be replaced in English by the adverb *where:*

He estado en el pueblo en donde era la feria,	*I have been in the village where the fair was.*

11. The relative pronouns **que, cual, quien, cuyo** are also used as interrogative pronouns **(qué, cuál, quién, cúyo,** taking then an accent), and mean :

Qué, *which, what.*	Quién, *who, whom.*
Cuál, *which, which one.*	**Cúyo,** *whose.*

Examples.

¿ Á cuál de mis amigos ha dado V. el libro ?	*To which of my friends have you given the book ?*
¿ Qué profesión tiene V. ?	*What is your profession ?*
¿ Cuál es su mérito ?	*What (which) is his merit ?*
¿ Cuáles son sus amigos ?	*Which are his friends ?*
¿ Qué hay en la mesa ?	*What is there on the table ?*
¿ De quién habla V. ?	*Of whom do you speak ?*
¿ Quién es aquél ?	*Who is that ?*
¿ Quiénes son aquellos hombres ?	*Who are those men ?*
¿ Quién es esa mujer ?	*Who is that woman ?*
¿ Á quién escribes esa carta ?	*To whom do you write that letter ?*

Observation. — The expressions :

¿ Cúyo es este perro ?	*Whose dog is this ?*
¿ Cúyas son estas tijeras ?	*Whose are these scissors ?*

although of frequent use, are hardly correct, and it is preferable to use **de quién,** etc., as **¿ de quién es este perro ? ¿ de quién son estas tijeras ?** etc.

12. Qué is also used as an exclamation corresponding to the English **how:**

¡ Qué bonito es eso !	*How pretty that is !*
¡ Qué feliz es V. !	*How happy you are !*

13. Qué de may also be used for **cuánto, cuánta, cuántos, cuántas,** *how much ! how many :*

¡ Qué de cosas *or* cuántas cosas podría decir !	*How many things I could say !*

Lección XXIV. Lesson XXIV.

VERBOS AUXILIARES, AUXILIARY VERBS.

Haber, *to have.*

MODO INFINITIVO, *INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Haber,	*to have.*
Haber habido,	*to have had.*

Gerundio, *gerund.*

Habiendo,	*having.*
Habiendo habido,	*having had.*

Participio pasivo, *past participle.*

Habido,	*had.*

TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Yo he,	*I have.*
Tú has,	*thou hast.*
Él ha,	*he has.*
Ella ha,	*she has.*
Nosotros hemos,	*we have.*
Vosotros habéis,	*you have.*
Ellos han,	*they* (masc.) *have.*
Ellas han,	*they* (fem.) *have.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Había,	*I had* (*I was having, I used to have*)
Habías,	*thou hadst.*
Había,	*he had* or *she had.*
Habíamos,	*we had.*
Habíais,	*you had.*
Habían,	*they had.*

Preterito perfecto definido, *preterit.*

Hube,	*I had* (*did have*).
Hubiste,	*thou hadst.*
Hubo,	*he had.*
Hubimos,	*we had.*
Hubisteis,	*you had.*
Hubieron,	*they had.*

Futuro, *future.*

Habré,	*I shall* or *will have.*
Habrás,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Habrá,	*he shall* or *will have.*
Habremos,	*we shall* or *will have.*
Habréis,	*you shall* or *will have.*
Habrán,	*they shall* or *will have.*

Condicional, *conditional.*

Habría,	*I should* (or *would*) *have.*
Habrías,	*thou shouldst have.*
Habría,	*he should have.*
Habríamos,	*we should have.*
Habríais,	*you should have.*
Habrían,	*they should have.*

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Haya,	*I may have.*
Hayas,	*thou mayest have.*
Haya,	*he may have.*
Hayamos,	*we may have.*
Hayáis,	*you may have.*
Hayan,	*they may have.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Hubiera, hubiese;	*I* (*might, could, would,* or) *should have.*
Hubieras, hubieses;	*thou shouldst have.*
Hubiera, hubiese;	*he should have.*
Hubiéramos, hubiésemos;	*we should have.*
Hubierais, hubieseis;	*you should have.*
Hubieran, hubiesen;	*they should have.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Cuando* or *Si*) **Hubiere,**	(when *or* if) *I shall* or *will have.*
Hubieres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Hubiere,	*he shall* or *will have.*
Hubiéremos,	*we shall* or *will have.*
Hubiereis,	*you shall* or *will have.*
Hubieren,	*they shall* or *will have.*

TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, *Compound Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

He habido,	*I have had.*
Has habido,	*thou hast had.*
Ha habido,	*he has had.*
Hemos habido,	*we have had.*
Habéis habido,	*you have had.*
Han habido,	*they have had.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Había habido,	*I had had.*
Habías habido,	*thou hadst had.*
Había habido,	*he had had.*
Habíamos habido	*we had had.*
Habíais habido,	*you had had.*
Habían habido,	*they had had.*

Preterito anterior, *past anterior.*

Hube habido,	*I had had.*
Hubiste habido,	*thou hadst had*
Hubo habido,	*he had had.*
Hubimos habido,	*we had had.*
Hubisteis habido,	*you had had.*
Hubieron habido,	*they had had.*

Futuro anterior, *future anterior.*

Habré habido,	*I shall* or *will have had.*
Habrás habido,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have had.*
Habrá habido,	*he shall* or *will have had.*
Habremos habido,	*we shall* or *will have had.*
Habréis habido,	*you shall* or *will have had.*
Habrán habido,	*they shall* or *will have had.*

Condicional anterior, *conditional anterior.*

Habría habido,	*I should* (or *would*) *have had.*
Habrías habido,	*thou shouldst have had.*
Habría habido,	*he should have had.*
Habríamos habido,	*we should have had.*
Habríais habido,	*you should have had.*
Habrían habido,	*they should have had.*

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

Haya habido,	*I may have had.*
Hayas habido,	*thou mayest have had.*
Haya habido,	*he may have had.*
Hayamos habido,	*we may have had.*
Hayáis habido,	*you may have had.*
Hayan habido,	*they may have had.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Hubiera, *or* hubiese habido,	*I might, could, should* or *would have had.*
Hubieras, *or* hubieses habido,	*thou mightest, couldst, shouldst* or *wouldst have had.*
Hubiera, *or* hubiese habido,	*he might, could, should* or *would have had.*
Hubiéramos, *or* hubiésemos habido,	*we might, could, should* or *would have had.*
Hubierais, *or* hubieseis habido,	*you might, could, should* or *would have had.*
Hubieran, *or* hubiesen habido,	*they might, could, should* or *would have had.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Si*) Hubiere habido,	(if) *I shall or will have had.*
Hubieres habido,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have had.*
Hubiere habido,	*he shall* or *will have had.*
Hubiéremos habido,	*we shall* or *will have had.*
Hubiereis habido,	*you shall or will have had.*
Hubieren habido,	*they shall* or *will have had.*

NOTE. — The imperative of **haber** is extremely rare. The forms are **he**, and **habed**.

Tener, *to have.*

MODO INFINITIVO, *INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Tener,	*to have.*
Haber tenido,	*to have had.*

Gerundio, *gerund.*

Teniendo,	*having.*
Habiendo tenido,	*having had.*

Participio pasivo, *past participle.*

Tenido, *had.*

TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Tengo,	*I have.*	Tenemos,	*we have.*
Tienes,	*thou hast.*	Tenéis,	*you have.*
Tiene,	*he has.*	Tienen,	*they have.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Tenía,	*I had* (*I was having, I used to have*).
Tenías,	*thou hadst.*
Tenía,	*he had.*
Teníamos,	*we had.*
Teníais,	*you had.*
Tenían,	*they had.*

Preterito perfecto definido, *preterite.*

Tuve,	*I had* (*did have*).
Tuviste,	*thou hadst.*
Tuvo,	*he had.*
Tuvimos,	*we had.*
Tuvisteis,	*you had.*
Tuvieron,	*they had.*

Futuro, *future.*

Tendré,	*I shall* or *will have.*
Tendrás,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Tendrá,	*he shall* or *will have.*
Tendremos,	*we shall* or *will have.*
Tendréis,	*you shall* or *will have.*
Tendrán,	*they shall* or *will have.*

Condicional, *conditional.*

Tendría,	*I should* (or *would*) *have.*
Tendrías,	*thou shouldst have.*
Tendría,	*he should have.*
Tendríamos,	*we should have.*
Tendríais,	*you should have.*
Tendrían,	*they should have.*

Imperativo, *imperative.*

Ten tú,	*have* (*have thou*).
Tened.	*have* (*have you*).

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Tenga,	*I may have.*
Tengas,	*thou mayest have.*
Tenga,	*he may have.*
Tengamos,	*we may have.*
Tengáis,	*you may have.*
Tengan,	*they may have.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Tuviera, tuviese ;	*I* (*might, could, would* or) *should have.*
Tuvieras, tuvieses ;	*thou shouldst have.*
Tuviera, tuviese ;	*he should have.*
Tuviéramos, tuviésemos ;	*we should have.*
Tuvierais, tuvieseis ;	*you should have.*
Tuvieran, tuviesen ;	*they should have.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Cuando* or *Si*) Tuviere,	(when *or* if) *I shall* or *will have.*
Tuvieres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Tuviere,	*he shall* or *will have.*
Tuviéremos,	*we shall* or *will have.*
Tuviereis,	*you shall* or *will have.*
Tuvieren,	*they shall* or *will have.*

TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, *Compound Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

He tenido,	*I have had,*
etc.	*etc.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Había tenido,	*I had had,*
etc.	*etc.*

Preterito anterior, *past anterior.*

Hube tenido,	*I had had,*
etc.	*etc.*

Futuro anterior, *future anterior.*

Habré tenido,	*I shall* or *will have had,*
etc.	*etc.*

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

Haya tenido, etc.	*I may have had, etc.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Hubiera, *or* hubiese tenido, etc.	*I might, could, should* or *would have had, etc.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Si*) Hubiere tenido, etc.	(if) *I shall* or *will have had, etc.*

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.			
El buey, *the ox.*	**La vez**, *the time.*	**Hacer**, 2. *to make, to do.*
El valor, *the courage.*	**Acabar**, 1. *to finish.*	**Heredar**, 1. *to inherit.*
La esperanza, *the hope.*	**Almorzar**, 1. *to breakfast.*	**Llegar**, 1. *to arrive.*
La fortuna, *the fortune.*	**Bastante**, *enough.*	**Mismo**, *same.*
La hacienda, *the estate.*	**Dejar**, 1. *to leave.*	**Oír**, 3. *to hear.*
La noche, *the night.*	**Escrito**, *written.*	**Tener**, 2. *to hold, to have.*
La paciencia, *the patience.*	**Eso**, *that.*	**Todavía**, *yet.*
La suerte, *the fate.*	**Guardar**, 1. *to keep.*	**Visto**, *seen.*

Exercise 47.

1. Tengo un hermano en París. 2. ¿ Han recibido VV. cartas hoy ? 3. Sí, señor, hemos recibido una carta de nuestro padre. 4. ¿ Ha visto V. al Presidente ? 5. Le he visto varias veces. 6. ¿ Cuándo tendrá V. dinero ? 7. Tendré cien duros mañana. 8. ¿ Qué tenía su hermano en su cuarto ? 9. No tenía nada. 10. Tenga V. paciencia, amigo mío. 11. ¿ Quién tendrá el valor de (*to*) hacer eso ? 12. Todos tendremos ese valor. 13. ¿ Tenían los muchachos sus libros esta mañana ? 14. No los tenían. 15. ¿ Cuándo habrá acabado V. ? 16. Habré acabado en una hora. 17. ¿ Tenían VV. amigos en aquella ciudad ? 18. Teníamos varios. 19. ¿ Quién ha heredado de la fortuna del general ? 20. El general no ha dejado ninguna. 21. ¿ Tendrán VV. libros franceses el mes que viene (*next month*) ? 22. Ya tenemos muchos libros franceses é ingleses. 23. ¿ Porqué no había escrito V. á su padre ? 24. Porque yo había escrito á mi hermano. 25. ¿ Había hablado V. á este hombre ? 26. Yo le había hablado dos ó tres veces. 27. ¿ Ha almorzado todo el mundo ? 28. El caballero alemán no ha almorzado todavía. 29. ¿ Con qué dinero ha comprado V. esto ? 30. Con ninguno, no lo he pagado todavía. 31. ¿ Tendría

V. el valor de salir solo? 32. No, yo no tendría ese valor. 33. ¿ Tiene V. las llaves de la casa? 34. Las tendré esta tarde. 35. ¿ Ha visto V. al señor Palacio? 36. Le he visto en su almacén. 37. El padre de Carlos ha perdido toda su fortuna. 38. Si V. no es prudente, V. tendrá la misma suerte. 39. ¿ Ha hallado V. algo? 40. He hallado una llave de reloj. 41. Es mía.

Exercise 48.

1. Why have you not spoken to the gentleman? 2. I have not seen him. 3. Shall you have finished your work this evening? 4. I shall have finished it in two hours. 5. Had (*imperf.*) you many horses when you were (*estaba*) in the country? 6. I had four, and my brother had five. 7. Have patience, my friend, you will have the money to-morrow. 8. Have you money enough for the voyage? 9. I have not much, but I have enough. 10. Had you lost all hope? 11. I had lost all my money; and, with my money, all hope. 12. The mother has given good advice to her daughter. 13. We had bought many oxen for our estate. 14. How long have you been in that country? 15. I have been there five years. 16. Have you written all your letters? 17. No, sir, I have not had time. 18. Has your brother written his? 19. He has not written them either. 20. Have the children gone to (*á la*) school? 21. No, madam, they are breakfasting. 22. Has your father sold his houses? 23. He has sold the large one, and he has kept the small one. 24. Do you know if the gentleman has gone out? 25. He had gone out when I was upstairs. 26. What did you hold (*tenía*) in your hand? 27. I held (*tenía*) the key of the garden. 28. Have you spoken to your father about (*de*) that? 29. Not yet, my father is not in (*en la*) town. 30. I have heard that the vessel has arrived.

Lección XXV. Lesson XXV.

IDIOMATIC USES OF TENER.

Tener calor,	*to be warm.*
Tener frío,	*to be cold.*
Tener hambre,	*to be hungry.*
Tener sed,	*to be thirsty.*
Tener sueño,	*to be sleepy.*

Tener vergüenza,	*to be ashamed.*
Tener miedo,	*to be afraid.*
Tener gana,	*to have a mind.*
Tener razón,	*to be right.*
No tener razón, / Estar errado, / Hacer mal,	*to be wrong.*
Tener algo,	*to have something the matter.*
No tener nada,	*to have nothing the matter.*
Tener diez años,	*to be ten years old.*
Tener los ojos negros.	*to have black eyes.*
Tener diez pies de largo,	*to be ten feet long.*
Tener diez pies de ancho,	*to be ten feet wide.*
Tener diez pies de profundo,	*to be ten feet deep.*
Tener cien pies de alto,	*to be a hundred feet high.*
Tener las manos frías,	*to have cold hands.*
Tener algo que hacer,	*to have something to do.*
Tener los ojos malos,	*to have sore eyes.*
Tener el dedo malo,	*to have a sore finger.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿Tiene V. calor?	Are you warm?
No tengo calor, tengo frío.	I am not warm, I am cold.
¿Quién tiene hambre?	Who is hungry?
Tenemos hambre y sed.	We are hungry and thirsty.
¿Tenía V. vergüenza?	Were you ashamed?
Sí, señor, yo tenía vergüenza.	Yes, sir, I was ashamed.
Teníamos sueño.	We were sleepy.
Tendrémos frío en el cuarto.	We shall be cold in the room.
El clima de aquel país *es* muy frío.	The climate of that country *is* very cold.
El cuarto *está* frío.	The room *is* cold.
¿No tiene V. vergüenza?	Are you not ashamed?
Tengo vergüenza de hablar.	I am ashamed to speak.
¿Quién tiene sueño?	Who is sleepy?
Todos tenemos sueño.	We are all sleepy.
¿De quién tiene V. miedo?	Of whom are you afraid?
Tengo miedo de este hombre.	I am afraid of this man.
¿Tiene V. gana de salir?	Have you a mind to go out?
No tengo gana.	I have no mind (to go out).
¿Quién tiene razón?	Who is right?
Yo tengo razón y V. está errado.	I am right and you are wrong.

¿Tengo yo razón de comprar esta casa?	Am I right in buying that house?
V. hace mal de comprarla.	You are wrong in buying it.
¿Qué tiene V., amigo mío?	What is the matter with you, my friend?
Nada tengo.	Nothing is the matter with me.
¿Qué tiene él?	What is the matter with him?
Él no tiene nada.	Nothing is the matter with him.
¿Qué edad tiene V.? / ¿Cuántos años tiene V.?	How old are you?
Tengo veinte años.	I am twenty.
¿Qué edad tenía él?	How old was he?
Tenía cincuenta años.	He was fifty.
Mi hermano tendrá mañana diez y ocho años.	My brother will be eighteen to-morrow.
Esta señora tiene los ojos azules.	This lady has blue eyes.
La mesa tiene seis pies de largo.	The table is six feet long.
¿Tiene V. las manos frías?	Are your hands cold?
Tengo las manos y los pies fríos.	My hands and feet are cold.
¿Qué tiene V. que hacer?	What have you to do?
Tengo que escribir dos cartas.	I have two letters to write.

Vocabulario.

El bosque, *the wood.*
El comedor, *the dining room.*
El dolor de cabeza, *the headache.*
El gusto, *the pleasure.*
El ojo, *the eye.*
El pelo, *the hair.*
El pie, *the foot.*
La cerveza, *the beer.*
La conducta, *the conduct.*
La edad, *the age.*
La noche, *the night.*
Así, *so.*

Vocabulary.

Azul, *blue.*
Bailar, 1. *to dance.*
Bailo, *I dance.*
Bajar, 1. *to come down.*
Buenas noches, *good night.*
Conmigo, *with me.*
Decir, 3. *to tell, to say.*
Llorar, 1. *to cry, to weep.*
Rubio, *fair, blond.*
Trabajar, 1. *to work.*
Venir, 3. *to come.*
Ya no, *no longer.*

Exercise 49.

1. Teníamos frío en nuestro cuarto y hemos bajado aquí. 2. ¿Tiene V. miedo del perro? 3. No, señor, no tengo miedo de él (*him*). 4. ¿Tiene hambre el muchacho? 5. No tiene hambre; tiene sueño. 6. Siempre tiene hambre. 7. El tiempo está frío hoy. 8. ¿De quién

tiene V. miedo? 9. No tengo miedo de nadie. 10. ¿ Quién tiene razón, su hermana ó V.? 11. Es ella que está errada. 12. ¿ No tiene V. vergüenza de bailar á (*at*) su edad? 13. Yo no bailo desde mucho tiempo. 14. ¿ Tiene V. gana de ir al teatro esta noche? 15. Sí, si V. quiere venir conmigo. 16. Con mucho gusto. 17. ¿ Tiene V. hambre todavía? 18. Yo no tengo hambre, pero tengo todavía sed ; tiene V. vino en la casa? 19. No tengo vino, pero tengo cerveza. 20. ¿ Los muchachos están en el bosque, no tienen ellos miedo? 21. Están con los criados de su padre. 22. ¿ Qué tienes, Julia? 23. Tengo dolor de cabeza. 24. Esta casa tiene sesenta pies de alto, no es así? 25. Tiene á lo menos ochenta pies. 26. ¿ Qué edad tiene ese muchacho? 27. Tendrá seis años en un mes. 28. ¿ Tiene V. las manos frías? 29. No tengo las manos frías, pero tengo los pies fríos. 30. Emilio tiene los ojos negros y el pelo rubio. 31. ¿ Tiene V. algo que hacer? 32. Tengo que acabar mis cartas. 33. ¿ Porqué ha llorado V.? 34. No he llorado, tengo los ojos malos. 35. Y yo también.

Exercise 50.

1. Who is wrong? 2. Nobody is wrong. 3. Have you a mind to go to the ball? 4. Yes, I have a mind to go. 5. Have you time to (*de*) write a letter for (*para*) my brother? 6. I have no time now, but I shall have time this evening. 7. Is not your brother ashamed of his conduct? 8. He is ashamed of nothing. 9. You have no money, and you have not the courage to (*de*) work. 10. You are wrong to say that, I have worked five days this week. 11. I have a mind to write to my father. 12. I have already written to mine. 13. What is the matter with you to-day? 14. Nothing is the matter with me. 15. What has your brother to do? 16. He has a great deal (*muchísimo*) to do. 17. How old is he now? 18. He is twenty-five. 19. Is anything the matter with your sister? 20. She has a headache. 21. Is Clara pretty? 22. She is very pretty; she has blue eyes and black hair. 23. How old were you at (*en*) that time? 24. I was five years old. 25. Are your feet cold? 26. My feet are always cold. 27. Is your dining room very large? 28. It is thirty feet long and twenty feet wide. 29. What is the matter with that child? 30. I don't know what (*lo que*) is the matter with him. 31. Of what were you afraid? 32. We were not afraid, but the ladies were afraid. 33. Good night, I am going (*me voy*) home, I have never been so (*tanto*) sleepy.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The verb **tener,** *to have*, is used in Spanish instead of the verb *to be*, with the words **calor**, *warm, warmth, heat,* **frío**, *cold,* **hambre**, *hunger,* **sed**, *thirst,* **sueño**, *sleep,* **vergüenza**, *shame,* **miedo**, *fear,* **razón**, *right*, etc., used substantively, so that in order to express: **I am warm, he is thirsty, we are ashamed**, etc., the Spaniards say: *I have heat, he has thirst, we have shame*, etc. It follows, therefore, that the verb **to be** has to be rendered in Spanish by the corresponding tenses of the verb **tener,** *to have:*

Tengo hambre,	*I am hungry.*
Tenía *or* tuve hambre,	*I was hungry.*
Tendré hambre,	*I shall be hungry.*
Tendría hambre,	*I would be hungry.*
Que yo tenga hambre,	*That I may be hungry.*
Que yo tuviese hambre,	*That I might be hungry.*
He tenido hambre, etc.,	*I have been hungry, etc.*

OBSERVATION. — *a.* The verbs **ser** or **estar**, *to be*, are, however, used in Spanish with the word **frío**, *cold*, when the English verb is not used in the sense of *to feel, to experience.* Thus, we should not say: **el hielo** *tiene frío*, but **el hielo es frío**, *ice is cold;* nor **el día** *tiene* **frío**, but **el día está frío**, *the day is cold.*

Instead of *calor*, the Spaniards use in the same cases the adjectives **caliente, cálido**, etc. **La sopa está** *caliente* (and not **la sopa** *tiene* **calor**), *the soup is warm.*

b. The adjectives **hambriento**, *hungry, famished*, **sediento**, *thirsty, dry,* **vergonzoso** *ashamed, bashful,* **miedoso**, *timid, timorous, afraid*, are used as in English with the verb **to be**, *estar* or *ser:*

Estamos hambrientos,	*We are famished.*
Él es miedoso,	*He is afraid.*

2. Tener vergüenza, tener miedo, tener razón, tener gana, etc., require the preposition **de** to follow them when coming before **a** verb:

Tengo gana *de* escribir,	*I have a mind to write.*
Tenemos miedo *de* salir,	*We are afraid to go out.*
V. tiene razón *de* hacer eso,	*You are right to do that.*

OBSERVATION. — The Spaniards have no equivalent for **to be wrong**, and are therefore obliged to use :

No tener razón,	*Not to be right.*
Estar errado,	*To be mistaken.*
Hacer mal,	*To do wrong.*

3. The verb **tener** is used idiomatically in Spanish with the words **algo**, *something, anything,* and **nada**, *nothing, not anything ;* and, when thus connected, it has often the meaning of *to be something the matter with, to ail:*

¿ Qué tiene V. ?	*What is the matter with you ?*
Tengo algo,	*Something is the matter with me.*
¿ Tiene él algo ?	*Is anything the matter with him ?* / *Does anything ail him ?*
Él no tiene nada,	*Nothing is the matter with him.*

4. The verb **tener** is also used in Spanish to express the **age ;** and, in inquiring about the age of a person, they say :

¿ Qué edad tiene... ?	*What age has... ?*
¿ Cuántos años tiene... ?	*How many years has... ?*

The word **años**, *years,* must not be left out either in the question or in the answer, unless expressed in the first part of the sentence :

¿ Cuántos años tiene V. ?	*How old are you ?*
Tengo veinte años y mi hermano diez y ocho,	*I am twenty and my brother eighteen.*

OBSERVATION. — **Tener más edad, ser de más edad** is used for *older,* when comparing the age of persons who are not really old:

Este niño tiene más edad que aquél,	*This child is older than that one.*

5. Tener algo malo means *to have a pain, a sore,* or *ache somewhere,* and is used in Spanish with the definite article :

Tengo el ojo malo,	*I have a sore eye.*
Tenemos los pies malos,	*We have sore feet.*
Él tiene la rodilla mala,	*He has a sore knee.*

6. The definite article is also used before verbs expressing moral or physical properties :

Tiene los ojos azules,	*He has blue eyes.*
Tienen los pies grandes,	*They have large feet.*

OBSERVATION. — The same article is used in the *singular*, when speaking of several persons, if the property spoken of is single in each person:

Él tiene la nariz larga,	*He has a long nose.*
Ellos tienen la nariz larga,	*They have long noses.*

7. In speaking of the dimensions or size of objects, the Spanish use the verb **tener,** *to have:*

Este árbol tiene cien pies de alto,	*This tree is a hundred feet high.*
La calle tiene cincuenta pies de ancho,	*The street is fifty feet wide.*

8. The verb **tener** is used before an infinitive with the conjunction **que** when obligation or necessity is expressed:

Tengo que escribir cartas,	*I have letters to write.*
Tenemos que salir,	*We have to go out.*

Lección XXVI. Lesson XXVI.

VERBOS AUXILIARES. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Ser, *to be.*

MODO INFINITIVO, *INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Ser,	*to be.*
Haber sido,	*to have been.*

Gerundio, *gerund.*

Siendo,	*being.*
Habiendo sido,	*having been.*

Participio pasivo, *past participle.*

Sido,	*been.*

TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*

Presente, *present.*

Soy,	*I am.*
Eres,	*thou art.*
Es,	*he* (or *she*) *is.*
Somos,	*we are.*
Sois,	*you are.*
Son,	*they are.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Era,	*I was (I used to be).*
Eras,	*thou wast.*
Era,	*he was.*
Éramos,	*we were.*
Erais,	*you were.*
Eran,	*they were.*

Preterito perfecto definido, *preterite.*

Fuí,	*I was.*
Fuiste,	*thou wast.*
Fué,	*he was.*
Fuimos,	*we were.*
Fuisteis,	*you were.*
Fueron,	*they were.*

Futuro, *future.*

Seré,	*I shall* or *will be.*
Serás,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be.*
Será,	*he shall* or *will be.*
Seremos,	*we shall* or *will be.*
Seréis,	*you shall* or *will be.*
Serán,	*they shall* or *will be.*

Condicional, *conditional.*

Sería,	*I should* (or *would*) *be.*
Serías,	*thou shouldst be.*
Sería,	*he should be.*
Seríamos,	*we should be.*
Seríais,	*you should be.*
Serían,	*they should be.*

Imperativo, *imperative.*

Sé tú,	*be (be thou).*
Sed,	*be (be you).*

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Sea,	*I may be.*
Seas,	*thou mayest be.*
Sea,	*he may be.*
Seamos,	*we may be.*
Seáis,	*you may be.*
Sean,	*they may be.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Fuera, fuese ;	*I* (*might, could, would,* or) *should be.*
Fueras, fueses ;	*thou shouldst be.*
Fuera, fuese ;	*he should be.*
Fuéramos, fuésemos ;	*we should be.*
Fuerais, fueseis ;	*you should be.*
Fueran, fuesen ;	*they should be.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Cuando* or *Si*) Fuere,	(when *or* if) *I shall* or *will be.*
Fueres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be.*
Fuere,	*he shall* or *will be.*
Fuéremos,	*we shall* or *will be.*
Fuereis,	*you shall* or *will be.*
Fueren,	*they shall* or *will be.*

TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, *Compound Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

He sido,	*I have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Había sido,	*I had been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Preterito anterior, *past anterior.*

Hube sido,	*I had been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Futuro anterior, *future anterior.*

Habré sido,	*I shall* or *will have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

Haya sido,	*I may have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Pluscuamperfecto *pluperfect.*

Hubiera, *or* hubiese sido, etc.	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been. etc.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Si*) Hubiere sido, etc.	(if) *I shall* or *will have been. etc.*

Estar, *to be.*

MODO INFINITIVO, *INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Estar,	*to be.*
Haber estado,	*to have been.*

Gerundio, *gerund.*

Estando,	*being.*
Habiendo estado,	*having been.*

Participio pasivo, *past participle.*

Estado,	*been.*

TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Yo estoy,	*I am.*
Tu estás,	*thou art.*
Él *or* ella está,	*he* or *she is.*
Nosotros estamos,	*we are.*
Vosotros estáis,	*you are.*
Ellos *or* ellas están,	*they are.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Estaba,	*I was* (*I used to be*).
Estabas,	*thou wast.*
Estaba,	*he* or *she was.*
Estábamos,	*we were.*
Estabais,	*you were.*
Estaban,	*they were.*

Preterito perfecto definido, *preterite.*

Estuve,	*I was.*
Estuviste,	*thou wast.*
Estuvo,	*he was.*
Estuvimos,	*we were.*
Estuvisteis,	*you were.*
Estuvieron,	*they were.*

Futuro, *future.*

Estaré,	*I shall* or *will be.*
Estarás,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be.*
Estará,	*he shall* or *will be.*
Estaremos,	*we shall* or *will be.*
Estaréis,	*you shall* or *will be.*
Estarán,	*they shall* or *will be.*

Condicional, *conditional.*

Estaría,	*I should* (or *would*) *be.*
Estarías,	*thou shouldst be.*
Estaría,	*he should be.*
Estaríamos,	*we should be.*
Estaríais,	*you should be.*
Estarían,	*they should be.*

Imperativo, *imperative.*

Está tú,	*be* (*be thou*).
Estad,	*be* (*be you*).

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Presente, *present.*

Esté,	*I may be.*
Estés,	*thou mayest be.*
Esté,	*he may be.*
Estemos,	*we may be.*
Estéis,	*you may be.*
Estén,	*they may be.*

Imperfecto, *imperfect.*

Estuviera, estuviese ; etc.	*I* (*might, could, would,* or) *should be. etc.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Cuando* or *Si*) Estuviere,	(when *or* if) *I shall* or *will be.*
Estuvieres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be.*
Estuviere,	*he shall* or *will be.*
Estuviéremos,	*we shall* or *will be.*
Estuviereis,	*you shall* or *will be.*
Estuvieren,	*they shall* or *will be.*

TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, *Compound Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

He estado,	*I have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Había estado,	*I had been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Preterito anterior, *past anterior.*

Hube estado,	*I had been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Futuro anterior, *future anterior.*

Habré estado,	*I shall* or *will have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

MODO SUBJUNTIVO, *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Perfecto, *perfect.*

Haya estado,	*I may have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Hubiera, *or* hubiese estado,	*I* (*might, could, should,* or) *would have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Futuro, *future.*

(*Si*) Hubiere estado,	(if) *I shall* or *will have been.*
etc.	*etc.*

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El carpintero, *the carpenter.*	**Francia,** f. *France.*
El enfermo, *the patient.*	**Hasta,** *till, until, as far.*
El parque, *the park.*	**Herido,** *wounded.*
El precio, *the price.*	**Impaciente,** *impatient.*
La batalla, *the battle.*	**Ir,** 3. *to go.*
Amado, *loved.*	**Mucho tiempo,** *long time.*
Carolina, *Caroline.*	**Pero,** *but.*
Comprado, *bought.*	**Pocos,** *few.*
Conocido, *known.*	**Posible,** *possible.*
Creo, *I believe.*	**Pues,** *for, as.*
Demolido, *pulled down.*	**Tarde,** *late.*
Excepto, *except.*	**Vendido,** *sold.*

Exercise 51.

1. ¿ Está su padre en casa ? 2. No está ahora, pero estará esta noche. 3. ¿ Dónde estaba V. esta mañana ? 4. Estuve en mi cuarto todo el tiempo. 5. ¿ Quién estaba con V.? 6. Mis dos hermanos estaban conmigo. 7. Esta manzana no es tan buena como las otras. 8. Si V. está aquí mañana temprano, tendrá V. dinero. 9. ¿ Cuándo estará V. en casa ? 10. Estaré temprano esta noche. 11. Seamos amigos. 12. ¿ No es V. el amigo de ese hombre ? 13. Yo era su amigo, pero ya no lo soy. 14. ¿ Estaría V. contento si su hermana estuviese (*were*) aquí ? 15. Estaría lo más contento. 16. V. será siempre el mismo, amigo mío; V. es demasiado impaciente. 17. Lo sé. 18. ¿ Dónde estaba V. cuando V. era joven ? 19. Estuve en Francia hasta la edad de veinte años. 20. ¿ Ha estado V. hoy en la calle ? 21. He estado en la casa todo el día. 22. ¿ Quién estará en su casa esta noche ? 23. No sé todavía. 24. ¿ Estará ahí la señorita Luisa ? 25. Sí, señor, y la señorita Carolina también. 26. ¿ Es bonita la señorita Carolina ? 27. Ha sido muy bonita, pero ya no es joven. 28. ¿ Quiere V. ser mi amigo ? 29. Seré su amigo, si V. es el mío. 30. ¿ Qué edad tenía V. cuando estaba en Inglaterra ? 31. Yo tenía doce años, y mi hermano quince. 32. ¿ Es V. pobre ? 33. No soy ni rico ni pobre. 34. Estos dos hombres eran muy buenos amigos, pero ahora son enemigos. 35. ¿ Estará aquí el carpintero mañana ? 36. Estará, pero tarde. 37. ¿ Es hábil este médico ? 38. Lo es. 39. ¿ Está V. mala, señora ? 40. Lo estoy un poco. 41. Este autor todavía no es conocido ; pero lo será un día, pues tiene mucho talento.

Exercise 52.

1. Are you sick, my little friend? 2. I am not, but my brother is. 3. Is this hat yours or your brother's? 4. It is neither his nor mine. 5. Are the horses sold? 6. All the horses are sold except one. 7. Is Charles's mother old? 8. She is, but she is pretty yet. 9. Are you the lady of the house? 10. I am not; I am her sister. 11. Are those gentlemen friends? 12. They have been, for a long while. 13. Is your letter written? 14. It will be written very soon. 15. Do you know if the patient is better? 16. He was (*imperf.*) much better this morning. 17. Good morning, sir; is your brother at home? 18. I believe that he is. 19. When will you be ready to (*para*) go with me? 20. I will be ready in a few minutes. 21. This child is loved by (*de*) every body. 22. These books have been bought in Paris. 23. When will you be the first in your class? 24. I am always the first. 25. Where were (*imperf.*) you this morning? 26. I was in the park with my two sisters. 27. Is the park far from here? 28. It is not very far. 29. Are those two men friends yet? 30. They were (*imperf.*) friends, but I don't know if they are now. 31. The general was (*pret.*) wounded in the battle. 32. Three houses have been pulled down in our street. 33. How is that possible? 34. It is very possible. 35. The boys were (*imperf.*) playing in the yard when I was (*pret.*) at their house. 36. The goods have been sold at a very good price.

Observation. — All the rules on the verbs **ser** and **estar**, *to be*, having been given in Lesson V., we refer the student to the same, and would recommend a review of the important rules therein contained.

Lección XXVII. Lesson XXVII.

HABER AND SER USED AS IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Haber, *there to be.*

Hay,	*there is, there are, it is.*
Había, / **Hubo,**	*there was, there were.*
Habrá,	*there shall* or *will be.*
Habría,	*there should* or *would be.*
Hubiera *or* **hubiese,**	*there should* or *would be.*

Ha habido,	*there has been, there have been.*
Había habido,	*there had been.*
Habrá habido,	*there shall* or *will have been.*
Habría habido,	*there should* or *would have been.*
Hubiera *or* hubiese habido,	*there should* or *would have been.*
¿ Hay ?	*is there? are there? is it?*
¿ Había ? ¿ Hubo ?	*was there? were there?*
¿ Ha habido ?	*has* (or *have*) *there been?*
No hay,	*there is not, there are not.*
No había, No hubo,	*there was not, there were not.*
No ha habido,	*there has* (or *have*) *not been.*
No había habido,	*there had not been.*
¿ Qué hay ?	*what is the matter? what is there?*
¿ Qué hay de nuevo ?	*what is the news?*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Hay una carta para V.	There is a letter for you.
¿ Hay pan en la casa ?	Is there any bread in the house ?
No hay.	There is none.
¿ Había mucho pescado en la plaza ?	Was there much fish in the market ?
Había mucho.	There was much.
Hay diez mil.	There are ten thousand.
¿ Habrá un baile mañana ?	Will there be a ball to-morrow ?
Ha habido uno ayer.	There was one yesterday.

Haber *translated by* AGO:

Mi hermano llegó tres días ha, Tres días ha que mi hermano llegó,	*My brother arrived three days ago.*
Murió mucho tiempo ha,	*He died a long time ago.*

Haber *expressing an* ACTION, *or a* STATE WHICH STILL CONTINUES:

Dos años ha que está malo,	*He has been sick these two years.*
Mucho tiempo ha que estoy aquí,	*I have been here a long while.*
¿ Cuánto (tiempo) ha que V. está aquí ?	*How long have you been here?*

Haber *used to express* MEASURE OF DISTANCES :

¿ Cuánto hay de Paris á Londres ?	*How far is it from Paris to London?*
No hay lejos,	*It is not far.*
Hay cinco minutos de aquí á la iglesia,	*It is five minutes' walk from here to the church.*

Ser *used* IMPERSONALLY :

Es verdad que es pobre,	*It is true that he is poor.*
Es inútil decir eso,	*It is useless to say that.*
Será tiempo de ir allá,	*It will be time to go there.*

Hay *and* **allí está** *compared:*

Hay un hombre á la puerta,	*There is a man at the door.*
Allí está el hombre que vende pan,	*There is the man (pointing out) who sells bread.*

Todos, *every:*

Todos los días, *every day.*	Todo el día, *the whole day.*
Todos los meses, *every month.*	Todo el mes, *the whole month.*
Todas las mañanas, *every morning.*	Toda la mañana, *the whole morning.*
Todas las tardes, *every afternoon.*	Toda la tarde, *the whole afternoon.*
Todas las noches, *every evening.*	Toda la noche, *the whole night.*
Todas las semanas, *every week.*	Toda la semana, *the whole week.*
Todos los años, *every year.*	Todo el año, *the whole year.*
Todos los lunes, *every Monday.*	Todo el mundo, *everybody.*

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El Alemán, *the German.*	**La semana que viene**, *next week.*
El baile, *the ball.*	**La vez**, *the time.*
El conocido, *the acquaintance.*	**Cerca de**, *nearly.*
El estrangero, *the foreigner.*	**Esperar**, 1. *to wait.*
El ferro carril, *the railroad.*	**Hecho**, *done.*
El incendio, *the conflagration.*	**Inútil**, *useless.*
El parque, *the park.*	**Muerto**, *died.*
El periódico, *the newspaper.*	**También**, *also, too.*
El duro, *the dollar.*	**Todo**, *all, everything.*
La gente, *the people.*	**Quiere**, *wishes.*
La milla, *the mile.*	**Último**, *last.*
La persona, *the person.*	**Ver**, 2. *to see.*

Exercise 53.

1. ¿ Hay cartas para mí (*me*) hoy ? 2. Hay una para **V** , y dos para su hermano. 3. ¿ Había mucha gente en el baile ? 4. Había más que la última vez. 5. ¿ Cuánto hay de aquí á la ciudad ? 6. Hay muy lejos, pero ahora tenemos un ferro carril. 7. ¿ Cuánto tiempo ha que ha muerto el general ? 8. Habrá un año mañana. 9. ¿ Quién

estaba en el baile? 10. Había muchos de nuestros conocidos. 11. Es inútil decir eso, todo el mundo lo sabe. 12. ¿ Hay mucho tiempo que V. está aquí esperando? 13. Hay á lo menos dos horas. 14. ¿ Qué ha hecho V. todo el tiempo? 15. He leído los periódicos. 16. ¿ Qué ha habido en Boston? 17. Ha habido un incendio muy grande. 18. ¿ Cuántos centavos hay en un duro? 19. V. sabe muy bien que hay cien (centavos). 20. ¿ Qué hay de nuevo en la ciudad? 21. No hay nada de particular. 22. ¿ Cuánto hay de Berlín á Viena? 23. Hay cerca de cien millas. 24. ¿ Cuánto tiempo ha que él está en América? 25. No sé cuánto tiempo hay.

Exercise 54.

1. Is there any one upstairs? 2. There is nobody upstairs, but there is somebody downstairs. 3. How long have you been here? 4. I have been here these three hours. 5. Do you know if there were (*imperf.*) any letters for me (*mí*)? 6. There were none this morning. 7. Is there anybody at the door? 8. There is nobody. 9. There are some very pretty birds in the park. 10. Was there anything for you? 11. There was nothing for me (*mí*); all was for my brother. 12. Were there many people at the theater? 13. There were more than two thousand persons. 14. Are there many foreigners in that country? 15. Yes, there are many Germans, Spaniards, and Frenchmen. 16. Has your brother arrived? 17. He arrived (*llegó*) three days ago. 18. There are many persons (*muchos*) who think (*piensan*) that I am rich, but I am not. 19. What is the matter, my friend? 20. I don't know what the matter is. 21. If you are a good boy, there will be something for you too. 22. Is there anything to be done (*que hacer*)? 23. There is nothing to be done. 24. There will be a great ball at (*en*) the theater next week. 25. There is one every week. 26. What is the news to-day? 27. I don't know (of) anything. 28. There is a man at the door who wishes to see you (*verle á V.*).

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The verbs **haber** and **ser** are often used as impersonal verbs, and are then only used in the third person singular, even when referring to a plural:

Hay un hombre á la puerta,	*There is a man at the door.*
Hay dos hombres abajo,	*There are two men downstairs.*
Había alguno arriba,	*There was somebody upstairs.*
Había mucha gente en el teatro,	*There were many people at the theater.*

NOTE. — It will be noticed that the forms of **haber** are used with a noun, expressing the idea of *there is*, etc. **Ser** may be followed by a noun or adjective, and expresses the English *it is*, etc.:

Es lastima,	*It is a pity.*
Hay mucha gente,	*There are many people.*

2. Haber is used to denote distance:

¿ Cuánto hay de aquí á la ciudad ?	*How far is it from here to the city?*
Hay dos millas.	*It is two miles.*

3. Haber may be used in expressions of time and can be translated by *ago*, *since*, etc.:

Hemos comprado esta casa dos años ha,	*We bought this house two years ago.*
Mucho tiempo ha que no he visto á su hermano,	*I have not seen your brother for (since) a long time.*

NOTE. — In this sense it will be noted that the form of the verb is **ha** not **hay**, and that it follows the expression of time.

OBSERVATION. — The verb **hacer**, when referring to time, may be used instead of **haber**. The former precedes the expression of time.

Compró la casa hace dos meses,	*I bought the house two months ago.*

4. Haber used impersonally governs the infinitive with **que**, and not with a preposition.

Hoy hay mucho que hacer,	*There is much to do to-day.*
Mañana habrá mucho que hacer,	*There will be much to do to-morrow.*
Había que ir,	*It was necessary to go.*

Lección XXVIII. Lesson XXVIII.

THE TIME OF THE DAY, ETC.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
¿ Qué hora es ?	What time is it ? What o'clock is it ?
Es la una.	It is one o'clock.
Son las dos.	It is two o'clock.
Son las tres.	It is three o'clock.
Son las doce.	It is twelve o'clock.
Es la una y media.	It is half past one.
Son las dos y cuarto.	It is a quarter past two.
Son las tres menos cuarto.	It is a quarter to three.
Son las doce del día.	It is twelve o'clock in the day.
Es mediodía.	It is noon (midday).
Son las doce de la noche.	It is twelve o'clock in the night.
Es medianoche.	It is midnight.
Las cuatro *de* la mañana.	Four o'clock *in* the morning.
Las tres de la tarde.	Three o'clock in the afternoon.
Las siete de la noche.	Seven o'clock in the evening.
¿ Á qué hora ?	At what o'clock ?
Á la una.	At one o'clock.
Á las dos menos cuarto.	At a quarter to two.
Á las dos menos veinte.	At twenty minutes to two.
Son más de las cinco.	It is more than five o'clock.
Son menos de las seis.	It is less than six o'clock.
Son las siete en punto.	It is precisely seven o'clock.
Ya son las diez.	It is already ten o'clock.
No son todavía las once.	It is not yet eleven o'clock.
No es más que la una y media.	It is only half past one.
Van á dar las tres.	It is going to strike three o'clock.
Son cerca de las cuatro.	It is nearly four o'clock.
Son las siete dadas.	It is past seven o'clock.
Las once están dando.	It is striking eleven o'clock.
Han dado las tres.	It has struck three o'clock.
Faltan algunos minutos.	It wants a few minutes.
Eran las tres.	It was three o'clock.
Serán las cuatro.	It will be four o'clock.

Divisions of Time.

Un año,	*a year.*
Un mes,	*a month.*
Una semana,	*a week.*
Una hora,	*an hour.*
Una media hora,	*half an hour.*
Un cuarto de hora,	*a quarter of an hour.*
Tres cuartos de hora,	*three quarters of an hour.*
Una hora y media,	*an hour and a half.*
Un siglo,	*a century.*
Un minuto,	*a minute.*
Quince días,	*a fortnight.*
Un segundo,	*a second.*
Un rato *or* un momento,	*a moment.*
Un instante,	*an instant.*
Una hora y cuarto,	*an hour and a quarter.*
El año que viene (próximo),	*next year.*
El año pasado,	*last year.*
La semana que viene,	*next week.*
La semana pasada,	*last week.*

Divisions of the Day.

El día,	*the day.*
El amanecer,	*the dawn, break of day.*
La mañana,	*the morning.*
El mediodía,	*midday.*
La tarde,	*the afternoon.*
La noche,	*the evening, the night.*
Un día de trabajo,	*a workday.*
La víspera,	*the eve.*
La salida del sol,	*sunrise.*
La puesta del sol,	*sunset.*
El anochecer,	*nightfall.*
Medianoche,	*midnight.*
Un día de fiesta,	*a holiday.*
Una jornada,	*a day's work.*

Holidays.

El día de año nuevo,	*New Year's Day.*
El día de reyes,	*Twelfth Day.*
El martes de carnestolendas,	*Shrove Tuesday.*

El miércoles de ceniza,	*Ash Wednesday.*
El domingo de ramos,	*Palm Sunday.*
Pascua de resurrección,	*Easter.*
Día de todos los santos,	*All Saints' Day.*
El día de San Miguel,	*Michaelmas.*
Navidad,	*Christmas.*
La nochebuena,	*Christmas eve.*
La cuaresma,	*Lent.*
La semana santa,	*Holy week.*
Viernes santo,	*Good Friday.*
Pentecostes,	*Whitsuntide.*
Las vacaciones *or* las fiestas,	*Vacations, the holidays.*

Vocabulario.

El concierto, *the concert.*	**Cerrado,** *closed.*	**Jamás,** *ever.*
El fin, *the end.*	**¿ Come V. ?** *do you dine ?*	**Llega,** *arrives.*
Á menudo, *often.*	**Comemos,** *we dine.*	**¿ Sale V. ?** *do you go out ?*
Antes de, *before.*	**Conmigo,** *with me.*	**Trabajar,** 1. *to work.*
Cansado, *tired.*	**Encontrará,** *will find.*	**Volver,** 2. *to return.*
Cerca, *near.*	**Entre,** *between.*	**Vuelva V.,** *return.*

Vocabulary.

Exercise 55.

1. ¿ Qué hora es, amigo ? 2. Es temprano todavía. 3. ¿ Son ya las siete ? 4. Todavía no, no son más de las seis y media. 5. ¿ Á qué hora estará V. en casa esta noche ? 6. Estaré entre las siete y las ocho. 7. ¿ Está lejos de aquí la casa de su tío ? 8. Está cerquita. 9. ¿ Cuánto tiempo hay que V. está aquí ? 10. Á lo menos tres cuartos de hora. 11. ¿ Á qué hora sale V. de la escuela ? 12. Á las doce en punto. 13. ¿ Estarán VV. aquí temprano ? 14. Estaremos aquí á las siete. 15. ¿ Puede V. volver en media hora ? 16. No, señor, no puedo volver. 17. Eran las nueve cuando yo estaba en el almacén. 18. ¿ Cuántas vacaciones tendrán VV. al fin del año ? 19. Tendremos tres meses. 20. ¿ Á qué hora llega la gente ? 21. Todo el mundo estará aquí antes de las ocho. 22. Si V. no está aquí á medianoche, encontrará la puerta cerrada. 23. Estaré aquí á las once. 24. ¿ Cuántas semanas hay todavía antes de la semana santa ? 25. Hay todavía tres semanas. 26. Vuelva V. á la una y media ó á las dos. 27. ¿ Va V. á la iglesia todos los domingos ? 28. Voy dos veces. 29. ¿ Cuántas horas hay en un día ? 30. Hay veinte y cuatro.

Exercise 56.

1. What time is it by (*por*) your watch? 2. It is only ten o'clock by mine. 3. Were (*imperf.*) you here last year? 4. No, I was in the country. 5. How many minutes are there in one hour? 6. There are sixty. 7. Will you be here at seven o'clock? 8. No, not at seven, but at half past seven. 9. When will you be ready? 10. In half an hour. 11. At what time are you going to the concert? 12. At half past eight: will you be there? 13. I shall be there at a quarter past nine. 14. We have worked until three o'clock in the morning, and we are very tired. 15. Have you ever seen the rising of the sun? 16. Very often when I was in the country. 17. What a beautiful sunset! 18. Is your father in town? 19. He is still in the country. 20. We have no vacation on (*el*) New Year's day. 21. Why not? 22. We never have any on that day. 23. Will you go out with me? 24. At what time? 25. At a quarter to four.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. To indicate the hour or the time, the Spaniards do not use the words *o'clock*. They use the article **la** before **una** (*one o'clock*) and **las** before the other hours:

La una, *one o'clock;* Las dos, *two o'clock;* etc.

The word **hora**, *hour*, being understood, and being feminine, the adjective *half* is translated by **media**, feminine of **medio**.

2. To express subdivisions of the hour, the latter is divided into two parts. The first comprises the first half of the hour to and including the half hour. These fractions are added to the hour, and are connected by **y**:

Son las dos y diez minutos,	*It is ten minutes past two.*
Son las cuatro y cuarto,	*It is a quarter past four.*
Es la una y veinte y cinco,	*It is twenty-five minutes past one.*
Son las once y media,	*It is half past eleven.*

The other twenty-nine minutes are subtracted from the following hour by **menos**:

La una menos veinte,	*Twenty minutes of one.*
Son las cinco menos cuarto,	*It is quarter of five.*

3. The preposition **on,** which in English is placed before days of the week, days of the month, and a few holidays, is rendered in Spanish by the definite article :

El día de año nuevo,	*On New Year's day.*
El domingo,	*On Sunday.*
Los lunes,	*On Mondays.*

Lección XXIX. Lesson XXIX.

USE OF THE ARTICLE.

The definite article is used in Spanish :

1. Before masculine and feminine *geographical names :*

La Francia es más grande que la Italia,	*France is larger than Italy.*
El Canadá está al Norte de los Estados Unidos de America,	*Canada is north of the United States of America.*
La Irlanda es una isla,	*Ireland is an island.*
Los Alpes y los Pirineos son muy altos,	*The Alps and the Pyrenees are very high.*
El Vesuvio es un volcán,	*Vesuvius is a volcano.*
El Danubio es un río grande,	*The Danube is a large river.*

2. Before names of *days* and *seasons :*

El domingo es un día de descanso,	*Sunday is a day of rest.*
El sábado es el último día de la semana,	*Saturday is the last day of the week.*
El invierno es muy frío en este país,	*Winter is very cold in this country.*
La semana que viene,	*Next week.*

3. Before *abstract nouns,* or *nouns used in a general sense :*

La juventud es imprudente,	*Youth is imprudent.*
La virtud es amable,	*Virtue is amiable.*
La esperanza sostiene al hombre,	*Hope sustains man.*

El oro y el plomo son metales,	*Gold and lead are metals.*
El blanco y el negro son colores,	*White and black are colors.*
El fuego y el agua son elementos,	*Fire and water are elements.*
La geografía es la descripción de la tierra,	*Geography is the description of the earth.*
El azúcar es dulce,	*Sugar is sweet.*
La música y la dansa son hermanas,	*Music and dancing are sisters.*
El catolicismo y el protestantismo,	*Catholicism and Protestantism.*
El hombre es mortal,	*Man is mortal.*
El tiempo es precioso,	*Time is precious.*
Los sombreros redondos son de moda,	*Round hats are in fashion.*

4. Before *adjectives*, or other parts of speech, used *substantively:*

Los ricos y los pobres,	*The rich and the poor.*
El comer y el beber.	*Eating and drinking.*
El sí y el no,	*Yes and no.*
El pro y el contra,	*Pro and con.*
El bien y el mal,	*Good and evil.*

5. Before *titles* prefixed to names:

El emperador Don Pedro,	*Emperor Don Pedro.*
El rey Luis Catorce.	*King Louis the Fourteenth.*
El príncipe Poniatowski,	*Prince Poniatowski.*
El presidente Lincoln,	*President Lincoln.*
El general Wáshington,	*General Washington.*
El señor May,	*Mr. May.*

6 Before *proper names* preceded by adjectives:

El pequeño Juan,	*Little John.*
La vieja María,	*Old Mary.*

7. Before nouns specifying *quantity* or *measure:*

Tres duros *la* libra,	*Three dollars a pound.*
Un duro *la* vara,	*One dollar a yard.*

8. Before the four *cardinal points:*

El Norte,	*North.*
El Sur, sud *or* mediodía,	*South.*
El Este *or* Oriente,	*East.*
El Oeste, Poniente *or* Occidente,	*West.*

Countries.		Paises.	
Europa,	*Europe.*	Alemania,	*Germany.*
Asia,	*Asia.*	Holanda,	*Holland.*
África,	*Africa.*	Prusia,	*Prussia.*
América,	*America.*	Bélgica,	*Belgium.*
Australia,	*Australia.*	Sajonia,	*Saxony.*
España,	*Spain.*	Ungría,	*Hungary.*
Francia,	*France.*	Austria,	*Austria.*
Inglaterra,	*England.*	Italia,	*Italy.*
Turquía,	*Turkey.*	Suecia,	*Sweden.*
Grecia,	*Greece.*	Suiza,	*Switzerland.*

Cities.		Ciudades.	
Madrid,	*Madrid.*	Lisboa,	*Lisbon.*
París,	*Paris.*	Estocolmo,	*Stockholm.*
Londres,	*London.*	Bruselas,	*Brussels.*

National Names.		Nombres de Naciones.	
Español,	*Spaniard.*	Ruso,	*Russian.*
Francés,	*Frenchman.*	Austriaco,	*Austrian.*
Inglés,	*Englishman.*	Suizo,	*Swiss.*
Holandés,	*Dutch.*	Turco,	*Turk.*
Alemán,	*German.*	Griego,	*Greek.*
Prusiano,	*Prussian.*	Sueco,	*Swede.*

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El coronel, *the colonel.*	**La virtud**, *the virtue.*	**Ir**, 3. *to go.*
El dibujo, *the drawing.*	**Admitido**, *admitted.*	**¿ Le gusta á V. ?** *do you like?*
El hierro, *the iron.*	**Aprender**, 2. *to learn.*	**Me gusta**, *I like, I am fond of.*
El invierno, *the winter.*	**Aprendido**, *learned.*	**Leído**, *read.*
El tigre, *the tiger.*	**Bajo**, *under.*	**Peligroso**, *dangerous.*
La caridad, *the charity.*	**Conocido**, *known.*	**¿ Piensa V. ?** *do you intend?*
La danza, *the dancing.*	**Consultado**, *consulted.*	**Pobre**, *poor.*
La docena, *the dozen.*	**Cuanto**, *how much.*	**Próximo**, *next.*
La fe, *the faith.*	**Durado**, *lasted.*	**Servido**, *served.*
La música, *the music.*	**En casa**, *at (the house of).*	**Teologal**, *theological.*
La novela, *the novel.*	**Estudiado**, *studied.*	**Trasparente**, *transparent.*
La ocasión, *the occasion.*	**Estudiamos**, *we study.*	
La paz, *the peace.*	**¿ Estudian VV. ?** *do you study?*	
La pintura, *the painting.*	**Eterno**, *eternal.*	
La primavera, *the spring.*	**Feliz**, *happy.*	
La tierra, *the earth.*	**Interesante**, *interesting.*	
La verdad, *the truth.*		

Exercise 57.

1. ¿ Ha conocido V. al general Piedras ? 2. He conocido á su hijo, el doctor Piedras. 3. ¿ Cuántas veces ha visto V. al presidente Grant ? 4. Le he visto varias veces en Wáshington. 5. Este soldado ha servido con el coronel Martín. 6. ¿ Qué ha aprendido V. en esta escuela ? 7. He aprendido la geografía y la historia. 8. El pobre Carlos ha muerto en Cuba. 9. La verdad es eterna. 10. La fortuna es inconstante. 11. Los inviernos son muy fríos en este país. 12. ¿ Quiere V. un pedazo de jamón ? 13. No, gracias, no me gusta el jamón. 14. ¿ Qué color le gusta á V. ? 15. Me gusta el azul. 16. ¿ Ha escrito V. al doctor Nelson ? 17. He escrito al profesor Ventura. 18. ¿ Es este joven, hijo del abogado Arroyo ? 19. El señor Arroyo no tiene hijo. 20. ¿ Qué estudian VV. ? 21. Estudiamos el francés y el inglés. 22. ¿ Por cuánto ha vendido V. su vino ? 23. He vendido todo á cuatro duros la docena. 24. Londres es la capital de Inglaterra. 25. Este muchacho tiene los ojos negros, y su hermana los tiene azules. 26. El comer demasiado es peligroso. 27. El emperador Napoleón Primero murió (*died*) á la edad de cincuenta y dos años. 28. Los ricos no son siempre más felices que los pobres. 29. ¿ Ha leído V. muchas novelas en inglés ? 30. Sí, señor, las novelas inglesas son muy interesantes.

Exercise 58.

1. Glass is transparent. 2. Faith, hope, and charity are the three theological virtues. 3. Peace has never lasted long on the earth. 4. We were (*imperf.*) yesterday at Captain Martin's. 5. Were your brothers there ? 6. Yes, they were there too. 7. Under what generals have you served ? 8. I served (*serví*) under Generals Grant and Sherman. 9. When do you intend to go to Italy ? 10. This winter or next spring. 11. Iron is more useful than gold. 12. Poor little Charles is sick. 13. Will you have some beef ? 14. No, I don't like beef. 15. Have you seen any tigers in that country ? 16. No, never ; there are none. 17. Have you studied history ? 18. I have studied history and geography. 19. Where is your sister now ? 20. She is in France. 21. Have you ever been in Europe ? 22. Yes, I have been in the South of Europe. 23. We have consulted Doctor Hener on (*en*) this occasion. 24. Dogs are not admitted in the park. 25. Will you have some apples, my little friend ? 26. Yes, sir ; have you any ?

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The definite article is placed before a noun used in a definite or individual sense:

El pobre ha muerto, *The poor man has died.*

2. The definite article may be used before a whole sentence, when the latter serves as the subject of another sentence:

Mucho me alegra el que venga V., *I am very glad that you come.*

3. When several nouns follow each other, the article is placed before each one of them.

Cuando la justicia, la fidelidad, el honor, la compasión, la vergüenza, y todos los sentimientos que pueden mover un corazón generoso, etc. JOVELLANOS.

When justice, fidelity, honor, compassion, modesty, and all feelings which can move a generous heart, etc.

EXCEPTION. — Nouns closely connected in sense may omit all but the first article.

4. The definite article is generally used with the name of a country; except when the latter is preceded by a preposition:

La Inglaterra tenía posesiones en Francia, *England used to have possessions in France.*

OBSERVATION. — Countries out of Europe, and in fact remote countries, preserve the definite article even when accompanied by prepositions.

5. The definite article is placed before *titles* or other designations preceding proper names:

El Exmo (excelentísimo) señor duque de... *His Excellency the duke of...*

If the word **su** precedes the honorific designation, the article is placed before the title:

Su Excelencia, el duque de... *His Excellency the duke of...*

EXCEPTION. — **Don** and **Doña** omit the article, as do titles used in direct address (the vocative):

Don Sancho, Doña Luz
Buenas tardes, señor Blanco, *Good afternoon, Mr. White.*

6. The definite article is likewise placed before the names of a few Italian poets and painters:

El Petrarca, *Petrarch.* El Ariosto, *Ariosto.* El Dante, *Dante.*

7. In describing the characteristic features of persons or things, the definite article is also used:

Carlos tiene los ojos negros,	*Charles has black eyes.*
Luis tiene la nariz grande,	*Lewis has a large nose.*

8. A few cities also take the definite article:

La Habana, *Havana.* La Coruña, *Corunna.* El Ferol, *Ferol.*

Exceptions.

The definite article (and in some cases the indefinite article) is omitted:

1. When the name of the country figures as the place of origin, or is preceded by a preposition:

He recibido una carta de Francia,	*I have received a letter from France.*
Mi hermano está en Alemania,	*My brother is in Germany.*
La reina de Inglaterra es viuda,	*The queen of England is a widow.*
Este vino es de España,	*This wine is from Spain.*

2. Before *names of countries* the capital of which has the same name as the country itself:

Nápoles, *Naples.* **Méjico**, *Mexico.*

3. Before a few locutions, as:

Voy á casa — á misa — á palacio, etc.	*I am going home — to mass — to the palace, etc.*
Voy á casa de mi amigo,	*I am going to my friend's house.*

4. With a substantive in apposition with a preceding substantive:

Juan, hermano de Enrique,	*John, the brother of Henry.*
París, capital de Francia,	*Paris, the capital of France.*
Alejandro, emperador de Rusia,	*Alexander, the emperor of Russia.*
Hablamos de Pedro, hombre de gran talento,	*We speak of Peter, a man of great talent.*

5. Before *titles of books, headings of chapters*, etc.:

Vida de Cervantes,	*The Life of Cervantes.*
Historia de Roma,	*A History of Rome.*
Capítulo tercero,	*Third Chapter.*

Lección XXX. Lesson XXX.

OBJECT PERSONAL PRONOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS, AND WITH VERBS.

Disjunctive.

With Prepositions.

Mí,	*me.*	**Nosotros,** m., **nosotras,** f., *us.*	
Ti,	*thee.*	**Vosotros,** m., **vosotras,** f., **V.** sing., **VV.** pl., *you*	
Él,	*him.*	**Ellos,** m.	*them.*
Ella,	*her.*	**Ellas,** f.	
Ello,	*it.*		
Sí,	*one's self, himself, herself, themselves, itself.*		

Conjunctive.

With Verbs.

Me, *me, to me.*	**Nos,** *us, to us.*
Te, *thee, to thee.*	**Os,** *you, to you.*
Le, la, *you, to you.*	**Les, las,** *you, to you.*
Le, *him, her, to him, to her.*	**Les,** *them, to them.*
Lo, la, le, *it, him, her.*	**Los, las,** *them.*
Se, *one's self, himself, herself, themselves, itself, each other.*	

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Esta carta es para mí.	This letter is for me.
Yo hablo de él y de ella.	I speak of him and of her.
Juan va con nosotros.	John goes with us.
Tengo algo para ellos.	I have something for them.
Yo hablo de ello.	I speak of it.
Cada uno para sí.	Every one for himself.
Pienso *en* él.	I think of him.
Él me ama y yo le amo.	He loves me and I love him.
Yo la veo, pero ella no me ve.	I see her, but she does not see me.
¿ Qué le da V. ? — Nada.	What do you give him (*or* her) ? — Nothing.
¿ Qué les da V. ?	What do you give them ?
Yo les doy dinero.	I give them money.
Yo no quiero verle.	I do not wish to see him.
Él quiere vernos. / Él nos quiere ver.	He wishes to see us.

Viéndolos allí, les hablé.	Seeing them there, I spoke to them.
¿ Quiere V. comprarlo ?	Will you buy it ?
Yo no quiero comprarlo.	I will not buy it.
Démelo.	Give it to me.
¿ Los ha visto V. ?	Have you seen them ?
No los he visto.	I have not seen them.
Él no me ha hablado.	He has not spoken to me.
Ellos no pueden verse.	They cannot see each other.
Yo le veo á V.	I see you.

Conmigo, *with me.*
Contigo, *with thee.*
Consigo, *with one's self* (*himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves*).

Vocabulario.

El sombrerero, *the hatter.*
El tío, *the uncle.*
Los vestidos, *the clothes.*
Aquí tiene V., *here is.*
Comido, *eaten.*
Cortar, 1. *to cut.*
Dado, *given.*
Debo, *I owe.*
Dice, *says.*
Dicho, *said.*
Doy, *I give.*
Enviado, *sent.*
Enviar, 1. *to send.*
¿ Habla V.? sing. } *do you*
¿ Hablan VV.? pl. } *speak?*
Hallado, *found.*
Irse, 3. *to go away.*
¿Necesita V.? *do you need?*
Pide, *asks for.*
Prestar, 1. *to lend.*
Salir, 3. *to go out.*
Sin, *without.*
Sin embargo, *however.*
Visto, *seen.*

Vocabulary.

Exercise 59.

1. ¿ Quién tiene dinero para mí ? 2. Tengo dinero para V., pero no para su hermano. 3. ¿ Para quién es eso ? 4. Para V., si V. quiere. 5. ¿ Va V. al parque con los muchachos (*children*)? 6. Voy, pero sin ellos. 7. ¿Va V. al teatro con su hermana ? 8. Voy con ella. 9. ¿ Es el libro para mí ó para mi hermano ? 10. No es ni para V. ni para él. 11. ¿ De quién habla V. ? 12. De él y de ella. 13. ¿ Con quién hablan VV. ? 14. Con ellas. 15. ¿ Quién era rey de Francia en 1700 ? 16. Era (*it was*) Luis Catorce, hijo de Luis Trece. 17. ¿ Qué le da V. á este hombre ? 18. Le doy algo bueno. 19. ¿ Conoce V. á esta señora ? 20. La conozco muy bien. 21. ¿ Los ve V. ? 22. Los veo, pero no les hablo. 23. ¿ Me ha visto V. ? 24. No he visto à V., pero he visto á su padre. 25. ¿ Cuándo ha escrito V. á su tío ? 26. Le he escrito esta mañana. 27. ¿ Quién le da á V. dinero ? 28. Carlos nos da un duro. 29. ¿ Ha hallado V. sus libros ? 30. Los he hallado en el cuarto de Pedro. 31. ¿ Qué quiere V. enviar á su amigo ? 32. Quiero enviarle el dinero que me pide. 33. ¿ Ha dicho V. algo á este hombre ? 34. No le he dicho nada.

Exercise 60.

1. What does that man tell you? 2. He tells me that he wishes to speak to you. 3. Has the tailor sent me my clothes? 4. He has not sent them yet. 5. Have you seen Mrs. Norris? 6. I saw (have seen) her this morning. 7. Can you lend me twenty dollars? 8. I lent (have lent) you ten dollars yesterday; why do you want twenty dollars now? 9. I owe money to my hatter, and I wish to pay him. 10. I have no money to-day. 11. Will you cut me some bread? 12. Yes, if you will lend me your knife. 13. To whom have you written? 14. I have written to him and to her. 15. Give me something for this poor man. 16. I have given him something already. 17. I have never seen my uncle; I have written several times to him, however. 18. To whom will you give this beautiful book? 19. To him. 20. Have you nothing for her? 21. Yes, I have something for her too. 22. How do you know that? 23. I know it, because he has said so. 24. Have you eaten all the apples? 25. Charles has eaten them. 26. Do you know that gentleman? 27. I don't know him very well. 28. Do you speak German? 29. I speak it a little, but my brother speaks it better than I. 30. Will you go out with me? 31. I cannot go out now, I have something to (*que*) do. 32. Where has your brother bought his handkerchiefs? 33. He has bought them in Paris. 34. Have you learned your lesson? 35. I have learned it, but I don't know it very well.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The object personal pronouns are divided into two classes, the **disjunctive** and the **conjunctive.** The former are used when accompanied by a Spanish preposition:

Á mí, *to me.* Para él, *for him.*

The conjunctive pronouns are used in close connection with a verb, and without a Spanish preposition.

Me ama, *he loves me.* La veo, *I see her.*

2. The conjunctive pronouns are used as either the direct or the indirect objects of a verb. Their form, however, is the same, except for the pronouns of the third person.

Me ama, *he loves me.* Me habla, *he speaks to me.*
La veo, *I see her.* Le doy, *I give to him.*

3. Used with an **infinitive**, an **affirmative imperative**, or a **gerund**, the conjunctive pronouns follow the verb, and are united with it:

Vino ayer á verme,	*He came to see me yesterday.*
Dadme, *give me.*	Hablándoles, *in speaking to them.*

NOTE. — The third person forms of the present subjunctive when used as an affirmative imperative come under the above rule:

Délo, *give it.* Díganlo, *let them say it.*

4. Elsewhere the conjunctive pronouns precede the verb, and are not united to it:

La conozco, *I know her.* Los ve, *he sees them.*

NOTE. — Instances are not uncommon where this usage is disregarded, especially in connection with an *imperfect* or *preterite* form of the verb at the beginning of a phrase:

Sentóse, *he sat down.*	Llevóme, *he took me away.*
Llamábase, *he was named.*	

5. When there are two verbs in the phrase, the pronoun is better put with the verb to which it logically belongs:

Él quiere verme, *He wants to see me.*

NOTE. — There is much divergence in this usage.

6. The conjunctive pronouns are placed before the auxiliary in compound tenses:

Le he visto,	*I have seen him.*
Lo hemos comprado,	*We have bought it.*

7. The pronoun **le** generally accompanies the noun in the third person, and consequently **V.** and **VV.** (See p. 36.)

Yo le doy á V. (*rather than* Yo doy á V.),	*I give you.*
Yo le doy á su hermano,	*I give (to) your brother.*

8. When the pronoun **nos** is joined with the first person plural of a verb, the latter drops the **s**: **Unímonos**, *we unite*, instead of *unímosnos*.

9. The *disjunctive pronouns* may be added to the *conjunctive* to give more emphasis to the sentence:

Á mí me vió, *he saw me.*

It is more especially the case:

1. When the verb governs more than one object:

Le amo á él, á su hermano, y á su hermana, — *I love him, his brother, and his sister.*

2. When the object pronouns are emphasized by the word *self* or *selves:*

Te ví á ti mismo, — *I saw thee.*

10. When the object precedes the verb, the conjunctive pronoun is often redundantly used:

Los más bellos edificios, los he visto en Italia, — *I have seen the finest buildings in Italy.*

Á los Franceses les han costado mucho sangre sus guerras, — *The wars of the French have cost them much blood.*

11. When **mí, ti, sí,** are governed by the preposition **con,** *with,* they form **conmigo,** *with me;* **contigo,** *with thee;* **consigo,** *with himself, herself, itself, them;* and admit no change for either gender or number.

12. The preposition must be repeated before every pronoun:

Este dinero es para ti, para él y para ella, — *This money is for you* (thee), *for him, and for her.*

13. The genitive case takes the place of the nominative in exclamations:

¡ Desdichado de mí ! — *I, unfortunate creature!*

Lección XXXI. Lesson XXXI.

THE RESPECTIVE PLACES OF PRONOUNS.

Me lo (le *or* la), *it to me.*
Te lo, *it to thee.*
Se lo, *it to him* or *her.*
Nos lo, *it to us.*
Os lo,
Se lo (á V.), } *it to you.*
Se lo (á ellos *or* ellas), *it to them.*

Me los (las), *them to me.*
Te los, *them to thee.*
Se los, *them to him* or *her.*
Nos los, *them to us.*
Os los,
Se los (á V.), } *them to you.*
Se los (á ellos *or* ellas), *them to them.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Él me lo da.	He gives it to me.
Ella nos lo ha dicho.	She has said it to us.
¿ Quién se lo da á V. ?	Who gives it to you ?
Ellos me lo dan,	They give it to me.
¿ Quiere V. dármelos ? / ¿ Me los quiere V. dar ?	Will you give them to me ?
Quiero prestárselos á V. / Se los quiero prestar á V.	I will lend them to you.
Yo se los doy á V.	I give them to you.
Yo se lo doy á ellos.	I give it to them.

Imperative affirmative.

Démelos V.	Give them to me.
Déselo V.	Give it to him.
Préstemelos V.	Lend them to me.
Présteselo V.	Lend it to him.
Cómanselos VV.	Eat them.

Imperative negative.

No me lo dé V.	Do not give it to me.
No nos lo dé V.	Do not give it to us.
No me los mande V.	Do not send them to me.
No se los mande V.	Do not send them to him.

Vocabulario.

El correo, *the mail.*
El cortaplumas, *the penknife.*
El crimen, *the crime.*
El jardinero, *the gardener.*
La muñeca, *the doll.*
¿ Ama V. ? *do you love ?*
Amo, *I love.*
Desea, *wishes.*
Dé V., *give.*
Devolver, 2. *to return.*
Dice, *says, tells.*
Diga V., *say, tell.*
Doy, *I give.*
Guillermo, *William.*
Hablado, *spoken.*

Vocabulary.

Hay, *there is.*
Llegado, *arrived.*
Mandar, 1. *to send.*
Mande V., *send.*
Matar, 1. *to kill.*
Mismo, *same.*
Necesita, *needs.*
Perdido, *lost.*
Quieren, *wish.*
Recibido, *received.*
Robar, 1. *to steal, to rob.*
Traído, *brought.*
Traiga V., *bring.*
Ve, *sees.*
Vende, *sells.*

Exercise 61.

1. ¿ Quiere V. enviar esta carta á su hermano ? 2. Yo quiero enviársela. 3. ¿ Cuándo puede V. enviársela ? 4. Se la puedo enviar mañana por la mañana. 5. ¿ Cuándo puede V. escribir á su tío ? 6. Puedo escribirle ahora, si V. lo quiere. 7. ¿ Á quién quiere V. dar este libro ? 8. Quiero dárselo á mi hermanita. 9. ¿ Quién le ha dado esto á V. ? 10. Guillermo me lo ha dado. 11. ¿ Cómo sabe V. que Juan está aquí ? 12. Mi hermano me lo ha dicho. 13. Si V. tiene mi libro, démelo. 14. Yo se lo he dado á su hermano. 15. Los muchachos quieren sus libros, déselos V. 16. Se los he dado ya. 17. Hay un libro en mi cuarto, tráigamelo V. 18. Este joven necesita un cortaplumas ; ¿ tiene V. uno ? 19. El mío está sobre la

mesa; V. puede prestárselo. 20. Este dinero es para ti, para él, y para ella. 21. Robar á un hombre y matarle son dos crímenes. 22. ¿ Á quién ama V.? 23. Le amo á él, á su hermano, y á su hermana. 24. ¿ Puede V. decirme quién es el que ha hecho esto? 25. No puedo decírselo á V.; porque yo mismo no lo sé. 26. No le dé V. nada á ese hombre, ya ha estado aquí esta mañana. 27. No es el mismo. 28. Si V. tiene cartas para mí, mándemelas V. á mi casa. 29. No puedo mandárselas, porque no tengo nadie con quien mandarlas. 30. La señora Castro quiere saber si V. puede darle su dinero hoy. 31. No puedo dárselo hoy, porque todavía no lo he recibido. 32. Hay aquí un hombre que desea verle á V. 33. No tengo tiempo ahora, tengo que escribirle á mi hermana. 34. ¿ Sabe V. si ha llegado el correo? 35. Ha llegado esta mañana.

Exercise 62.

1. Who can give me money for that? 2. Your brother can give you some; I have none. 3. Who gave (has given) that doll to Mary? 4. Her mother has given it to her. 5. Can you lend me some money? 6. I can lend you five dollars; when can you return them to me? 7. I don't know yet when I shall be able (*podré*) to return them. 8. If you cannot tell me, I cannot lend you anything. 9. What will you send to your brother? 10. I will send him two letters which I have received for him. 11. Bring me the book which is on the little table. 12. What has that man said to you? 13. He has not said anything to me; he has spoken to my cousin (*masc.*). 14. Have you told (to) your friend that his father was (*imperf.*) here? 15. I have not seen him yet. 16. Can the gardener send us some flowers? 17. He can send you some roses if you wish (it). 18. If you see your sister tell her that I have received some French books. 19. She knows it already. 20. You do not need your knife now; lend it to me. 21. I don't wish to lend it to you. 22. Can I see Mr. Bravo? 23. You cannot see him now. 24. Does our baker sell you any bread? 25. He does not sell us any. 26. Do you know if the tailor has sent my coat? 27. He has not sent it yet. 28. What have you brought us to-day? 29. I have not brought anything for you, but I have something for the children. 30. Why don't you tell (to) your uncle that you have lost your money? 31. I am afraid to tell it to him. 32. My friend has given me this pencil, and I give it to you.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. When a verb governs two personal pronouns, the indirect object must precede the direct whenever the latter is a pronoun of the third person:

Él me lo da, *he gives it to me.* Dámelo, *give it to me.*

2. If the conjunctive pronouns are in the first and second person, the direct must precede the indirect:

Réndeteme, *Surrender to me.*

3. The pronoun **se** precedes all the other object pronouns, whether these are placed before or after the verb:

Se me escapó, *He escaped from me.*
Déselo V., *Give it to him.*

4. When both pronouns are in the *third person*, the indirect object pronoun, whether singular or plural, is changed into **se**, and we say therefore:

Se lo, *it to him, her,* or *them.* Se los, *them to him, her,* or *them.*

To all these pronouns we may add the disjunctive pronouns to give more expression or precision to the sentence:

Se lo diré á él — á ella — á ellos — á ellas, *I will tell it to him — to her — to them,* masc. — *to them,* fem.

Lección XXXII. Lesson XXXII.

REGULAR VERBS.

Present Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

1st Conjugation.	*2d Conjugation.*	*3d Conjugation.*
Habl-ar, *to speak.*	**Com-er,** *to eat.*	**Recib-ir,** *to receive.*
Habl-ando, *speaking.*	**Com-iendo,** *eating.*	**Recib-iendo,** *receiving.*
Habl-ado, *spoken.*	**Com-ido,** *eaten.*	**Recib-ido,** *received.*

Terminations of the Present Idincative.

Habl-**o,**	*I speak.*	Com-**o,**	*I eat.*	Recib-**o,**	*I receive.*
Habl-**as,**	*thou speakest.*	Com-**es,**	*thou eatest.*	Recib-**es,**	*thou receivest.*
Habl-**a,**	*he speaks.*	Com-**e,**	*he eats.*	Recib-**e,**	*he receives.*
Habl-**amos,**	*we speak.*	Com-**emos,**	*we eat.*	Recib-**imos,**	*we receive.*
Habl-**áis,**	*you speak.*	Com-**éis,**	*you eat.*	Recib-**ís,**	*you receive.*
Habl-**an,**	*they speak.*	Com-**en,**	*they eat.*	Recib-**en,**	*they receive.*

Vocabulario.

El agua, f., *the water.*
El almacén, *the store.*
El baile, *the ball.*
El gusto, *the pleasure.*
El paño, *the cloth.*
Las tijeras, *the scissors.*
Griego, *Greek.*
Latín, *Latin.*
Pues, *as.*

Vocabulary.

Aprender, 2.[1] *to learn.*
Bailar, 1. *to dance.*
Cantar, 1. *to sing.*
Comprender, 2. *to understand.*
Deber, 2. *to owe.*
Estudiar, 1. *to study.*
Gastar, 1. *to spend.*
Mandar, 1. *to send.*
Pagar, 1. *to pay.*
Recibir, 3. *to receive.*
Residir, 3. *to reside.*
Tocar, 1. *to play on.*
Vender, 2. *to sell.*
Viajar, 1. *to travel.*
Vivir, 3. *to live.*

Exercise 63.

1. ¿ Quién ha tomado mi libro ? 2. Yo no sé quién lo ha tomado. 3. ¿ Á qué hora comen VV. ? 4. Comemos á las seis y media los

[1] The number put after each Spanish verb given in this vocabulary, or in the following vocabularies, indicates the conjugation to which that verb belongs.

días de la semana; pero los domingos, comemos á las dos. 5. ¿ Dónde está su hermano ahora? 6. Está viajando en Europa. 7. Necesito zapatos; dónde compra V. los suyos? 8. Compro mis zapatos en Broadway. 9. ¿ Quién vive en aquella casa? 10. El señor Robinson vive allí con su familia. 11. ¿ Toca V. el piano? 12. No toco ningún instrumento, pero canto un poco. 13. ¿ Cantan también sus hermanas? 14. Ellas cantan muy bien. 15. ¿ Con qué cortan VV. este paño? 16. Lo cortamos con las tijeras grandes. 17. ¿ Cuándo recibe V. su dinero? 18. Lo recibo todos los meses, y así pago lo que debo. 19. ¿ Quiere V. beber algo? 20. No, gracias, he bebido ya. 21. ¿ Cuándo llega su padre? 22. No sé, él no ha escrito. 23. ¿ Va V. al baile esta noche? 24. No, señor, yo nunca bailo. 25. ¿ Quiere V. comprar libros franceses? nuestro amigo ha recibido muchísimos. 26. No puedo comprar ninguno ahora, he gastado todo mi dinero el mes pasado. 27. ¿ Habla V. francés? 28. Hablo un poco; pero mi hermano lo habla muy bien, pues ha residido mucho tiempo en París. 29. ¿ Y dónde vive ahora? 30. Él está en Alemania, donde está estudiando el alemán. 31. ¿ En dónde ha aprendido V. el italiano? 32. Yo no hablo italiano, lo comprendo un poco. 33. ¿ Quiere V. venderme su caballo negro? 34. Ya lo he vendido, pero todavía no he recibido el dinero.

Exercise 64.

1. Who lives now in your old house? 2. Nobody lives there now. 3. Does your brother speak Spanish? 4. We all speak (speak all) Spanish in the family. 5. What do you study in your school? 6. I study Latin and Greek. 7. Do you know if your friend has received any money? 8. Yes, he receives his money every Monday. 9. At what time does your father dine? 10. He dines at six o'clock. 11. Have you bought anything for us? 12. Yes, I have bought apples and pears for you. 13. What are you eating? 14. I am eating bread and cheese. 15. And what are you drinking? 16. I am drinking water; I never drink wine or beer. 17. Does your sister sing? 18. She sings and dances very well. 19. Will you cut me a piece of bread? 20. With much pleasure; give me your knife. 21. Here it is, but I don't know if it cuts well. 22. Have you spent all your money? 23. Not yet, I have spent only five dollars. 24. Will you buy a handsome little dog? 25. I don't spend my money in dogs. 26. Do you learn French? 27. We learn French and Italian.

28. Do you speak Italian well? 29. We don't speak it, but we understand it. 30. What do they sell in that store? 31. They sell sugar, coffee, and tea. 32. Do you receive your wine from France? 33. We receive some from France and some from Germany.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The present of the indicative expresses in Spanish, as well as in the other languages, whatever exists, happens, or is being done: **Yo soy,** *I am;* **tu escribes,** *thou writest;* **llueve,** *it is raining;* etc.

2. The present of the indicative is also very frequently used *instead of the future tense* to express a proximate futurity:

Mi amigo viene al instante,	*My friend will come in a moment.*
Partimos mañana,	*We shall leave to-morrow.*

3. The same tense is sometimes used instead of the *past* tense, especially in a narrative, to give it more animation, and to place it vividly, as it were, before the reader:

Oye el general que el enemigo ha echado el puente, y al punto da la señal de la pelea, se arma, sube á caballo y sale al frente de sus tropas á encontrar los Franceses. QUINTANA.	*The general heard* (hears) *that the enemy had* (has) *built the bridge, and he immediately gave* (gives) *orders for the battle, armed* (arms) *himself, mounted* (mounts) *his horse, and sallied* (sallies) *forth to meet the French.*

4. The root or the stem of the verb is obtained by dropping the last two letters which form the endings proper to the conjugation to which the verb belongs, namely: **ar,** for the first conjugation; **er,** for the second conjugation; and **ir,** for the third conjugation.

To this stem are added, to form the *present of the indicative* of the regular verbs, and of many irregular verbs, the following terminations:

For the 1st Conjugation:	**o,**	**as,**	**a,**	**amos,**	**áis,**	**an.**
For the 2d Conjugation:	**o,**	**es,**	**e,**	**emos,**	**éis,**	**en.**
For the 3d Conjugation:	**o,**	**es,**	**e,**	**imos,**	**ís,**	**en.**

5. *The present of the indicative of certain regular verbs.*

In those verbs ending in the

a. Present infinitive in **cer** and **cir**, the *c* is replaced by a **z** before **o** and **a** to preserve the sound of the consonant in the stem:

Vencer, *to conquer.*	**Venzo**, *I conquer.*
Resarcir, *to compensate.*	**Resarza**, *he compensates.*

b. Present infinitive in **ger** and **gir**, change *g* into **j** before **o** and **a** for the same reason as above:

Coger, *to take.*	**Cojo**, *I take.*
Exigir, *to exact.*	**Exijo**, *I exact.*

c. Present infinitive in **quir**, change *qu* into **c** before **o** and **a**:

Delinquir, *to offend.*	**Delinco**, *I offend.*

d. Present infinitive in **guir**, drop *u* before **o** and **a**:

Extinguir, *to extinguish.*	**Extingo**, *I extinguish.*

e. Present infinitive in **uir** (except as above in **guir** and **quir**) insert **y** when **u** is accented:

Atribuir, *to attribute.*	**Atribuyo**, *I attribute.*
	Atribuye, *he attributes.*
Constituir, *to constitute.*	**Constituyo**, *I constitute.*
Destruir, *to destroy.*	**Destruyo**, *I destroy.*
Distribuir, *to distribute.*	**Distribuyo**, *I distribute.*
Huir, *to flee.*	**Huyo**, *I flee.*
Argüir, *to argue.*	**Arguyo**, *I am arguing.*

Lección XXXIII. Lesson XXXIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 1st CONJUGATION.

Present Tense of the Indicative Mood.

1. Calentar, *to warm.*	**2. Empezar**, *to begin.*
Caliento, *I warm.*	Empiezo, *I begin.*
Calientas, *thou warmest.*	Empiezas, *thou beginnest.*
Calienta, *he warms.*	Empieza, *he begins.*
Calentamos, *we warm.*	Empezamos, *we begin.*
Calentáis, *you warm.*	Empezáis, *you begin.*
Calientan, *they warm.*	Empiezan, *they begin.*

Principal Irregular Verbs of the 1*st conjugation which take an* **i** *before the* **e** *and are conjugated like* **calentar** *and* **empezar.**

Apretar, *to squeeze.*
Arrendar, *to hire.*
Asentar, *to place.*
Atravesar, *to cross.*
Cegar, *to blind.*
Cerrar, *to shut.*
Comenzar, *to commence.*
Concertar, *to agree.*
Confesar, *to confess.*
Despertar, *to awake.*
Desterrar, *to banish.*
Empedrar, *to pave.*
Encerrar, *to lock up.*
Encomendar, *to recommend.*
Enmendar, *to correct.*
Enterrar, *to bury.*
Escarmentar, *to take warning.*
Fregar, *to rub.*
Gobernar, *to govern.*
Helar, *to freeze.*
Herrar, *to shoe.*
Mentar, *to mention.*
Negar, *to deny.*
Nevar, *to snow.*
Pensar, *to think.*
Quebrar, *to break.*
Recomendar, *to recommend.*
Reventar, *to burst.*
Segar, *to cut down.*
Sembrar, *to sow.*
Sentar, *to set.*
Temblar, *to tremble.*
Tentar, *to tempt.*
Tropezar, *to stumble.*

3. Almorzar, *to breakfast.*
Almuerzo, *I breakfast.*
Almuerzas, *thou breakfastest.*
Almuerza, *he breakfasts.*
Almorzamos, *we breakfast.*
Almorzáis, *you breakfast.*
Almuerzan, *they breakfast.*

4. Contar, *to count.*
Cuento, *I count.*
Cuentas, *thou countest.*
Cuenta, *he counts.*
Contamos, *we count.*
Contáis, *you count.*
Cuentan, *they count.*

Principal Irregular Verbs of the 1*st conjugation which change the* **o** *into* **ue** *and are conjugated like* **almorzar** *and* **contar.**

Acordar, *to remind.*
Amolar, *to grind.*
Apostar, *to bet.*
Aprobar, *to approve.*
Avergonzar, *to shame.*
Consolar, *to console.*
Desollar, *to skin.*
Encontrar, *to meet.*
Forzar, *to force.*
Hollar, *to tread.*
Mostrar, *to show.*
Poblar, *to people.*
Probar, *to prove.*
Renovar, *to renew.*
Rodar, *to roll.*
Soldar, *to solder.*
Soltar, *to let loose.*
Sonar, *to sound.*
Soñar, *to dream.*
Tostar, *to toast.*
Trocar, *to barter.*
Tronar, *to thunder.*
Volar, *to fly.*
Volcar, *to overturn.*

5. Dar, *to give.*
Doy, *I give.*
Das, *thou givest.*
Da, *he gives.*
Damos, *we give.*
Dais, *you give.*
Dan, *they give.*

6. Jugar, *to play.*
Juego, *I play.*
Juegas, *thou playest.*
Juega, *he plays.*
Jugamos, *we play.*
Jugáis, *you play.*
Juegan, *they play.*

Vocabulario.

El aire, *the air.*
El estado, *the state.*
El labrador, *the farmer.*
El trabajo, *the work.*
La cocinera, *the cook.*
La función, *the ceremony.*
La ignorancia, *the ignorance.*
Después, *afterwards.*
Imposible, *impossible.*
Temprano, *early.*
Añadir, 3. *to add.*
Apostar, 1. *to bet.*
Aprobar, 1. *to approve.*
Calentar, 1. *to warm.*
Cerrar, 1. *to shut.*
Confesar, 1. *to confess.*
Consolar, 1. *to console.*

Vocabulary.

Creer, 2. *to believe.*
Encerrar, 1. *to lock up.*
Encontrar, 1. *to meet.*
Enterrar, 1. *to bury.*
Helar, 1. *to freeze.*
Ir, 3. *to go.*
Mostrar, 1. *to show.*
Pasar, 1. *to pass.*
Pensar, 1. *to think.*
Poblar, 1. *to people.*
Probar, 1, *to prove.*
Recomendar, 1. *to recommend.*
Sembrar, 1. *to sow.*
Soñar, 1. *to dream.*
Temblar, 1. *to tremble.*
Volar, 1. *to fly.*

Exercise 65.

1. ¿ Qué piensa V. de eso ? 2. No sé qué pensar. 3. ¿ Á qué hora almuerzan VV. ? 4. Almorzamos á las siete de la mañana. 5. ¿ Dónde están los muchachos ? 6. Están jugando en el jardín. 7. ¿ Cuánto dinero da V. á este hombre ? 8. Yo le doy cien duros. 9. ¿ Á qué hora empieza la función ? 10. Creo que empieza muy temprano. 11. ¿ Porqué tiembla ese muchacho ? 12. Porque tiene miedo. 13. El príncipe gobierna sus estados con moderación y justicia. 14. ¿ Cuánto quiere V. apostar que puedo hacer eso ? 15. Yo nunca apuesto dinero. 16. ¿ Cómo pasan VV. el tiempo ? 17. Almorzamos temprano, después estudiamos; á la una salimos; á las seis comemos, y jugamos hasta las diez. 18. Confieso que no sé nada de eso. 19. ¿ Cómo piensan VV. hacer eso ? 20. Pensamos hacerlo así. 21. Los pájaros pueblan los aires. 22. Apuesto que V. no encuentra

la casa de mi hermano y que yo encuentro la de su hermano de V. 23. Yo no apruebo lo que V. ha hecho. 24. Esos hombres muestran mucha ignorancia. 25. Esta mujer encierra todo el dinero que tiene. 26. ¿ Tiene V. algo que añadir ? 27. Sí, señor, le recomiendo á V. mis hermanos y hermanas. 28. ¿ Ha cerrado V. las puertas ? 29. La criada las cierra todas las noches. 30. Está helando.

Exercise 66.

1. I meet your brother every day in our street. 2. Where does your brother breakfast ? 3. He never breakfasts (breakfasts never) with us. 4. What do you give to the children ? 5. I give them apples and cakes. 6. Why do you not commence your work now ? 7. I cannot commence now; I have some letters to write. 8. The general has been buried this morning. 9. Do you think that your brother will be here to-night ? 10. I don't think so. 11. I recommend you to go to-morrow to the house of that lady. 12. Do you approve the conduct of your brother ? 13. I do not approve of it ; it is impossible to approve it. 14. Do you dream sometimes ? 15. I never dream. 16. What does this prove ? 17. It does not prove anything. 18. You show your ignorance when you speak so. 19. The birds fly in the air. 20. Who warms my coffee ? 21. The cook warms it. 22. He bets that I cannot do this, and I bet that I can. 23. We give all our money to that poor man. 24. That poor woman cannot console herself (*se*). 25. Will you play with me ? 26. I never play when I have to study. 27. The farmers sow their fields in this season. 28. Why do you tremble ? 29. I do not tremble; you tremble yourself. 30. It was freezing.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. There are in Spanish verbs several kinds of irregularities; but as they are limited in most cases to certain moods, tenses, and persons, and almost always occur in the same places, they have a certain *regularity* in their *irregularity*, which facilitates the task of the student.

It has been shown by the conjugation given above that the irregularity in the present indicative occurs in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person singular, and the 3d person plural. It will be shown hereafter in other tenses that the irregularities of verbs of the

1st conjugation are the same throughout the whole conjugation excepting four verbs which will be mentioned in their appropriate place.

2. A large number of the Spanish verbs are irregular only when the vowel of the stem is accented. Consequently when this change is mastered, they present no further difficulty.

Verbs like **calentar** and **empezar,** whose stem vowel is **e,** insert **i** before the *e* in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular, and in the 3d person plural of the indicative, while verbs like **almorzar** and **contar,** whose stem vowel is **o,** replace the *o* by **ue** in the same persons.

Jugar and **dar** stand alone, no other verbs being conjugated like them, unless we except **estar,** *to be,* which has in the present indicative the same terminations as **dar.**

3. The gerund and the past participle of the irregular verbs of the 1st conjugation are formed regularly, as:

Calent-**ar,**	*to warm;*	calent-**ando,**	*warming;*	calent-**ado,**	*warmed.*
Empez-**ar,**	*to begin;*	empez-**ando,**	*beginning;*	empez-**ado,**	*begun.*
Almorz-**ar,**	*to breakfast;*	almorz-**ando,**	*breakfasting;*	almorz-**ado,**	*breakfasted.*
Cont-**ar,**	*to count;*	cont-**ando,**	*counting;*	cont-**ado,**	*counted.*
D-**ar,**	*to give;*	d-**ando,**	*giving;*	d-**ado,**	*given.*
Jug-**ar,**	*to play;*	jug-**ando,**	*playing;*	jug-**ado,**	*played.*

4. The verb **errar,** *to err,* may be added to the list of the irregular verbs already given.

This verb inserts an initial **y** in the same tenses and persons where **calentar,** *to warm,* inserts an **i**:

Yerro,	*I err.*	**err ar,** *to err.*
Yerras,	*thou errest.*	
Yerra,	*he errs.*	**err ando,** *erring.*
Erramos,	*we err.*	
Erráis,	*you err.*	**err ado,** *erred.*
Yerran,	*they err.*	

5. Since the present subjunctive is formed from the first person of the present indicative, the above changes will be found there as well. The same is true of the imperative, and it is only in these three tenses that the stem vowel receives the accent.

Lección XXXIV. Lesson XXXIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 2d CONJUGATION.

1. Conocer { *to know.* / *to be acquainted with.*

Conozco, *I know.*
Conoces, *thou knowest.*
Conoce, *he knows.*
Conocemos, *we know.*
Conocéis, *you know.*
Conocen, *they know.*

2. Nacer, *to be born.*

Nazco, *I am born.*
Naces, *thou art born.*
Nace, *he is born.*
Nacemos, *we are born.*
Nacéis, *you are born.*
Nacen, *they are born.*

3. Perder, *to lose.*

Pierdo, *I lose.*
Pierdes, *thou losest.*
Pierde, *he loses.*
Perdemos, *we lose.*
Perdéis, *you lose.*
Pierden, *they lose.*

4. Encender, *to light.*

Enciendo, *I light.*
Enciendes, *thou lightest.*
Enciende, *he lights.*
Encendemos, *we light.*
Encendéis, *you light.*
Encienden, *they light.*

5. Hacer, *to make, to do;* **haciendo,** *making, doing;* **hecho,** *made, done.*
6. Caer, *to fall;* **cayendo,** *falling;* **caído,** *fallen.*

Hago, *I make* or *do.*
Haces, *thou makest* or *doest.*
Hace, *he makes* or *does.*
Hacemos, *we make* or *do.*
Hacéis, *you make* or *do.*
Hacen, *they make* or *do.*

Caigo, *I fall.*
Caes, *thou fallest.*
Cae, *he falls.*
Caemos, *we fall.*
Caéis, *you fall.*
Caen, *they fall.*

7. Poner, *to put;* **poniendo,** *putting;* **puesto,** *put.*
8. Querer, *to wish, to be willing;* **queriendo,** *wishing;* **querido,** *wished.*

Pongo, *I put.*
Pones, *thou puttest.*
Pone, *he puts.*
Ponemos, *we put.*
Ponéis, *you put.*
Ponen, *they put.*

Quiero, *I wish, I am willing.*
Quieres, *thou wishest, etc.*
Quiere, *he wishes, etc.*
Queremos, *we wish, etc.*
Queréis, *you wish, etc.*
Quieren, *they wish, etc.*

9. **Saber**, *to know, to know how to ;* **sabiendo**, *knowing ;* **sabido**, *known.*
10. **Poder**, *to be able ;* **pudiendo**, *being able ;* **podido**, *been able.*

Sé, *I know.*	Puedo, *I am able, I can.*
Sabes, *thou knowest.*	Puedes, *thou art able, etc.*
Sabe, *he knows.*	Puede, *he is able, etc.*
Sabemos, *we know.*	Podemos, *we are able, etc.*
Sabéis, *you know.*	Podéis, *you are able, etc.*
Saben, *they know.*	Pueden, *they are able, etc.*

11. **Cocer**, *to boil ;* **cociendo**, *boiling ;* **cocido**, *boiled.*
12. **Traer**, *to bring ;* **trayendo**, *bringing ;* **traído**, *brought.*

Cuezo, *I boil.*	Traigo, *I bring.*
Cueces, *thou boilest.*	Traes, *thou bringest.*
Cuece, *he boils.*	Trae, *he brings.*
Cocemos, *we boil.*	Traemos, *we bring.*
Cocéis, *you boil.*	Traéis, *you bring.*
Cuecen, *they boil.*	Traen, *they bring.*

13. **Caber**, *to be contained ;* **cabiendo**, *being contained ;* **cabido**, *been contained.*
14. **Valer**, *to be worth ;* **valiendo**, *being worth ;* **valido**, *been worth.*

Quepo, *I am contained.*	Valgo, *I am worth.*
Cabes, *thou art contained.*	Vales, *thou art worth.*
Cabe, *he is contained.*	Vale, *he is worth.*
Cabemos, *we are contained.*	Valemos, *we are worth.*
Cabéis, *you are contained.*	Valéis, *you are worth.*
Caben, *they are contained.*	Valen, *they are worth.*

15. **Ver**, *to see ;* **viendo**, *seeing ;* **visto**, *seen.*
16. **Absolver**, *to absolve ;* **absolviendo**, *absolving ;* **absuelto**, *absolved.*

Veo, *I see.*	Absuelvo, *I absolve.*
Ves, *thou seest.*	Absuelves, *thou absolvest.*
Ve, *he sees.*	Absuelve, *he absolves.*
Vemos, *we see.*	Absolvemos, *we absolve.*
Veis, *you see.*	Absolvéis, *you absolve.*
Ven, *they see.*	Absuelven, *they absolve.*

17. **Volver**, *to return ;* **volviendo**, *returning ;* **vuelto**, *returned.*
18. **Morder**, *to bite ;* **mordiendo**, *biting ;* **mordido**, *bitten.*

Vuelvo, *I return.*	Muerdo, *I bite.*
Vuelves, *thou returnest.*	Muerdes, *thou bitest.*
Vuelve, *he returns.*	Muerde, *he bites.*
Volvemos, *we return.*	Mordemos, *we bite.*
Volvéis, *you return.*	Mordéis, *you bite.*
Vuelven, *they return.*	Muerden, *they bite.*

19. Oler, *to smell;* **oliendo**, *smelling;* **olido**, *smell.*

Huelo, *I smell.*
Hueles, *thou smellest.*
Huele, *he smells.*
Olemos, *we smell.*
Oléis, *you smell.*
Huelen, *they smell.*

Vocabulario.

El baúl, *the trunk.*
El diente, *the tooth.*
El gas, *the gas.*
El negocio, *the business.*
El olor, *the smell.*
El pueblo, *the town.*
El saco, *the bag.*
La estrella, *the star.*
La luna, *the moon.*
La nuez, *the nut.*
La ropa, *the clothes.*
La tarde, *the afternoon.*
Algunas veces, *sometimes.*
Á lo menos, *at least.*
Desde, *since.*
Durante, *during.*

Vocabulary.

Generalmente, *generally.*
Mañana, *to-morrow.*
Pasado mañana, *the day after to-morrow.*
Ventajoso, *profitable.*
Devolver, 2. *to return (give back).*
Disponer, 2. *to dispose.*
Encender, 2. *to light.*
Llover, 2. *to rain.*
Morder, 2. *to bite.*
Perder, 2, *to lose.*
Proponer, 2. *to propose.*
Traer, 2. *to bring.*
Valer, 2. *to be worth.*
Ver, 2. *to see.*

Exercise 67.

1. ¿ Sabe V. si el perro muerde ? 2. No puede morder, es demasiado viejo, y no tiene dientes. 3. ¿ Cuánto puede valer este reloj ? 4. Si es de oro, vale á lo menos cien duros. 5. ¿ Ve V. á menudo á la señora Marti ? 6. La veo todas las semanas. 7. ¿ Cómo hace V. esto ? 8. Lo hago así. 9. ¿ Pueden VV. hacer esto tan bien como nosotros ? 10. Podemos hacerlo mejor. 11. ¿ Qué quieren VV. ? 12. Queremos dinero para ir al teatro. 13. V. sabe muy bien que el teatro está cerrado. 14. ¿ Qué pone V. en el baúl ? 15. Pongo mi ropa en el baúl grande, y mis libros en el pequeño. 16. ¿ Cuándo piensa V. volver del campo ? 17. Vuelvo mañana ó pasado mañana. 18. ¿ Conoce V. á este caballero ? 19. Le conozco desde muchos años. 20. ¡ Qué mal olor hay en este cuarto! 21. Yo no huelo nada. 22. ¿ Ha perdido V. algo ? 23. Nunca pierdo nada. 24. ¿ Qué me propone V. ? 25. Le propongo algo de muy ventajoso para V. 26. ¿ Sabe V. lo que quieren estos muchachos ? 27. Yo no sé lo que quieren. 28. ¿ Qué trae V. en aquel saco ? 29. Traigo manzanas y

nueces. 30. Durante la noche vemos la luna y las estrellas. 31. ¿ Qué hacen VV. los domingos por la tarde ? 32. Salimos generalmente. 33. ¿ Á quién conocen VV. en el pueblo ? 34. Conocemos á casi todo el mundo. 35. Mi amigo no sale todavía.

Exercise 68.

1. Will you do this for me ? 2. I don't know how to do it, I have never learned. 3. Does the dog bite ? 4. He barks, but he never bites. 5. Is that book worth anything ? 6. It is not worth anything. 7. Whom do you know here ? 8. I do not know anybody. 9. Can you do what I do ? 10. I cannot do it. 11. At what time do you light the gas ? 12. I light it at six o'clock. 13. Why do you not return the money to that man ? 14. Because I have no money now. 15. Does it rain ? 16. It rains a little. 17. Our brothers return to-morrow from the city. 18. Can your brother go with me ? 19. He cannot go now, but I can go with you if you wish. 20. Where do you put your books ? 21. I put them in the small room. 22. What do you wish here ? 23. I wish to see your father. Where is he ? 24. I don't know where he is. 25. Can you bring me my books to-morrow ? 26. I bring them now in my bag. 27. Do you see Mr. Brown very often ? 28. I see him every Thursday. 29. Do you know this lady ? 30. Yes, I see her sometimes at her house. 31. Of how much money can you dispose for this business ? 32. I can dispose of three hundred dollars, but not of one cent more. 33. Edward will not come with us because it rains. 34. Do you know that I wish to be obeyed ? 35. I don't obey any one here.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Perder, *to lose*, and the following verbs whose stem vowel is *e* insert an **i** before the **e** in the three persons singular and also in the 3d person plural of the present of the indicative.

Ascender, *to ascend.*
Atender, *to mind.*
Cerner, *to sift.*
Condescender, *to condescend.*
Contender, *to contend.*
Defender, *to defend.*
Desatender, *to disregard.*
Descender, *to descend.*
Encender, *to light.*
Entender, *to understand.*
Extender, *to spread.*
Heder, *to smell badly.*
Hender, *to split.*
Reverter, *to overflow.*
Tender, *to stretch.*
Trascender, *to transcend.*
Verter, *to spill.*
And their compounds.

NOTE. — This irregularity in the accented stem vowel should be compared to that in the first conjugation (p. 187, § 2) and occurs in the same place.

2. Volver, *to return,* and the following verbs, change the *o* of the radical into **ue** in the three persons singular, and also in the 3d person plural of the present of the indicative, like **almorzar,** *to breakfast,* of the 1st conjugation:

Absolver, *to absolve.*	Doler, *to ache.*	Remorder, *to sting.*
Conmover, *to affect.*	Envolver, *to involve.*	Resolver, *to resolve.*
Demoler, *to demolish.*	Llover, *to rain.*	Revolver, *to revolve.*
Desenvolver, *to unfold.*	Moler, *to grind.*	Soler, *to be wont.*
Devolver, *to give back.*	Morder, *to bite.*	Solver, *to loose.*
Disolver, *to dissolve.*	Mover, *to move.*	Torcer, *to twist.*

And other of their compounds.

NOTE. — Compare note to § 1.

3. Verbs ending in **acer, ecer,** and **ocer** like **nacer,** *to be born,* **empobrecer,** *to grow poor,* **conocer,** *to know,* insert a **z** before the **c** in the 1st person singular of the present of the indicative:

Nazco, *I am born;* empobrezco, *I grow poor;* conozco, *I know.*

4. The verbs **mecer,** *to stir, to rock* (which is a regular verb), **empecer,** *to hurt,* **cocer,** *to boil* (and compounds), **yacer,** *to lie,* and **hacer,** *to make, to do,* and its compounds, as **deshacer,** *to undo,* **rehacer,** *to do over,* **contrahacer,** *to imitate,* etc., form an exception to the above rule:

Mezo, *I stir;* hago, *I make, I do.*

5. Cocer, *to boil,* **recocer,** *to boil again,* and **escocer,** *to smart,* differ from the verbs given above ending in *acer, ecer,* and *ocer;* and instead of inserting a *z* before the *c* like *conocer,* they change the accented *o* into **ue** like **volver,** *to return,* and replace the *c* by a **z**:

Cuezo, *I boil.* Escuezo, *I smart.*

6. The following verbs have the same irregularity as **poner,** *to put:*

Anteponer, *to place before.*	Deponer, *to depose.*
Componer, *to repair.*	Descomponer, *to discompose.*

Disponer, *to dispose.*	**Proponer**, *to propose.*
Exponer, *to expose.*	**Reponer**, *to replace.*
Imponer, *to impose.*	**Sobreponer**, *to place over.*
Indisponer, *to indispose.*	**Suponer**, *to suppose.*
Oponer, *to oppose.*	**Trasponer**, *to transpose.*
Posponer, *to postpone.*	

7. The following verbs are conjugated like **traer**, *to bring:*

Abstraer, *to abstract.*	**Distraer**, *to distract.*	**Substraer**, } *to subtract.*
Atraer, *to attract.*	**Estraer**, *to extract.*	**Sustraer**, }
Contraer, *to contract.*	**Retraer**, *to retract.*	
Detraer, *to detract.*	**Retrotraer**, *to refer to former times.*	

8. Equivaler, *to be equal to*, is conjugated like **valer**, *to be worth.*

9. The following verbs are conjugated like **tener**, *to have*, which is also an irregular verb:

Contener, *to contain.*	**Mantener**, *to maintain.*	**Sostener**, *to sustain.*
Detener, *to detain.*	**Obtener**, *to obtain.*	
Entretener, *to entertain.*	**Retener**, *to retain.*	

10. Caber corresponds also to the English verb *to contain, to hold;* but in order to use *caber* in the sense of these verbs, the English accusative must become the Spanish nominative, while the preposition **en** must also be used:

En este teatro cabe más gente que en aquél,	*This theatre contains more people than that one.*

Lección XXXV. Lesson XXXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 3d CONJUGATION.

Present of the Indicative.

1. **Conducir**, *to conduct;* **conduciendo**, *conducting;* **conducido**, *conducted.*
2. **Lucir**, *to shine;* **luciendo**, *shining;* **lucido**, *shone.*

Conduzco, *I conduct.*	**Luzco**, *I shine.*
Conduces, *thou conductest.*	**Luces**, *thou shinest.*
Conduce, *he conducts.*	**Luce**, *he shines.*
Conducimos, *we conduct.*	**Lucimos**, *we shine.*
Conducís, *you conduct.*	**Lucís**, *you shine.*
Conducen, *they conduct.*	**Lucen**, *they shine.*

3. **Sentir**, *to feel;*	**sintiendo**, *feeling;*	**sentido**, *felt.*
4. **Divertir**, *to amuse;*	**divertiendo**, *amusing;*	**divertido**, *amused.*

Siento, *I feel.*	Divierto, *I amuse.*
Sientes, *thou feelest.*	Diviertes, *thou amusest.*
Siente, *he feels.*	Divierte, *he amuses.*
Sentimos, *we feel.*	Divertimos, *we amuse.*
Sentís, *you feel.*	Divertís, *you amuse.*
Sienten, *they feel.*	Divierten, *they amuse.*

5. **Dormir**, *to sleep;*	**durmiendo**, *sleeping;*	**dormido**, *slept.*
6. **Morir**, *to die;*	**muriendo**, *dying;*	**muerto**, *dead.*

Duermo, *I sleep.*	Muero, *I die.*
Duermes, *thou sleepest.*	Mueres, *thou diest.*
Duerme, *he sleeps.*	Muere, *he dies.*
Dormimos, *we sleep.*	Morimos, *we die.*
Dormís, *you sleep.*	Morís, *you die.*
Duermen, *they sleep.*	Mueren, *they die.*

7. **Pedir**, *to ask for;*	**pidiendo**, *asking for;*	**pedido**, *asked for.*
8. **Medir**, *to measure;*	**midiendo**, *measuring;*	**medido**, *measured.*

Pido, *I ask for.*	Mido, *I measure.*
Pides, *thou askest for.*	Mides, *thou measurest.*
Pide, *he asks for.*	Mide, *he measures.*
Pedimos, *we ask for.*	Medimos, *we measure.*
Pedís, *you ask for.*	Medís, *you measure.*
Piden, *they ask for.*	Miden, *they measure.*

9. **Venir**, *to come;*	**viniendo**, *coming;*	**venido**, *come.*
10. **Decir**, *to say, to tell;*	**diciendo**, *saying;*	**dicho**, *said.*

Vengo, *I come.*	Digo, *I say.*
Vienes, *thou comest.*	Dices, *thou sayest.*
Viene, *he comes.*	Dice, *he says.*
Venimos, *we come.*	Decimos, *we say.*
Venís, *you come.*	Decís, *you say.*
Vienen, *they come.*	Dicen, *they say.*

11. **Salir**, *to go out;*	**saliendo**, *going out;*	**salido**, *gone out.*
12. **Ir**, *to go;*	**yendo**, *going;*	**ido**, *gone.*

Salgo, *I go out.*	**Voy**, *I go.*
Sales, *thou goest out.*	**Vas**, *thou goest.*
Sale, *he goes out.*	**Va**, *he goes.*
Salimos, *we go out.*	**Vamos**, *we go.*
Salís, *you go out.*	**Vais**, *you go.*
Salen, *they go out.*	**Van**, *they go.*

13. Oír, *to hear;* **oyendo,** *hearing;* **oído,** *heard.*

Oigo, *I hear.*
Oyes, *thou hearest.*
Oye, *he hears.*
Oímos, *we hear.*
Oís, *you hear.*
Oyen, *they hear.*

Vocabulario.

El canto, *the singing.*
El cuento, *the tale.*
El estudiante, *the student.*
La aventura, *the adventure.*
Indiferente, *indifferent.*
Por cierto, *certainly.*
Telémaco, *Telemachus.*
Aborrecer, 2. *to hate.*
Bendecir, 3. *to bless.*
Cantar, 1. *to sing.*
Complacer, 2. *to please.*
Conducir, 3. *to conduct, to take.*
Desde que, *since.*
Divertir, 3. *to amuse.*

Vocabulary.

Dormir, 3. *to sleep.*
Esperar, 1. *to wait, to hope.*
Ganar, 1. *to earn.*
Ir, 3. *to go.*
Mantener, 2. *to support.*
Medir, 3. *to measure.*
Morir, 3. *to die.*
Oír, 3. *to hear.*
Pedir, 3. *to ask for.*
Podrir, 3. *to rot.*
Provenir, 3. *to come from (to originate).*
Repetir, 3. *to repeat.*
Traducir, 3. *to translate.*

Exercise 69.

1. ¿ Á qué hora sale V. todos los días? 2. Salgo generalmente á las diez ó á las diez y media. 3. ¿ Qué dice este hombre? 4. No sé lo que dice, habla alemán. 5. ¿ Qué libro traducen VV. del francés al español? 6. Traducimos las aventuras de Telémaco. 7. ¿ Va V. al concierto esta noche? 8. No, señor, voy al teatro. 9. ¿ Dónde está Juan? 10. Todavía está durmiendo. 11. ¿ Oye V. lo que digo? 12. Oigo muy bien, pero no puedo hacer lo que V. quiere, porque tengo que salir ahora mismo (*this very minute*). 13. ¿ Á dónde van estos muchachos? 14. Van á la escuela. 15. ¿ Quiere V. ir por pan? 16. Sí, señor, quiero ir. 17. Los estudiantes van cantando por las calles. 18. Todas las manzanas que V. ha comprado, están podridas. 19. ¿ Cómo puede V. decir tal cosa? 20. Lo digo porque lo sé. 21. ¿ Á dónde conduce V. á este muchacho? 22. Le conduzco á casa de su tío. 23. ¿ Cuánto pide V. por este caballo? 24. No pido sino lo que vale. 25. El viejo Andrés nos divierte todas las noches con sus cuentos. 26. Dice el médico que mueren muchos niños en este mes. 27. ¿ Duerme V.? 28. No, señor, no duermo, oigo todo lo que V. dice. 29. ¿ Ha medido V. el paño? 30. Voy á medirlo ahora. 31. ¿ Porqué aborrece V. á este hombre? 32. Yo no le aborrezco, él me es indiferente. 33. ¿ Porqué no me obedece V.? 34. Yo le

obedezco á V., y hago todo lo que puedo para complacerle á V. 35. Este pobre hombre no puede mantener á su familia con lo que gana. 36. Yo mantengo á mis hermanitas desde que mi padre ha muerto.

Exercise 70.

1. How do you sleep now? 2. I sleep much better, thank you. 3. What does your mother tell your brother? 4. She tells him that he cannot go out without a hat. 5. Do you hear the music from here? 6. We hear the music and the singing from our room. 7. What do you wish to-day? 8. I have come to (*á*) see if you need anything. 9. Yes; I need coffee, sugar, and tea. 10. Do you (*pl.*) go to (the) church every Sunday? 11. We go twice on (*los*) Sundays, and also sometimes in the week. 12. Do you go out to-day? 13. I never go out when it rains. 14. Why don't you measure the cloth? 15. I have measured it already. 16. Who takes your little sister to school? 17. I take her sometimes, but she generally goes (goes generally) alone. 18. Why don't you ask that man for your money? 19. He says that he has no money now, and that I must wait till next month. 20. Will you go for some bread for me? 21. I cannot go now; will you wait a few minutes? 22. Certainly, you may go in a half hour if you wish. 23. Are the children still sleeping? 24. Yes, they are all sleeping yet. 25. Why don't you tell (to) your tailor that you cannot pay him now? 26. Who says that I cannot pay him? I can, but I will not, because he owes money to my brother and will not pay him. 27. Can you translate this? 28. I don't translate very well yet. 29. Will you repeat what he has said? 30. Why don't you repeat it yourself? 31. I don't understand German. 32. Where does it come from? 33. It comes from the old house. 34. The father blesses his children. 35. I am going this evening to the city, but I don't know yet if my friends can go with me.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The following verbs conjugated like **sentir,** *to feel,* and **divertir,** *to amuse,* whose stem vowel is *e,* have in the present of the indicative the same irregularities as the verb **empezar** (p. 187, § **2**), *to begin,* of the 1st conjugation, that is, they insert an **i** before the *e* in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular, and in the 3d person plural of said tense:

Adherir, *to adhere.*	Desmentir, *to belie.*	**Mentir,** *to lie.*
Adquirir, *to acquire.*	Diferir, *to differ.*	Pervertir, *to pervert.*
Advertir, *to notice.*	Digerir, *to digest.*	Preferir, *to prefer.*
Arrepentirse (reflex.) *to repent.*	Disentir, *to dissent.*	Presentir, *to foresee.*
Asentir, *to consent.*	Divertir, *to amuse.*	Proferir, *to utter.*
Conferir, *to confer.*	**Herir,** *to wound.*	Referir, *to refer.*
Consentir, *to consent.*	Hervir, *to boil.*	Requerir, *to notify.*
Convertir, *to convert.*	Inferir, *to infer.*	Sugerir, *to suggest.*
Deferir, *to defer.*	Ingerir, *to interfere.*	Trasferir, *to move.*

OBSERVATION. — The same verbs change the *e* into an **i** in the Present Participle, as ; sintiendo, *feeling ;* advirtiendo, *noticing ;* etc.

2. Pedir, *to ask for,* and **medir,** *to measure,* and the following verbs whose stem vowel is *e,* change the ***e*** into **i** in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular, the 3d person plural, and the gerund :

Ceñir, *to gird.*	Elegir, *to elect.*	**Regir,** *to rule.*
Colegir, *to collect.*	Embestir, *to attack.*	Reír, *to laugh.*
Competir, *to compete.*	Envestir, *to invest.*	Rendir, *to surrender.*
Concebir, *to conceive.*	Expedir, *to forward.*	Reñir, *to fight, to scold.*
Conseguir, *to obtain.*	Freír, *to fry.*	Repetir, *to repeat.*
Constreñir, *to force.*	Gemir, *to groan.*	Seguir, *to follow.*
Corregir, *to correct.*	Impedir, *to prevent.*	Servir, *to serve.*
Derretir, *to melt.*	Investir, *to invest.*	Sonreír, *to smile.*
Deservir, *to harm.*	Perseguir, *to pursue.*	Teñir, *to dye.*
Despedir, *to dismiss.*	Proseguir, *to continue.*	Vestir, *to dress.*
Desteñir, *to discolor.*		

3. Dormir, *to sleep,* and **morir,** *to die,* change the ***o*** of the stem into **ue** in the same cases as the verb **almorzar** (p. 187 § **2**) of the 1st conjugation.

The *o* is also changed into a **u** in the gerund :

Durmiendo, *sleeping.* Muriendo, *dying.*

4. Verbs ending in **ucir,** like **conducir,** *to conduct, to take ;* **lucir,** *to shine,* etc., have in the present of the indicative the same irregularity as the verbs of the 2d conjugation ending in **acer, ecer,** and **ocer** (p. 192 § **3**), that is, they insert a **z** before the ***c*** in the first person singular of said tense :

Conduzco, *I conduct.* Luzco, *I shine.*

5. The following verbs are conjugated like **venir,** *to come,* of which they are compounds:

Avenir, *to happen.*	Provenir, *to originate.*
Contravenir, *to transgress.*	Reconvenir, *to charge.*
Convenir, *to agree.*	Revenirse, *to return.*
Desconvenir, *to disagree.*	Sobrevenir, *to come between.*
Desavenir, *to disagree.*	Subvenir, *to aid.*
Intervenir, *to interfere.*	Supervenir, *to supervene.*
Prevenir, *to arrange beforehand.*	

OBSERVATION. — **Venir por** means *to come for, to fetch.*

6. The following compounds of **decir** have the same irregularities in the present indicative as has the simple verb:

Antedecir, *to predict.*	Interdecir, *to interdict.*
Bendecir, *to bless.*	Maldecir, *to curse.*
Contradecir, *to contradict.*	Predecir, *to foretell.*
Desdecir, *to retract.*	Rebendecir, *to bless again.*
Entredecir, *to prohibit.*	

7. Although the meaning of **ir** is *to go,* this verb accompanied by an adverb corresponds also to the verb **andar,** *to walk:*

Voy despacio, *I walk slowly.* Voy deprisa, *I walk quickly.*

OBSERVATION. — When accompanied by the preposition **por** the verb **ir** is used instead of **buscar,** *to fetch:*

Voy por pan, *I go for bread, I fetch bread.*

8. The verb **asir,** *to seize,* makes **asgo** in the 1st person singular of the present of the indicative, but this verb is hardly ever used, except metaphorically.

9. The verb **podrir,** *to rot,* of which the present of the indicative is:

Pudro, *I rot.*	Podrimos, *we rot.*
Pudres, *thou rottest.*	Podrís, *you rot.*
Pudre, *he rots.*	Pudren, *they rot.*

and the gerund **pudriendo,** *rotting,* is hardly ever used except in the infinitive and the past participle **podrido,** *rotten.* The regular verb **pudrir** has taken its place in all other cases.

Lección XXXVI. Lesson XXXVI.

THE IMPERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

The imperfect indicative is formed by adding the following terminations to the stem of the verbs:

For the 1st Conjugation:	For the 2d and 3d Conjugations:
-aba	**-ía**
-abas	**-ías**
-aba	**-ía**
-ábamos	**-íamos**
-abais	**-íais**
-aban	**-ían**

NOTE. — The verbs **ser**, 2. *to be*, **ver**, 2. *to see*, and **ir**, 3. *to go*, are the only verbs that form an exception to the rule, which refers to all other regular and irregular verbs.

1st Conjugation.

Habl-**aba**,	*I spoke* or *I was speaking.*
Habl-**abas**,	*thou spokest* or *thou wast speaking.*
Habl-**aba**,	*he spoke* or *he was speaking.*
Habl-**ábamos**,	*we spoke* or *we were speaking.*
Habl-**abais**,	*you spoke* or *you were speaking.*
Habl-**aban**,	*they spoke* or *they were speaking.*

2d Conjugation.

Vend-**ía**,	*I sold* or *I was selling.*
Vend-**ías**,	*thou soldest* or *thou wast selling.*
Vend-**ía**,	*he sold* or *he was selling.*
Vend-**íamos**,	*we sold* or *we were selling.*
Vend-**íais**,	*you sold* or *you were selling.*
Vend-**ían**,	*they sold* or *they were selling.*

3d Conjugation.

Ven-**ía**,	*I came* or *I was coming.*
Ven-**ías**,	*thou camest* or *thou wast coming.*
Ven-**ía**,	*he came* or *he was coming.*
Ven-**íamos**,	*we came* or *we were coming.*
Ven-**íais**,	*you came* or *you were coming.*
Ven-**ían**,	*they came* or *they were coming.*

Exceptions.

1.	Iba,	*I went* or *I was going.*
	Ibas,	*thou wentest* or *thou wast going.*
	Iba,	*he went* or *he was going.*
	Íbamos,	*we went* or *we were going.*
	Ibais,	*you went* or *you were going.*
	Iban,	*they went* or *they were going.*
2.	Veía,	*I saw* or *I was seeing.*
	Veías,	*thou sawest* or *thou wast seeing.*
	Veía,	*he saw* or *he was seeing.*
	Veíamos,	*we saw* or *we were seeing.*
	Veíais,	*you saw* or *you were seeing.*
	Veían,	*they saw* or *they were seeing.*
3.	Era,	*I was.*
	Eras,	*thou wast.*
	Era,	*he was.*
	Éramos,	*we were.*
	Erais,	*you were.*
	Eran,	*they were.*

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El enemigo, *the enemy.*	**La fortaleza**, *the fortress.*	**Gastar**, 1. *to spend.*
El escritorio, *the office.*	**La limonada**, *the lemonade.*	**Llamar**, 1. *to call.*
El modo, *the way.*	**La luz**, *the light.*	**Llegar**, 1. *to arrive.*
El negocio, *the business.*	**La puerta**, *the door.*	**Mandar**, 1. *to send.*
El oso, *the bear.*	**Caro**, *dear.*	**Mirar**, 1. *to look at.*
El paraguas, *the umbrella.*	**Diferente**, *different.*	**Ocupar**, 1. *to occupy.*
El tiempo, *the time.*	**Creer**, 2. *to believe.*	**Tocar**, 1. *to play on.*
La elegancia, *the elegance.*	**Entrar**, 1. *to enter.*	**Vestir**, 3. *to dress.*

Exercise 71.

1. Yo sabía que su hermano de V. estaba malo la semana pasada, pero yo creía que él estaba bueno ahora. 2. ¿ Estaba V. en Francia en aquel tiempo ? 3. Sí, señor, yo estaba allí desde dos años. 4. ¿ Qué hacía V. entonces ? 5. Yo estudiaba para ser médico. 6. ¿ Cómo estaban vestidas las dos señoras ? 7. Estaban vestidas con mucha elegancia. 8. Yo no sabía lo que querían estos hombres. 9. Querían entrar en la casa para robar. 10. Hablábamos muy bien el francés cuando éramos jóvenes. 11. ¿ Qué hacía su hermano de V. cuando

estaba en Inglaterra? 12. No hacía nada, pero gastaba mucho dinero. 13. ¿Cuánto recibía por mes? 14. Mi padre le mandaba doscientos duros todos los meses. 15. ¿Qué estaban VV. mirando en la calle? 16. Estábamos mirando á un hombre que hacía bailar un oso. 17. ¿Qué le decía á V. aquella señora? 18. Me decía que esperaba á su marido y á sus hijos esta noche. 19. ¿Á quién conocían VV. en aquella ciudad? 20. No conocíamos á nadie. 21. ¿Qué querían estos caballeros? 22. Querían verle à V. 23. Juan quería comprar mi caballito, pero no tenía bastante dinero. 24. ¿Á qué hora iba V. á casa del médico? 25. Yo iba todas las mañanas á las diez y media. 26. ¿Á quién veía V. en su casa? 27. Yo veía á su señora y á sus hijos. 28. ¿Qué vendía aquella mujer? 29. Ella vendía muy buenas peras. 30. ¿Á quién daba V. todo su dinero? 31. Yo no lo daba á nadie, yo lo prestaba á mi primo que hacía muy buenos negocios. 32. Nuestros soldados ocupaban todas las fortalezas del enemigo. 33. ¿Á qué hora almorzaban VV.? 34. Almorzábamos muy temprano, pero comíamos muy tarde.

Exercise 72.

1. Who was the man at the door? 2. It was not a man, it was a little boy. 3. What did he want? 4. He wished to know if Mr. Charles Marti lived in this house, as (*pues*) he had a letter for him. 5. Was not the gentleman in his room? 6. He was there this morning, but he has gone out. 7. Did you not know that my brother had arrived? 8. I did not know it. 9. Were you acquainted with Mr. Arroyo? 10. I knew him very well when he was young. 11. He was very poor then, but now he is very rich. 12. Why did you not wish to buy that house? 13. Because it was too dear, and I had not money enough. 14. With whom were you in Paris? 15. I was there with my mother and sisters. 16. Do you know what Charles was telling me? 17. I could see that he was speaking to you, but I could not hear a word. 18. He was telling me that he knew who had stolen your umbrella. 19. Where were you going this morning? 20. I was going to my office; I go there now very early. 21. To whom were you writing this morning? 22. I was writing to all my friends. 23. Could you see any one in the house? 24. I could see no one, because there was no light in the room. 25. Who was playing on the piano? 26. My sisters were playing, and my brothers were singing. 27. Where were you when I was calling you? 28. I

was in the garden with the children. 29. My friend used to come every day, but I don't know where he is now. 30. What did you drink when you were sick? 31. I drank lemonade.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The use of the *imperfect, past definite,* and *past indefinite,* which in many cases would have but one form in English, presents one of the greatest difficulties met by those learning the Spanish language. The following rules are calculated to facilitate the task of the student. Practice, reading, and reasoning must also be depended upon as the best auxiliaries for the correct use of the imperfect tense.

1. The imperfect is used to express an action or event which has *already occurred,* but which was *existing* or *going on* when *another action* or *event took place:*

Él estudiaba cuando entraron, — *He was studying when they entered.*

2. This tense is also used to express what was *customary* or *habitual* at *a certain past time,* and in that case may generally be rendered in English by prefixing "used to" to the infinitive mood, as:

Cuando vivíamos en el campo, estudiábamos mucho, — *When we lived* (used to live) *in the country we studied* (used to study) *a great deal.*

Observation. — We should not use the imperfect, however, in speaking of an *accidental occurrence:*

Sin embargo, una vez, jugamos todo el día, — *Once, however, we played the whole day.*

3. The imperfect is also used to describe the *qualities of persons* or *things,* and the *state, place,* or *disposition* in which they *were* in past time.

This tense may, therefore, be called the *descriptive tense* of Spanish:

Las muchachas *estaban* vestidas de blanco, y *tenían* flores en los cabellos, — *The girls were dressed in white, and had flowers in their hair.*

Lección XXXVII. Lesson XXXVII.

THE PAST DEFINITE OR PRETERIT, AND THE PAST INDEFINITE.

1. The terminations of the past definite are the following for most verbs:

For the 1st Conjugation.	For the 2d and 3d Conjugations.
-é	-í
-aste	-iste
-ó	-ió
-amos	-imos
-asteis	-isteis
-aron	-ieron

1st Conjugation.

Hablar, *to speak.*

Habl-**é**,	*I spoke* or *I did speak.*
Habl-**aste**,	*thou spokest* or *thou didst speak.*
Habl-**ó**,	*he spoke* or *he did speak.*
Habl-**amos**,	*we spoke* or *we did speak.*
Habl-**asteis**,	*you spoke* or *you did speak.*
Habl-**aron**,	*they spoke* or *they did speak.*

Amar, *to love.*

Am-**é**,	*I loved* or *I did love.*
Am-**aste**,	*thou lovedst* or *thou didst love.*
Am-**ó**,	*he loved* or *he did love.*
Am-**amos**,	*we loved* or *we did love.*
Am-**asteis**,	*you loved* or *you did love.*
Am-**aron**,	*they loved* or *they did love.*

2d Conjugation.

Vender, *to sell.*

Vend-**í**,	*I sold* or *I did sell.*
Vend-**iste**,	*thou soldest or thou didst sell.*
Vend-**ió**,	*he sold* or *he did sell.*
Vend-**imos**,	*we sold* or *we did sell.*
Vend-**isteis**,	*you sold* or *you did sell.*
Vend-**ieron**,	*they sold* or *they did sell.*

Comer, *to eat.*

Com-**í**,	*I ate* or *I did eat.*
Com-**iste**,	*thou atest* or *thou didst* **eat.**
Com-**ió**,	*he ate* or *he did* **eat.**
Com-**imos**,	*we ate* or *we did eat.*
Com-**isteis**,	*you ate* or *you did* **eat.**
Com-**ieron**,	*they ate* or *they did* **eat.**

3d Conjugation.

Recibir, *to receive.*

Recib-**í**,	*I received* or *I did receive.*
Recib-**iste**,	*thou receivedst* or *thou didst receive.*
Recib-**ió**,	*he received* or *he did receive.*
Recib-**imos**,	*we received* or *we did receive.*
Recib-**isteis**,	*you received* or *you did receive.*
Recib-**ieron**,	*they received* or *they did receive.*

Salir, *to go out.*

Sal-**í**,	*I went out* or *I did go out.*
Sal-**iste**,	*thou wentest out* or *thou didst go* **out.**
Sal-**ió**,	*he went out* or *he did go out.*
Sal-**imos**,	*we went out* or *we did go out.*
Sal-**isteis**,	*you went out* or *you did go out.*
Sal-**ieron**,	*they went out* or *they did go out.*

Past Indefinite.

He hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	*I have spoken — sold — received, etc.*
Has hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	*thou hast spoken — sold — received, etc.*
Ha hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	*he has spoken — sold — received, etc.*
Hemos hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	*we have spoken — sold — received, etc.*
Habéis hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	*you have spoken — sold — received, etc.*
Han hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	*they have spoken — sold — received, etc.*

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El bosque, *the wood.*	**Andar**, 1. *to walk.*
El embajador, *the ambassador.*	**Asegurar**, 1. *to assure.*
El enemigo, *the enemy.*	**Comprender**, 2. *to understand.*
El ladrón, *the thief.*	**Derrotar**, 1. *to defeat.*
El lugar, *the place.*	**Entrar**, 1. *to enter.*
El veneno, *the poison.*	**Esperar**, 1. *to expect.*
La deuda, *the debt.*	**Ofrecer**, 2. *to offer.*
La fonda, *the hotel.*	**Pelear**, 1. *to fight.*
La posteridad, *the posterity.*	**Perder**, 2. *to lose.*
Cansado, *tired.*	**Preguntar**, 1. *to ask.*
Colón, *Columbus.*	**Presentar**, 1. *to introduce.*
Dios, m., *God.*	**Prometer**, 2. *to promise.*
Romano, *Roman.*	**Responder**, 2. *to answer.*
Abrir, 3. *to open.*	**Salir**, 3. *to leave, to go out.*
Aconsejar, *to advise.*	**Vencer**, 2. *to conquer.*

Exercise 73.

1. Don Juan me preguntó si V. estaba en su cuarto. 2. ¿ Y qué respondió V.? 3. Respondí que yo no sabía, pero que él podía subir á ver. 4. El general presentó los oficiales al príncipe. 5. Mi padre vendió su casa al tío de V. 6. ¿ Sabe V. lo que pagó por ella? 7. Pagó mucho menos de lo que valía. 8. ¿ Cuánto dinero recibieron VV.? 9. Recibimos como trescientos duros. 10. Dios prometió á Abrahán una grande posteridad. 11. ¿ Conoce V. á este caballero? 12. Le he conocido en París. 13. ¿ Cuándo vió V. á Carlito? 14. Le ví el mes pasado en Boston donde estaba con su padre. 15. ¿ Á qué hora comieron VV. ayer? 16. Comimos á la misma hora que los otros días. 17. ¿ Con quién habló V. en el escritorio? 18. Hablé con el dependiente del banquero. 19. ¿ Han escrito VV. sus cartas? 20. Las escribimos anoche; ¿ sabe V. si ha salido el vapor? 21. Salió ayer á las cuatro de la tarde. 22. ¿ Quién bebió el vino? 23. Yo no sé quién bebió el vino, pero sé muy bien quién comió los bollos. 24. Los enemigos perdieron diez mil hombres en aquella batalla. 25. José (*Joseph*) me aseguró que él había pagado todas sus deudas, pero yo le respondí que no lo creía. 26. Cuando Aníbal vió á los embajadores romanos, tomó veneno. 27. El enfermo quería salir esta mañana, pero el médico no lo permitió. 28. Los muchachos abrieron la puerta del jardín y entraron en él. 29. Colón descubrió la América en el año 1492. 30. El pobre Felipe perdió todo su dinero

en aquella especulación. 31. Los ladrones entraron en aquella casa y robaron todo lo que hallaron. 32. Trabajamos muchísimo hoy, y estamos muy cansados. 33. ¿ Á quién vieron VV. en el teatro? 34. Vimos á todos nuestros amigos. 35. Los Romanos vencieron á todas las naciones del mundo.

Exercise 74.

1. Why did you not write to your brother? 2. I wrote to him but he did not answer me. 3. Did you see Mr. Martin? 4. I did not see him, I was not in the city when he was here. 5. The general lost the battle, but his soldiers fought with much courage. 6. Have you studied your lessons? 7. We studied them last night. 8. Did you go out with your sister when she was here? 9. We went out every day. 10. Who took my book? 11. Nobody took it; it is in the same place yet. 12. Did you receive what you were expecting? 13. We have not received anything yet. 14. Did you understand that man? 15. I understood everything, although he spoke French. 16. Did you ever study French? 17. I spoke it very well when I was younger. 18. Did your brother sell his horses? 19. He sold two of them, and he sent the other to the country. 20. Why did he not lend it to you? 21. Because I have a horse myself. 22. Why did not your sister dance at the ball? 23. Because she was not very well, and she only stayed (*se quedó*) half an hour. 24. Does she know how to dance? 25. She learned all the new dances during the winter. 26. The thieves killed a poor man in the forest. 27. Our soldiers defeated the enemy and took their principal cities. 28. That little boy ate too much last night; and to-day he is sick. 29. My brother saw your mother when he was in England; did she reside a long time in that country? 30. She resided there for two years. 31. The man killed the dog because he bit his little boy. 32. Where did you breakfast this morning? 33. I breakfasted in the French hotel where you saw me last week. 34. Did you drink anything at his house? 35. He did not offer us anything.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The *past definite* or *preterit* and the *past indefinite* are used in all those cases of past time where the *imperfect* cannot

be used. The *preterit*, however, is used more especially to express an action which took place *but once*, and when the time at which the action took place *has entirely elapsed.*

The preterit is, therefore, especially used in narrative style, and is also designated as the *pretérito histórico:*

Pedro el Cruel no respetó las leyes, y se portó mal con sus aliados.	*Peter the Cruel did not respect the laws, and acted dishonorably towards his allies.*

2. The preterit may, however, be used when there is continuation of time; but, in this case, the action must have taken place at a remote period, and the time must be designated:

Roma fué por más de dos siglos la señora del orbe,	*Rome was for more than two centuries the mistress of the world.*

3. The same tense is also very often used to express customary and repeated actions or qualities, when it is intended to express the time rather than the action. When we say:

Napoleón era (*imperf.*) gran guerrero, *Napoleon was a great warrior,*

we express the quality, but when we say:

Napoleón fué (*preterit*) gran guerrero,

we think of the time in which he was living.

4. The preterit may be rendered in English according to the meaning of the sentence by its *corresponding form*, or by the auxiliary *did*, which has no equivalent in Spanish:

Comimos ayer en su casa,	*We dined yesterday at his house.*
No salí anoche,	*I did not go out last night.*

5. The past indefinite is used to express a past action when the time at which it took place belongs to a period of time (day, week, month, year, etc.) not entirely elapsed:

Hoy he estado en la iglesia,	*I have been to church to-day.*
No he ido al teatro este año,	*I have not been to the theater this year.*

6. The past indefinite is also used to express an action but lately performed:

He leído los papelas,	*I have read the papers.*

It is furthermore used to express the successes or merits of a person when we wish to give more expression to the sentence:

Napoleón ha conquistado en poco tiempo Italia y Alemania,	*Napoleon (has) conquered in a short time Italy and Germany.*

7. *General Observations on the imperfect, preterit, and past indefinite.*

The imperfect can *seldom* be rendered in English by the past tense which takes *did* as an auxiliary except when in interrogative sentences *did* is used as an auxiliary to *used to*, either expressed or understood.

The preterit never corresponds like the imperfect to the English imperfect, composed of the auxiliary and the gerund, nor can it be rendered by a verb preceded by *used to*.

The three tenses above mentioned offer in their application a certain difficulty, as they are sometimes *obligatory*, and sometimes *optional;* or, in other words, their use is sometimes *a question of grammar*, and sometimes only *a question of style*.

When several sentences concur to the same end, as in the following narrative, it is not always an easy matter to determine whether the student should use the *imperfect* or another tense, the *preterit* for instance, as he has to take into consideration not only the *special shade of meaning of each verb*, but also *the general tenor of the other sentences* forming *the whole of the narration*. As already stated, **the imperfect** is used as **a descriptive tense**, while **the preterit** is only used as **a narrative tense**.

All the imperfects of the following Spanish translation are printed in *italics*.

Era poco más de mediodía cuando entraron los Españoles en su alojamiento, y hallaron prevenido un banquete regalado y espléndido para Cortés y los cabos de su ejército, con grande abundancia de bastimentos menos delicados para el resto de la gente, y muchos Indios de servicio que *suministraban* los manjares y las bebidas con igual silencio y puntualidad. Por la tarde vino Mon-	*It was a little more than midday when the Spaniards entered their lodgings, and found a delicate and splendid banquet prepared for Cortes and the captains of his army, and at the same time a great abundance of less delicate provisions for the remainder of the people, while many Indians, attending to the service, brought in the eatables and beverages with equal silence and punctuality.*

tezuma con la misma pompa y acompañamiento, á visitar á Cortés, que, avisado poco antes, salió á recibirle hasta el patio principal, con todo el obsequio debido á semejante favor. Acompañóle hasta la puerta de su cuarto, donde le hizo una profunda reverencia, y él pasó á tomar su asiento con despejo y gravedad. Mandó luego que acercasen otro á Cortés: hizo seña para que se apartasen á la pared los caballeros que *andaban* cerca de su persona, y Cortés advirtió lo mismo á los capitanes que le asistían.

Montezuma came in the afternoon with the same pomp and retinue to visit Cortes, and the latter having been informed of this some time before, came out to receive him as far as the principal court, with all the courtesy due to such a favor. Cortes accompanied him as far as the door of his room, where he made a deep bow to him, and Montezuma passed on and took his seat with ease and gravity. He then ordered that they should bring forward another seat for Cortes, and made a sign to the nobles who walked near his person to withdraw as far as the wall, while Cortes did the same to the captains who followed him.

Llegaron los intérpretes, y cuando se *prevenía* Cortés para dar principio á su oración, le detuvo Motezuma, dando á entender que *tenía* que hablar antes de oír, y se refiere que discurrió en esta sustancia:

The interpreters then arrived, and as Cortes was preparing to commence his discourse, Montezuma stopped him, giving him to understand that he had to speak before he would listen, and it is related that he spoke thus:

Lección XXXVIII. Lesson XXXVIII.

IRREGULARITIES OF THE PRETERIT.

I.

1. Tener, 2. *to have.*
Tuve, *I had* (*did have*).
Tuviste, *thou hadst.*
Tuvo, *he had.*
Tuvimos, *we had.*
Tuvisteis, *you had.*
Tuvieron, *they had.*

2. Estar, 1. *to be.*
Estuve, *I was.*
Estuviste, *thou wast.*
Estuvo, *he was.*
Estuvimos, *we were.*
Estuvisteis, *you were.*
Estuvieron, *they were.*

3. Hacer, 2. *to make, to do.*
Hice, *I made* or *I did make.*
Hiciste, *thou madest.*
Hizo, *he made.*
Hicimos, *we made.*
Hicisteis, *you made.*
Hicieron, *they made.*

4. Querer, 2. *to wish, to be willing.*
Quise, *I wished* or *I did wish.*
Quisiste, *thou wishedst.*
Quiso, *he wished.*
Quisimos, *we wished.*
Quisisteis, *you wished.*
Quisieron, *they wished.*

5. Poder, 2. *to be able.*
Pude, *I was able* or *I could.*
Pudiste, *thou wast able.*
Pudo, *he was able.*
Pudimos, *we were able.*
Pudisteis, *you were able.*
Pudieron, *they were able.*

6. Poner, 2. *to put.*
Puse, *I put* or *I did put.*
Pusiste, *thou didst put.*
Puso, *he put.*
Pusimos, *we put.*
Pusisteis, *you put.*
Pusieron, *they put.*

7. Saber, 2. *to know.*
Supe, *I knew* or *I did know.*
Supiste, *thou didst know.*
Supo, *he knew.*
Supimos, *we knew.*
Supisteis, *you knew.*
Supieron, *they knew.*

8. Decir, 3. *to say, to tell.*
Dije, *I said* or *I did say.*
Dijiste, *thou saidst.*
Dijo, *he said.*
Dijimos, *we said.*
Dijisteis, *you said.*
Dijeron, *they said.*

9. Haber, 2. *to have* (auxiliary and impersonal).
Hube, *I had* (*did have*).
Hubiste, *thou hadst.*
Hubo, *he had.*
Hubimos, *we had.*
Hubisteis, *you had.*
Hubieron, *they had.*

10. Andar, 1. *to walk.*
Anduve, *I walked* or *I did walk.*
Anduviste, *thou didst walk.*
Anduvo, *he walked.*
Anduvimos, *we walked.*
Anduvisteis, *you walked.*
Anduvieron, *they walked.*

11. Caber, 2, *to be contained.*
Cupe, *I was contained.*
Cupiste, *thou wast contained.*
Cupo, *he was contained.*
Cupimos, *we were contained.*
Cupisteis, *you were contained.*
Cupieron, *they were contained.*

12. Traer, 2. *to bring.*
Traje, *I brought* or *I did bring.*
Trajiste, *thou didst bring.*
Trajo, *he brought.*
Trajimos, *we brought.*
Trajisteis, *you brought.*
Trajeron, *they brought.*

13. Conducir, 3. *to conduct, to take.*
Conduje, *I conducted* or *I did conduct.*
Condujiste, *thou didst conduct.*
Condujo, *he conducted.*
Condujimos, *we conducted.*
Condujisteis, *you conducted.*
Condujeron, *they conducted.*

14. Venir, 3. *to come.*
Vine, *I came* or *I did come.*
Veniste, *thou camest.*
Vino, *he came.*
Venimos, *we came.*
Venisteis, *you came.*
Vinieron, *they came.*

II.

1. Dar, 1. *to give.*
Dí, *I gave.*
Diste, *thou gavest.*
Dió, *he gave.*
Dimos, *we gave.*
Disteis, *you gave.*
Dieron, *they gave.*

2. Ser, 2. *to be*, and **Ir**, *to go.*
Fuí, *I was; I went* or *I did go.*
Fuiste, *thou wast; thou wentest.*
Fué, *he was; he went.*
Fuimos, *we were; we went.*
Fuisteis, *you were; you went.*
Fueron, *they were; they went.*

III.

1. Sentir, 3. *to feel.*
Sentí, *I felt* or *I did feel.*
Sentiste, *thou feltest.*
Sintió, *he felt.*
Sentimos, *we felt.*
Sentisteis, *you felt.*
Sintieron, *they felt.*

2. Pedir, 3. *to ask for.*
Pedí, *I asked* or *I did ask for.*
Pediste, *thou didst ask for.*
Pidió, *he asked for.*
Pedimos, *we asked for.*
Pedisteis, *you asked for.*
Pidieron, *they asked for.*

3. Dormir, 3. *to sleep.*
Dormí, *I slept.*
Dormiste, *thou didst sleep.*
Durmió, *he slept.*
Dormimos, *we slept.*
Dormisteis, *you slept.*
Durmieron, *they slept.*

4. Morir, 3. *to die.*
Morí, *I died* or *I did die.*
Moriste, *thou diedst.*
Murió, *he died.*
Morimos, *we died.*
Moristeis, *you died.*
Murieron, *they died.*

Vocabulario.

El Árabe, *the Arab.*
El cartero, *the postman.*
El cielo, *the heaven.*
El huracán, *the hurricane.*
El instante, *the instant.*
El Romano, *the Roman.*
La muerte, *the death.*
La nación, *the nation.*
Afuera, *out.*
Á pie, *on foot.*
Cansado, *tired.*
Después, *afterwards, then.*
Dios, m., *God.*
En seguida, *immediately.*
Galileo, *Galileo.*

Vocabulary.

Hasta, *till, until, as far as.*
Indomable, *indomitable.*
Mismo, *very, self.*
Ocupado, *busy.*
Rómulo, *Romulus.*
Asolar, 1. *to devastate.*
Caer, 2. *to fall.*
Consolar, 1. *to comfort.*
Dejar, 1. *to leave.*
Derribar, 1. *to upset.*
Echar (1.) **á pique**, *to founder.*
Nacer, 2, *to be born.*
Presentar, 1. *to present.*
Sentir, 3. *to feel, to regret.*
Someter, 2. *to subdue.*

Exercise 75.

1. ¿ Dónde estuvo V. esta mañana ? 2. Estuve todo el tiempo en mi cuarto. 3. ¿ Durmió bien el enfermo ? 4. Durmió hasta las cinco esta mañana, y después estuvo mejor. 5. En el año de 1846 hubo en la Habana un terrible huracán que echó á pique muchos barcos, derribó casas y asoló muchas haciendas. 6. Mi amigo vino con nosotros hasta la puerta, pero no quiso entrar. 7. Tuvimos muy buen tiempo en nuestro viaje. 8. ¿ Porqué no habló V. con mi padre ? 9. No pude hablarle, estaba tan ocupado que me dijo que no podía oírme. 10. ¿ Supieron VV. sus lecciones hoy ? 11. Las supimos muy bien. 12. ¿ Quién le dió á V. tanto dinero ? 13. Pedí cien duros á mi padre, y otros cien duros á mi tío, y me los dieron en seguida. 14. ¿ Sabe V. dónde puse mi bastón ? 15. V. lo ha dejado en el otro cuarto. 16. ¿ Quién trajo esto aquí ? 17. No sé, pero creo que es el hombre que vino anoche. 18. ¿ Ha venido el cartero ? 19. En este mismo instante ; ahí tiene V. las cartas. 20. ¿ Quién fué el primer rey de Roma ? 21. Rómulo fué el primero. 22. ¿ Creyó V. esto ? 23. Sí, lo creí, y todo el mundo lo creyó también. 24. El general murió en la batalla. 25. ¿ Estuvo V. anoche en el teatro ? 26. No, señor ; estuve en el concierto. 27. Los hermanos Rodríguez estuvieron aquí ayer, sentimos muchísimo haber (*having*) estado afuera. 28. ¿ Oyó V. lo que dijo este hombre ? 29. Oí todo lo que dijo. 30. El caballero que vino ayer está todavía durmiendo ; nos dijo que venía muy can-

sado del viaje. 31. Newton nació en el mismo año en que murió Galileo. 32. ¿Porqué no quiso V. ir al parque con los otros caballeros? 33. Porque no quisieron ir á pie. 34. Mi padre vino en este país cuando tenía veinte años. 35. El banquero dió un baile la semana pasada.

Exercise 76.

1. What did that man tell you? 2. He told me that he had no money, and that he could not pay you. 3. The Arabs were always an indomitable nation; the Romans themselves could not subdue them. 4. Louis XIV. was a great king. 5. He read the letter and gave it to his father. 6. The general presented his sons to the king. 7. They gave all their money to the poor. 8. My brother went first to France and then to England. 9. The rain fell for (*durante*) three days. 10. He brought a great deal of money, and bought many things for his friends. 11. He took his friend by the hand and presented him to his father. 12. God made the heaven and the earth. 13. We had very bad weather in the country. 14. He put the money on the table and went out. 15. Several generals died in that battle. 16. We felt the cold more this year than last year. 17. What did your sister do when she heard of the death of her best friend? 18. She wept a great deal, and we could not comfort her. 19. The children went to the park with their father. 20. We could not do that, and nobody in the house could do it. 21. Why could you not write to him? 22. Because I did not know what to write. 23. The boy came and brought this letter for you. 24. My father gave us money and we went to the theater. 25. Why did you not come earlier? 26. We could not come because we were very busy. 27. What did you do in the city? 28. We bought all the things that we needed. 29. Napoleon was a great general. 30. Did you ask him for the money? 31. I only asked him for twenty dollars, and he gave them to me. 32. We were very well received by your family.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. As seen above, the verbs **tener,** 2. *to have;* **estar,** 1. *to be;* **hacer,** 2. *to make, to do;* **querer,** 2. *to wish, to be willing;* **poder,** 2. *to be able;* **poner,** 2. *to put;* **saber,** 2. *to know;* **decir,** 3. *to say, to tell;* **haber,** 2. *to have* (auxiliary and im-

personal); **andar,** 1. *to walk;* **caber,** 2. *to be contained;* **traer,** 2. *to bring;* **conducir,** 3. *to conduct, to take;* and **venir,** 3. *to come;* have the same terminations for the preterit, namely:

-e -iste -o -imos -isteis -ieron,

the accent in the first and third persons singular being on the stem instead of on the ending.

2. The verb **dar,** 1. *to give,* unlike the other verbs of the 1st conjugation, takes, for the preterit, the terminations of the regular verbs of the 2d and 3d conjugations, namely:

-í -iste -ió -imos -isteis -ieron.

3. The verbs **ser,** 2. *to be,* and **ir,** 3. *to go,* as shown, have the same preterit, namely:

f-uí f-uiste f-ué f-uimos f-uisteis f-ueron.

4. Verbs like **pedir,** 3. *to ask for;* **sentir,** 3. *to feel, to regret,* etc., which in the gerund change the *e* into **i** (**pidiendo, sintiendo,** etc.), change also the same letter in the 3d person singular and 3d person plural of the preterit (**pidió, pidieron; sintio, sintieron,** etc.).

Verbs like **dormir,** 3. *to sleep;* **morir,** 3. *to die;* etc., which in the gerund change the *o* into **u** (**durmiendo, muriendo,** etc.), change also the same letter in the 3d person singular and 3d person plural of the preterit (**durmió, durmieron; murió, murieron,** etc.).

5. Verbs ending in the infinitive in **car,** change in the preterit *c* into **qu** before **e**: **tocar,** 1. *to touch;* **toqué,** *I touched* or *I did touch;* etc.

Verbs ending in **gar** insert a **u** before the **e** in the same tense: **jugar,** 1. *to play;* **jugué,** *I played* or *I did play;* etc.

Verbs ending in **eer** change the *i* of the third person endings into **y** before **e**: **creer,** 2. *to believe;* **creyeron,** *they believed;* etc.

Verbs ending in **uir** change the *i* of the third person endings into **y** before **e**: **huir,** 3. *to flee;* **huyeron,** *they fled;* etc.

OBSERVATION.— The changes above given also take place in other tenses and, in the two last cases, also before the letters **a** and **o.**

Lección XXXIX.

Lesson XXXIX.

THE PAST ANTERIOR AND THE PLUPERFECT.

Past Anterior.	Pluperfect.
Hube hablado, *I had spoken.*	Había hablado, *I had spoken.*
Hubiste hablado, *thou hadst spoken.*	Habías hablado, *thou hadst spoken.*
Hubo hablado, *he had spoken.*	Había hablado, *he had spoken.*
Hubimos hablado, *we had spoken.*	Habíamos hablado, *we had spoken.*
Hubisteis hablado, *you had spoken.*	Habíais hablado, *you had spoken.*
Hubieron hablado, *they had spoken.*	Habían hablado, *they had spoken.*

Vocabulario.

El heredero, *the heir.*
El nombre, *the name.*
El periódico, *the newspaper.*
El vapor, *the steamer.*
La noticia, *the news.*
La palabra, *the word.*
La urbanidad, *the urbanity.*
Abierto, *opened.*
Á caballo, *on horseback.*
Amistoso, *friendly.*
Apenas, *hardly, no sooner.*
Aun, *yet.*
Cuando, *when.*
Después que, *after.*
Que, *when.*
Triste, *sad.*

Vocabulary.

Tan pronto como,
Luego que,
Así que,
Al punto que,
} *as soon as.*

Ya, *already.*
Comer, 2. *to dine.*
Consultar, 1. *to consult.*
Contener, 2. *to contain.*
Entregar, 1. *to hand.*
Llevar, 1. *to take.*
Merecer, 2. *to deserve.*
Montar, 1. *to mount.*
Olvidar, 1. *to forget.*
Pronunciar, 1. *to pronounce.*
Tomar, 1. *to take.*
Visitar, 1. *to visit.*

Exercise 77.

1. ¿Qué hizo V. cuando hubo almorzado? 2. Tan pronto como hube almorzado, volví á mi escritorio. 3. Así que me hubo visto, me dió el dinero. 4. Apenas me hubo dicho estas palabras, cuando salió. 5. Luego que hubo leído la carta, montó á caballo y salió de la ciudad. 6. ¿Dónde había olvidado V. su bastón? 7. Yo no había olvidado mi bastón, había olvidado mi paraguas, lo que era peor, pues comenzó á llover muchísimo. 8. Cuando hubo visitado la casa, dijo que no quería comprarla. 9. Yo había salido cuando entraron los ladrones en mi cuarto. 10. Cuando hubieron abierto la puerta,

vieron que no había nada que robar. 11. Guillermo no había aprendido su lección, y había sido castigado como lo merecía. 12. Después que hubo visto á su amigo, estuvo más satisfecho. 13. ¿Había recibido su padre la carta cuando salió? 14. Aún no la había recibido. 15. Cuando hubo comido, tomó su sombrero y dijo que tenía que salir. 16. Me entregó el dinero tan pronto como lo hubo recibido. 17. Cuando hubo vendido su casa, compró otra más grande. 18. Cuando le hube dicho mi nombre, me recibió con la mayor urbanidad. 19. Al punto que me hubo visto, me saludó muy cortésmente. 20. Me prestó el libro así que le hube dado otro. 21. Después que hubo llegado, me escribió una carta muy amistosa. 22. Luego que hubo muerto el general, vendieron los herederos la casa. 23. Ya había yo leído la carta cuando llegó mi hermano. 24. ¿Había hablado V. al médico? 25. Sí, yo le había consultado varias veces.

Exercise 78.

1. When he had said what he had to say, he left (*salió de*) the house. 2. As soon as the father had read what the letter of his son contained, he handed it to me. 3. Hardly had he said that when his friend entered. 4. What did you do when you had dined? 5. I went to my friend's, who took me to the theater. 6. When I had written my letters I went out. 7. As soon as I had finished my work I gave it to him. 8. After he had visited the city he returned to the country. 9. We had hardly breakfasted when we heard the news. 10. Had you seen my lawyer? 11. I had seen yours and mine. 12. The children had told me that you had gone out. 13. I wished to go out, but I had no umbrella and it was raining. 14. When they heard that I had received good news they all came to (*á*) see me. 15. When they had read the newspapers they wrote their letters. 16. After they had seen our house they wished to buy it, but my father would not sell it. 17. The steamers had arrived, but we had not received any letters. 18. The father had died without seeing (*ver*) his sons. 19. Why had you opened the door? 20. Because I was too warm with the door closed. 21. Mr. Martin had not arrived this morning when I was at his house. 22. Had you not heard that he was yet in Boston? 23. I had not heard anything. 24. To whom had you spoken? 25. I had spoken to the servants.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The past anterior is formed from the preterit of the auxiliary **haber**, *to have*, and the past participle of the verb; while the pluperfect of the indicative is composed of the imperfect indicative of the same auxiliary, and the past participle of the verb:

Cuando hube reconocido (*past anterior*) mi error, me avergonzé de lo que había hecho (*pluperfect*).	*When I had perceived my error, I was ashamed of what I had done.*

2. The past anterior generally expresses that an *action took place immediately before* another *past* action or event.

This tense is principally used after one of the conjunctions: **después que**, *after;* **luego que, así que, al momento que, al punto que,** *as soon as;* **apenas,** *hardly, scarcely, no sooner.*

Después que — así que — cuando hubo comido, salió,	*After — as soon as — when he had dined, he went out.*
Se embarcó luego que hubo recibido el pasaporte,	*He embarked as soon as he had received the passport.*

Observations. — **1.** As seen by the examples given, the verb of the principal sentence must be in the preterit when the tense of the subordinate sentence is in the anterior.

2. The conjunctions and conjunctive locutions above given do not necessarily require the verb to be put in the past anterior tense; they may be frequently used with other tenses:

Así que hemos comido, vamos á pasear,	*As soon as we have dined we go and take a walk.*
Apenas tuvo el dinero cuando me pagó,	*He hardly had the money when he paid me.*

3. The pluperfect marks an action or event not only as *past in itself*, but also past *with regard* to some *other past action* or *event:*

Habíamos pensado que V. vendría temprano,	*We had thought that you would come early.*

Observation. — Nearly all the rules given for the imperfect may be applied to the pluperfect.

Lección XL. Lesson XL.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Regular Verbs.

1st Conjugation.

Amar, *to love.*	**Hablar**, *to speak.*
Amar-**é**, *I shall* or *will love.*	Hablar-**é**, *I shall* or *will speak.*
Amar-**ás**, *thou shalt* or *wilt love.*	Hablar-**ás**, *thou shalt* or *wilt speak.*
Amar-**á**, *he shall* or *will love.*	Hablar-**á**, *he shall* or *will speak.*
Amar-**emos**, *we shall* or *will love.*	Hablar-**emos**, *we shall* or *will speak.*
Amar-**éis**, *you shall* or *will love.*	Hablar-**éis**, *you shall* or *will speak.*
Amar-**án**, *they shall* or *will love.*	Hablar-**án**, *they shall* or *will speak.*

2d Conjugation.

Comer, *to eat.*	**Beber**, *to drink.*
Comer-**é**, *I shall* or *will eat.*	Beber-**é**, *I shall* or *will drink.*
Comer-**ás**, *thou shalt* or *wilt eat.*	Beber-**ás**, *thou shalt* or *wilt drink.*
Comer-**á**, *he shall* or *will eat.*	Beber-**á**, *he shall* or *will drink.*
Comer-**emos**, *we shall or will eat.*	Beber-**emos**, *we shall* or *will drink.*
Comer-**éis**, *you shall or will eat.*	Beber-**éis**, *you shall* or *will drink.*
Comer-**án**, *they shall* or *will eat.*	Beber-**án**, *they shall* or *will drink.*

3d Conjugation.

Recibir, *to receive.*	**Partir**, *to depart.*
Recibir-**é**, *I shall* or *will receive.*	Partir-**é**, *I shall* or *will depart.*
Recibir-**ás**, *thou shalt* or *wilt receive.*	Partir-**ás**, *thou shalt or wilt depart.*
Recibir-**á**, *he shall* or *will receive.*	Partir-**á**, *he shall* or *will depart.*
Recibir-**emos**, *we shall* or *will receive.*	Partir-**emos**, *we shall* or *will depart.*
Recibir-**éis**, *you shall* or *will receive.*	Partir-**éis**, *you shall* or *will depart.*
Recibir-**án**, *they shall* or *will receive.*	Partir-**án**, *they shall* or *will depart.*

Irregular Features.

1. **Hacer**, 2. *to do, to make.*	2. **Poder**, 2. *to be able.*
Haré, *I shall* or *will do.*	Podré, *I shall* or *will be able.*
Harás, *thou shalt* or *wilt do.*	Podrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt be able.*
Hará, *he shall* or *will do.*	Podrá, *he shall* or *will be able.*
Haremos, *we shall* or *will do.*	Podremos, *we shall* or *will be able.*
Haréis, *you shall or will do.*	Podréis, *you shall* or *will be able.*
Harán, *they shall* or *will do.*	Podrán, *they shall* or *will be able.*

3. Poner, 2. *to put.*
Pondré, *I shall* or *will put.*
Pondrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt put.*
Pondrá, *he shall* or *will put.*
Pondremos, *we shall* or *will put.*
Pondréis, *you shall* or *will put.*
Pondrán, *they shall* or *will put.*

4. Querer, 2. *to wish, to be willing.*
Querré, *I shall* or *will wish.*
Querrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt wish.*
Querrá, *he shall* or *will wish.*
Querremos, *we shall* or *will wish.*
Querréis, *you shall* or *will wish.*
Querrán, *they shall* or *will wish.*

5. Saber, 2. *to know.*
Sabré, *I shall* or *will know.*
Sabrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt know.*
Sabrá, *he shall* or *will know.*
Sabremos, *we shall* or *will know.*
Sabréis, *you shall* or *will know.*
Sabrán, *they shall* or *will know.*

6. Valer, 2. *to be worth.*
Valdré, *I shall* or *will be worth.*
Valdrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt be worth.*
Valdrá, *he shall* or *will be worth.*
Valdremos, *we shall* or *will be worth.*
Valdréis, *you shall* or *will be worth.*
Valdrán, *they shall* or *will be worth.*

7. Venir, 3. *to come.*
Vendré, *I shall* or *will come.*
Vendrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt come.*
Vendrá, *he shall* or *will come.*
Vendremos, *we shall* or *will come.*
Vendréis, *you shall* or *will come.*
Vendrán, *they shall* or *will come.*

8. Decir, 3. *to say, to tell.*
Diré, *I shall* or *will say.*
Dirás, *thou shalt* or *wilt say.*
Dirá, *he shall* or *will say.*
Diremos, *we shall* or *will say.*
Diréis, *you shall* or *will say.*
Dirán, *they shall* or *will say.*

9. Salir, 3. *to go out.*
Saldré, *I shall* or *will go out.*
Saldrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt go out.*
Saldrá, *he shall* or *will go out.*
Saldremos, *we shall* or *will go out.*
Saldréis, *you shall* or *will go out.*
Saldrán, *they shall* or *will go out.*

10. Caber, *to be contained.*
Cabré, *I shall be contained.*
Cabrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt be contained.*
Cabrá, *he shall* or *will be contained.*
Cabremos, *we shall* or *will be contained.*
Cabréis, *you shall* or *will be contained.*
Cabrán, *they shall* or *will be contained.*

11. Tener, 2. *to have.*
Tendré, *I shall* or *will have.*
Tendrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Tendrá, *he shall* or *will have.*
Tendremos, *we shall* or *will have.*
Tendréis, *you shall* or *will have.*
Tendrán, *they shall* or *will have.*

12. Haber, 2. *to have.*
Habré, *I shall* or *will have.*
Habrás, *thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Habrá, *he shall* or *will have.*
Habremos, *we shall* or *will have.*
Habréis, *you shall* or *will have.*
Habrán, *they shall* or *will have.*

NOTE. — The verb **ir**, 3. *to go*, although one of the most irregular verbs in Spanish, forms its future regularly.

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El mérito, *the merit.*	**Pronto**, *soon.*	**Pasar**, 1. *to pass.*
El negocio, *the business.*	**Según**, *according to.*	**Pensar**, 1. *to think.*
La procesión, *the procession.*	**Siempre**, *always.*	**Perdonar**, 1. *to forgive.*
Así que, *so that.*	**Acabar**, 1. *to finish.*	**Prometer**, 2. *to promise.*
Junio, m., *June.*	**Asegurar**, 1. *to assure.*	**Tratar**, 1. *to treat.*
Necesario, *necessary.*	**Enriquecer**, 2. *to enrich.*	**Vencer**, 2. *to conquer.*

Exercise 79.

1. ¿ Cuándo vendrá V. á vernos ? 2. Iremos un día de estos, cuando no estemos tan ocupados. 3. ¿ Cómo lo sabrá V. ? 4. Mi hermano me lo dirá. 5. Veré muy pronto si V. sabrá sus lecciones. 6. Le aseguro á V. que las sabré. 7. El panadero vino esta mañana y dijo que no podrá volver hoy. 8. ¿ Cuándo tendrá V. el dinero ? 9. Lo tendré esta tarde. 10. ¿ Á qué hora comeremos hoy ? 11. Comeremos muy temprano. 12. ¿ Cuándo habrá acabado V. su trabajo ? 13. Lo habré acabado mañana por la mañana. 14. ¿ Qué beberá V.? 15. Beberé agua si V. no tiene vino. 16. Hoy recibiremos todo lo que necesitamos. 17. ¿ Qué harán VV. si no tienen dinero ? 18. Haremos lo que siempre hemos hecho. 19. ¿ Vendrá su hermano de V. hoy ? 20. Vendrá si tiene tiempo. 21. ¿ Qué dirá su padre si sabe esto ? 22. Dirá que V. ha hecho muy mal en no consultarle. 23. ¿ Cuando saldrán los muchachos ? 24. No saldrán hoy, pues el tiempo está malísimo. 25. ¿ No irá V. al concierto de la señorita Abel ? 26. No podré ir, pues no estaré en la ciudad. 27. Dios nos tratará según nuestros méritos. 28. V. no habrá acabado su trabajo mañana, porque V. no trabaja bastante ; y yo habré acabado el mío, porque trabajo sin perder (*losing*) un momento. 29. ¿ Cree V. que Juan hará lo que le he dicho ? 30. Él no querrá hacerlo. 31. Mis hermanas han ido al campo, pero volverán la semana que viene. 32. Espero que mi amigo me perdonará. 33. V. podrá salir tan pronto como habrá acabado lo que tiene que hacer. 34. ¿ Qué dirán VV á estos hombres ? 35. No les hablaremos.

Exercise 80.

1. When will you receive letters from your family ? 2. I shall receive one to-morrow. 3. This business will enrich us all. 4. Will you write to me ? 5. I will write to you every week. 6. When will you go out with the children ? 7. I will go out this afternoon

8. They will conquer or die. 9. Will you be able to do it without me? 10. I don't know if I shall be able to do it. 11. How much money will you give to your brother? 12. I will give him enough for his journey. 13. Will it be necessary to tell him anything? 14. It will be better (*valdrá más*) not to say anything. 15. If we go to his house, he will treat us well. 16. Do you think that I shall be able to speak Spanish in two years? 17. You will speak pretty well, if you are willing to study. 18. When will the procession pass? 19. It will pass at three o'clock. 20. I will go and (*á*) see them as soon as I shall have finished this work. 21. If we go out now, our teacher will see us. 22. When will your cousin go to the country? 23. He will go in the month of June. 24. When will you send me the book that you promised me? 25. I will send it to you to-morrow morning. 26. Shall you be at home this afternoon? 27. Yes, sir, I shall be (there). 28. My friend has not received any letter, so that he will not be able to tell you anything. 29. Will it be necessary to go to your house this evening? 30. It will not be necessary. 31. How much money shall you receive? 32. I don't know how much I shall receive. 33. Have the boys finished their lessons? 34. They will soon have done (*finished*). 35. I know what he has said, but I shall not say a word.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The future of regular verbs is regularly formed by adding to the present infinitive the following terminations:

-é -ás -á -emos -éis -án

The termination of the future is the same for all verbs, whether regular or irregular, the stem alone being changed for the latter.

2. The verb **satisfacer,** 2. *to satisfy,* is conjugated like **hacer,** 2. *to do, to make;* the **f** being, however, preserved through the conjugation: **satisfago,** *I satisfy,* **satisfaré,** *I shall* or *will satisfy,* etc.

3. **Caber,** 2. *to contain, to be contained,* has the same irregularity as **poder,** 2. *to be able,* and makes **cabré,** etc., in the future.

4. All the other verbs which form their future irregularly, have been given above. Their derivatives are conjugated in the same way.

Thus : **componer,** 2. *to mend,* **deponer,** 2. *to lay down,* **disponer,** 2. *to dispose,* **oponer,** 2. *to oppose,* etc., are conjugated in the future like **poner,** 2. *to put.*

Contener, 2. *to contain,* **detener,** 2. *to detain,* **obtener,** 2. *to obtain,* etc., are conjugated like **tener,** 2. *to have.*

Equivaler, 2. *to be equivalent,* is conjugated like **valer,** 2. *to be worth.*

OBSERVATION. — **Valer más,** lit. : *to be worth more,* is often rendered in English by **to be better.**

Avenir, 3. *to happen,* **convenir,** 3. *to agree,* **intervenir,** 3. *to interfere,* etc., form their future like **venir,** 3. *to come.*

Predecir, 3. *to foretell,* **contradecir,** 3. *to contradict,* **desdecir,** 3. *to deny,* form their future like **decir,** 3. *to say, to tell.*

Bendecir, 3. *to bless,* and **maldecir,** 3. *to curse,* of which the past participle is **bendecido** (or **bendito**), and also **maldito,** form, however, their future regularly :

Bendeciré, *I shall* or *will bless.*	Bendeciremos, *we shall* or *will bless.*
Bendecirás, *thou shalt* or *wilt bless.*	Bendeciréis, *you shall* or *will bless.*
Bendecirá, *he shall* or *will bless.*	Bendecirán, *they shall* or *will bless.*

5. The future is often used in Spanish instead of the imperative :

Irás á la plaza y comprarás un pollo, *Go to the market and buy a chicken.*

6. The *future anterior* is formed from the past participle of the verb conjugated with the future of the auxiliary **haber,** *to have :*

Habré acabado esta noche, *I shall have finished to-night.*

Lección XLI. Lesson XLI.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

1. The present subjunctive is formed by adding the following endings to the stem of the first person present indicative :

For the 1st Conjugation.		For the 2d and 3d Conjugations.	
-e	**-emos**	**-a**	**-amos**
-es	**-éis**	**-as**	**-áis**
-e	**-en**	**-a**	**-an**

1st Conjugation.

Hablar, *to speak.*

Que yo habl-e,	*that I may speak.*
Que tú habl-**es,**	*that thou mayest speak.*
Que él habl-**e,**	*that he may speak.*
Que nosotros habl-**emos,**	*that we may speak.*
Que vosotros habl-**éis,**	*that you may speak.*
Que ellos habl-en,	*that they may speak.*

2d Conjugation.

Vender, *to sell.*

Que yo vend-**a,**	*that I may sell.*
Que tú vend-**as,**	*that thou mayest sell.*
Que él vend-**a,**	*that he may sell.*
Que nosotros vend-**amos,**	*that we may sell.*
Que vosotros vend-**áis,**	*that you may sell.*
Que ellos vend-an,	*that they may sell.*

3d Conjugation.

Recibir, *to receive.*

Que yo recib-a,	*that I may receive.*
Que tú recib-**as,**	*that thou mayest receive.*
Que él recib-**a,**	*that he may receive.*
Que nosotros recib-**amos,**	*that we may receive.*
Que vosotros recib-**áis,**	*that you may receive.*
Que ellos recib-**an,**	*that they may receive.*

Exceptions.

Ser, 2. *to be.*

Que yo sea,	*that I may be.*
etc.	*etc.*

Estar, 1. *to be.*

Que yo esté,	*that I may be.*
etc.	*etc.*

Haber, 2. (auxiliary) *to have.*

Que yo haya,	*that I may have.*
etc.	*etc.*

Dar, 1. *to give.*

Que yo dé,	*that I may give.*
etc.	*etc.*

Saber, 2. *to know.*

Que yo sepa,	*that I may know.*
etc.	*etc.*

Ir, 3. *to go.*

Que yo vaya,	*that I may go.*
etc.	*etc.*

Vocabulario.

El carbon, *the coal.*
El ejército, *the army.*
El empleo, *the employment.*
El invierno, *the winter.*
El momento, *the moment.*
La lengua, *the language.*
La leña, *the wood.*
Á menos que, *unless.*
Aunque, *although.*
Con tal que, *provided.*
Contrario, *contrary.*
Desgraciado, *unfortunate.*
Hasta que, *until.*
Listo, *ready.*
Menester, *necessary.*
Natural, *natural.*
Por más...que, *however.*
Satisfecho, *satisfied.*
Sorprendido, *surprised.*
Tonto, *foolish.*
Buscar, 1. *to look for.*
Convenir, 3. *to be proper.*
Convidar, 1. *to invite.*
Desear, 1. *to desire.*

Vocabulary.

Esperar, 1. *to wait.*
Marchar, 1. *to march.*
Preferir, 3. *to prefer.*
Preparar, 1. *to prepare.*
Pretender, 2. *to pretend.*
Querer, 2. *to grant.*
Sentir, 3. *to regret.*
Suplicar, 1. *to entreat.*
Temer, 2. *to fear.*
Ver, 2. *to see.*

Exercise 81.

1. ¿Qué quiere V. que yo haga? 2. Quiero que V. escriba á su amigo y que le diga que venga. 3. Me alegro (*I am glad*) que V. esté satisfecho de mi trabajo. 4. Estoy sorprendido de que V. no sepa

nada de eso. 5. Es necesario que salgamos temprano, pues debemos llegar á la ciudad antes de la noche. 6. Siento que V. no tenga el dinero que V. me prometió. 7. Es posible que las cartas lleguen hoy. 8. Es de desear que acabemos hoy. 9. Es mejor que V. no le diga nada. 10. No conviene que V. hable tanto. 11. Deseo que V. vaya en seguida á su casa. 12. Dios quiera que no lleguemos demasiado tarde. 13. ¿ Cree V. que él pueda venir la semana que viene ? 14. No creo que lo pueda. 15. Es tiempo que acabe el invierno, pues ya no tenemos carbón ni leña. 16. Si es verdad (*true*) que su padre llegue mañana, será menester prepararle un cuarto. 17. Déme V. una lección que sea más fácil. 18. ¿ Cuándo quiere V. que yo le devuelva el dinero ? 19. Devuélvamelo tan pronto como V. pueda. 20. He suplicado á mi amigo que venga á mi casa, pero él prefiere ir á la fonda. 21. Este hombre pretende que le den un empleo. 22. Que venga si quiere. 23. Queremos que VV. trabajen más. 24. El maestro desea que aprendamos la lengua inglesa. 25. Tememos que este hombre sea nuestro enemigo. 26. No apruebo que V. salga todas las noches. 27. Puede ser que él vaya á París. 28. Quiero que V. me diga lo que sea la verdad. 29. Quiero un maestro que no sea demasiado joven. 30. Nuestro padre no quiere que durmamos tan tarde. 31. No encuentro á ninguno que pueda prestarme el dinero que necesito. 32. Don Juan Morales es el mejor hombre que conozca. 33. Éste es el mejor vino que haya bebido. 34. Él me dará dinero hasta que yo haya encontrado un buen empleo. 35. Lo haré aunque no sepa muy bien hacerlo.

Exercise 82.

1. Captain Henry is the bravest officer I know in the army. 2. It is the best bread we have had this year. 3. Here is, I think, the last book he has written. 4. I am surprised that your brother should come at (*en*) this moment. 5. He wishes me to return to-morrow, but I don't think that I shall be able to do it. 6. It is unfortunate that you should have lost all your money. 7. It is better for you to arrive in the morning. 8. Is it true that he has said that ? 9. I don't think he has said it. 10. At what time do you think he will be here ? 11. I don't think he can be here before eleven. 12. It is impossible for me to go out so early. 13. Although he is poor he has more friends than you. 14. Do you think that I am foolish enough to believe that ? 15. Is it possible that you should have spent so much

money? 16. My father wishes me to go to the country with him. 17. We wish you to study your lessons. 18. The general wishes that every soldier be ready to march. 19. God grant that he may live long (*muchos años*)! 20. I wish him to come and to bring the money. 21. It is very natural that he should think that I am his friend. 22. It is well (*bueno*) that he should know it. 23. I am looking for a man who may be willing to lend me some money. 24. See that everything is ready. 25. I do not believe it, although he may say the (*lo*) contrary. 26. Wait till he comes. 27. I shall go out unless it rains. 28. We will wait for you, provided you do not come too late. 29. However rich he may be, he is unhappy. 30. Unless he invites me, I shall not go to his house. 31. I will buy that house when I have money enough. 32. He says he will come, provided they send him a carriage. 33. I do not wish you to speak so.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The **subjunctive mood** in Spanish is usually found in a dependent clause, and expresses doubt or uncertainty as to the facts or the result. The necessity for its use is oftenest indicated by the idea in the principal clause, but this is not always the case. The principal cases of the use of the subjunctive are: after words expressing —

a. Command, request, etc.:

Mando que venga,	*I order him to come.*
Le pido á V. que salga,	*I beg you to go out.*
Quiero que VV. trabajen,	*I wish that you should work.*

b. Suggestion, permission, approval, prohibition:

Propongo que V. venga,	*I suggest that you come.*
Permito que él se vaya,	*I allow him to go away.*
Tengo á bien que V. permanezca,	*I approve of your staying.*
Prohibo que lo hagan,	*I forbid their doing it.*

c. Emotion (such as *desire, joy, surprise, fear, etc.*):

Deseo que V. venga,	*I want you to come.*
Temo que él caiga,	*I am afraid he will fall.*
Me alegro que haga sol,	*I am glad that the sun is shining.*
Sienten que V. haya venido,	*They are sorry that you came.*

d. Doubt, denial, etc.:

Dudo que sea él,	*I doubt if it be he.*
Negamos que sepan,	*We deny that they know.*
¿ Cree V. que él esté malo ?	*Do you think that he is ill?*
No pienso que sea verdad,	*I don't think it is true.*

2. The subjunctive is also used in Spanish after an impersonal verb expressing an idea of *volition, doubt, necessity, contingency, uncertainty,* etc. (See Rule I.), as:

Es propio (conveniente *or* á proposito),	*It is proper.*
Es de desear que venga,	*It is desirable for him to come.*
Conviene,	*It becomes.*
Es bueno,	*It is proper* or *well.*
Es malo,	*It is wrong.*
Es necesario, } Es menester, }	*It is necessary.*
Es lástima,	*It is a pity.*
Es sorprendente,	*It is surprising.*
Es fácil,	*It is easy* or *possible.*
Es imposible que él no sepa,	*It is impossible that he does not know.*
Es tiempo,	*It is time.*
Es suficiente. Basta,	*It is sufficient.*
Es natural,	*It is natural.*
etc.	*etc.*

3. The subjunctive is also used when the verb of the second proposition expresses some *contingent* or *future* effect:

Lo compraré cuando tenga dinero,	*I will buy it when I have money.*
Le hablaré así que le vea,	*I will speak to him when I see him.*
Lo haré antes que él venga,	*I will do it before he comes.*

4. A *relative pronoun,* either used alone or preceded by a noun, and any of the words **solo**, *alone,* **ninguno**, *no, none, no one,* **pocos**, *few,* **cualquiera**, *whatever,* **quienquiera**, *whoever,* **nadie**. *nobody, no one,* **único**, *only thing,* **primero**, *first,* **último**, *last,* **más**, *more,* **mejor**, *best,* requires the subjunctive when there is an idea of *uncertainty:*

Busco **á un hombre que** quiera prestarme dinero,	*I am looking for a man willing to lend me money.*
Esto es, creo, lo único que le pertenezca,	*This is, I think, the only thing belonging to him.*
Hay pocos que lo sepan,	*There are few who know it.*
Quienquiera que lo vea, pensará como yo,	*Whoever sees it will think as I do.*
Cualquiera que sea su fortuna, él morirá pobre,	*Whatever be his fortune, he will die poor.*

5. A few *conjunctive expressions* require the subjunctive mood when they express a *doubt* or *uncertainty*. Such are:

Á fin que, *in order that.*	**Hasta que**, *until.*
Á menos que, *unless.*	**Lejos de que**, *far from.*
Antes que, *before.*	**Por poco que**, *however little.*
Aunque, *although.*	**Por mucho que**, } *however.*
Aun cuando, *although.*	**Por más que**, }
Bien que, *though.*	**Para que**, *in order that.*
En caso que, *in case that.*	**Siempre que**, *whenever.*
Con tal que, *provided that.*	**Supuesto que**, *supposing that.*
Dado que, *granting.*	**¡Ojalá!** *would to God!*

6. The perfect of the subjunctive is formed from the present of the subjunctive of the auxiliary **haber**, 2. ***to have***, and the past participle of the verb:

Que yo haya hablado,	*That I may have spoken.*
Que hayamos salido,	*That we may have gone out.*

Observation. — All the general rules given on the use of the present subjunctive apply to the perfect of the subjunctive.

7. The **present subjunctive** is generally used when the preceding verb is in the *present* or *future indicative*, and in the *imperative*.

Le ruego que venga,	*I beg him to come.*
Le rogaré que venga,	*I will beg him to come.*
Ruégale V. que venga,	*Beg him to come.*
Quiero que VV. trabajen,	*I wish that you should work.*
Es posible que yo vaya,	*I may possibly go.*

Lección XLII. Lesson XLII.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. The imperative is formed by adding the following terminations to the stem of the verbs:

1st Conjugation.	*2d Conjugation.*	*3d Conjugation.*
-a	**-e**	**-e**
-ad	**-ed**	**-id**

1st Conjugation.

Habl-**a**, *speak* (*thou*).
Habl-**ad**, *speak* (*ye*).

2d Conjugation.

Com-**e**, *eat* (*thou*).
Com-**ed**, *eat* (*ye*).

3d Conjugation.

Recib-**e**, *receive* (*thou*).
Recib-**id**, *receive* (*ye*).

2. The present subjunctive is used for the imperative in the first and third persons (for the formation of these forms see Lesson XLI.):

1st Conjugation.

Hablar, 1. *to speak.* **Comprar**, 1. *to buy.* **Cantar**, 1. *to sing.*

Yo habl-**o**, *I speak;* { Habl-**e** V. (*sing.*) *or* habl-**en** VV. (*pl.*), *speak* (*you*).
Habl-**emos**, *let us speak.*

Yo compr-**o**, *I buy;* { Compr-**e** V. (*sing.*) *or* compr-**en** VV. (*pl.*), *buy* (*you*).
Compr-**emos**, *let us buy.*

Yo cant-**o**, *I sing;* { Cant-**e** V. (*sing.*) *or* cant-**en** VV. (*pl.*), *sing* (*you*).
Cant-**emos**, *let us sing.*

2d and 3d Conjugations.

Comer, 2. *to eat.* **Beber**, 2. *to drink.* **Vender**, 2. *to sell.*
Decir, 3. *to say, to tell.* **Venir**, 3. *to come.* **Salir**, 3. *to go out.*

Yo com-**o**, *I eat;* { Com-**a** V. (*sing.*) or com-**an** VV. (*pl.*), *eat* (*you*).
Com-**amos**, *let us eat.*

Yo beb-**o**, *I drink;* { Beb-**a** V. (*sing.*) *or* beb-**an** VV. (*pl.*), *drink* (*you*).
Beb-**amos**, *let us drink.*

Yo vend-**o**, *I sell;* { Vend-**a** V. (*sing.*) *or* vend-**an** VV. (*pl.*), *sell* (*you*).
Vend-**amos**, *let us sell.*

Yo dig-**o**, *I say, I tell;* { Dig-**a** V. (*sing.*), *say or tell* (*you*).
Dig-**an** VV. (*pl.*), *say or tell* (*you*).
Dig-**amos**, *let us say or tell.*

Yo veng-**o**, *I come;* { Veng-**a** V. (*sing.*) *or* veng-**an** VV. (*pl.*), *come* (*you*).
Veng-**amos**, *let us come.*

Yo salg-**o**, *I go out;* { Salg-**a** V. (*sing.*) *or* salg-**an** VV. (*pl.*), *go* (*you*) *out.*
Salg-**amos**, *let us go out.*

RULE. — The **o** of the 1st person of the present indicative is changed into **e** and **en** for the 1st conjugation, and into **a** and **an** for the 2d and 3d conjugations.

Exceptions.

Ser, 2. *to be;* { Sea V. (*sing.*) *or* sean VV. (*pl.*), *be* (*you*).
Seamos, *let us be.*

Estar, 1. *to be;* { Esté V. (*sing.*) *or* estén VV. (*pl.*) *be* (*you*).
Estemos, *let us be.*

Dar, 1. *to give;* { Dé V. (*sing.*) *or* den VV. (*pl.*), *give* (*you*).
Demos, *let us give.*

Saber, 2. *to know;* { Sepa V. (*sing.*) *or* sepan VV. (*pl.*), *know* (*you*).
Sepamos, *let us know.*

Ir, 3. *to go;* { Vaya V. (*sing.*) *or* vayan VV. (*pl.*), *go* (*you*).
Vayamos, (*contract.* vamos), *let us go.*

Imperative with Pronouns.

Tráigame V. esto,	*Bring me this.*
No se lo dé V.,	*Do not give it to him.*
Véndanos V. su caballo,	*Sell us your horse.*
Préstemelo V.,	*Lend it to me.*
Búsquelos V.,	*Look for them.*
No lo corte V.,	*Do not cut it.*
Vengan VV. esta noche,	*Come this evening.*
No salgan VV. ahora,	*Do not go out now.*
Dígamelo V.,	*Tell it to me.*
No se lo diga V. á nadie,	*Do not tell it to anybody.*
Salgamos un rato,	*Let us go out for a moment.*

Ven aquí, Juanito,	*Come here, Johnny.*
Vuelva V. esta noche,	*Return this evening.*
No hablen VV. tanto,	*Do not speak so much.*
Trabajemos,	*Let us work.*
No hagas eso,	*Do not do that.*
Confórmate con tu suerte,	*Be satisfied with your lot.*
Ponga V. el libro sobre la mesa,	*Put the book on the table.*
Dígale V. á Juan que su padre ha llegado,	*Tell John that his father has arrived.*
Hablad á este hombre,	*Speak to that man.*

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El asunto, *the matter.*	**La verdad,** *the truth.*	**Emplear,** 1. *to employ.*
El boticario, *the druggist.*	**La virtud,** *the virtue.*	**Encender,** 2. *to light.*
El coche, *the coach.*	**Alto,** *loud.*	**Llevar,** 1. *to take.*
El correo, *the post, the mail.*	**Enfadado,** *angry.*	**Obedecer,** 2. *to obey.*
El estado, *the condition.*	**Ligero,** *quick.*	**Oír,** 3. *to hear.*
El favor, *the favor.*	**Pronto,** *quickly.*	**Olvidar,** 1. *to forget.*
El ruido, *the noise.*	**Quieto,** *quiet.*	**Pagar,** 1. *to pay.*
El temor, *the fear.*	**Turbulento,** *boisterous.*	**Practicar,** 1. *to practise.*
La canción, *the song.*	**Amar,** 1. *to love.*	**Prestar,** 1. *to lend.*
La patria, *the country.*	**Abrir,** 3, *to open.*	**Salir,** 3. *to leave.*
	Cantar, 1. *to sing.*	**Saltar,** 1. *to jump.*
	Correr, 2, *to run.*	**Tomar,** 1. *to take.*

Exercise 83.

1. No tenga V. miedo, el perro no muerde. 2. Emplee V. bien el tiempo. 3. Amemos nuestra patria. 4. Sepa V. sus lecciones mañana. 5. No digas todo lo que haces, pero hagas todo lo que dices. 6. Esté V. quieto. 7. Mándeme V. mis libros por el muchacho. 8. Seamos amigos. 9. Déme V. esto, lo necesito. 10. Pregunte V. si el Señor Martínez está en casa. 11. Vaya V. á casa del Señor Gutiérrez y dígale que le quiero ver. 12. Salga V. de aquí y no vuelva más. 13. Venga V. pronto, yo le necesito á V. 14. Dígame V. quién ha hecho esto. 15. Hágame V. el favor de (*to*) decirme dónde vive el médico. 16. Hay uno que vive en esta casa. 17. Sepa V. que soy el mejor amigo que V. tiene. 18. Tome V. este dinero y déselo á este pobre. 19. Hable V. sin temor, y diga la verdad. 20. Muchachos,

no jueguen en la calle. 21. Corra V. pronto y tráigame mi paraguas. 22. Hable V. á ese hombre, y pregúntele lo que quiere. 23. Háblele V. mismo, yo no hablo francés. 24. Tome V. un coche, si V. no quiere ir á pie. 25. No hagas eso, amiguito. 26. Déme V. la mano; muy bien, ahora salte V. 27. No me hable V., estoy enfadado con V. 28. Digamos siempre la verdad. 29. Piense V. en (*of*) mí. 30. Escríbame V. de París. 31. Créame, amigo, la cosa no es así. 32. Salgamos, ya es tarde. 33. Dénos V. nuestro dinero, lo necesitamos. 34. Lleve V. esa carta al correo; ya es tiempo. 35. Vámonos temprano. 36. No venga V. tan tarde mañana, pues tengo que salir.

Exercise 84.

1. **Take this key,** open my room, and bring me my stick. 2. Let us write our letters, the mail leaves to-night. 3. Come early to-morrow morning, we have a great deal to do. 4. Do not go out without me. 5. Write to us every week from Paris. 6. Give something to that poor man; he is hungry. 7. Be my friend. 8. Go out, I don't need you here. 9. Don't speak to that man, he is not your friend. 10. Take this letter to your father, and tell him that I wish to see him. 11. Speak louder, I cannot hear you. 12. Do me the favor to (*de*) give me a piece of bread. 13. Call that gentleman, he has forgotten something. 14. Give me something to (*que*) drink, I am very thirsty. 15. Ask that woman if Mr. Zamora is at home. 16. Do not run so fast, it is not late. 17. Do not believe what that man says, he never tells the truth. 18. Light the gas; we don't see anything here. 19. Shut the door; we do not wish to be seen. 20. Don't buy that house, it is in very poor (*mal*) condition. 21. Take this and give it to your sister. 22. Do not make so much noise, your little brother is sleeping. 23. Tell me all that you know about (*de*) this matter 24. Write to this merchant and tell him that we need blue cloth. 25. Go to the druggist's, but return quickly. 26. If you do not need your book, lend it to me. 27. I will tell you something, but do not tell it to anybody. 28. Obey your masters. 29. Let us love and practise virtue. 30. Let us see who is at the door. 31. Here is a dollar; take it and pay that man. 32. Do not be so boisterous, your mother is not well. 33. Come here, I have something to tell you. 34. Do not give her that, she is too small yet. 35. Let us sing a Spanish song.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The regular second person forms of the imperative are very little used, since the polite form of address (almost universal) requires the use of the third person forms of the present subjunctive. It will be noticed that the first person plural is also from the present subjunctive, and is not a true imperative form.

2. The second person singular of the imperative is the same as the third person singular of the present indicative (see Lessons XXXII. to XXXV.).

NOTE. — Exceptions to the above rule are: **decir, haber, ir, poner, salir, tener, venir.**

3. The second person plural is made from the infinitive by changing the final **r** to **d**. There are no exceptions to this rule.

4. The subject pronoun may be expressed or omitted with the true imperative forms. **Usted** or **ustedes** are, however, generally expressed. When used, the subject pronouns generally follow the verb.

NOTE. — If two or more imperatives occur in the same sentence, it is sufficient that the pronoun should accompany the first imperative:

Vaya V. á mi cuarto, y tráigame mi libro,	*Go to my room and bring me my book.*

5. The negative imperative of the second person is expressed by means of the subjunctive:

No hables, *do not speak.* No lo hagáis, *do not do it.*
No vengas, *do not come.*

6. The second person singular is generally used in proverbs, maxims, etc.:

Ama á tu prójimo como á ti mismo,	*Love thy neighbor as thyself.*

7. For rules referring to the place of the pronouns accompanying the imperative see L. 22, 30, 31. The student will have to bear in mind, however, that the pronouns **usted** and **ustedes** are always placed last in the imperative.

Lección XLIII. Lesson XLIII.

IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Regular Verbs.

1st Conjugation.

Que yo habl-**ara** *or* habl-**ase**,	*that I might* or *should speak.*
Que tú habl-**aras** *or* habl-**ases**,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst speak.*
Que él habl-**ara** *or* habl-ase,	*that he might* or *should speak.*
Que nosotros habl-**áramos** *or* habl-**ásemos**,	*that we might* or *should speak.*
Que vosotros habl-**arais** *or* habl-**aseis**,	*that you might* or *should speak.*
Que ellos habl-**aran** *or* habl-**asen**,	*that they might* or *should speak.*

2d Conjugation.

Vender, *to sell.*

Que yo vend-**iera** *or* vend-**iese**,	*that I might* or *should sell.*
Que tú vend-**ieras** *or* vend-**ieses**,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst sell.*
Que él vend-**iera** *or* vend-**iese**,	*that he might* or *should sell.*
Que nosotros vend-**iéramos** *or* vend-**iésemos**,	*that we might* or *should sell.*
Que vosotros vend-**ierais** *or* vend-**ieseis**,	*that you might* or *should sell.*
Que ellos vend-**ieran** *or* vend-**iesen**,	*that they might* or *should sell.*

3d Conjugation.

Recibir, *to receive.*

Que yo recib-**iera** *or* recib-**iese**,	*that I might* or *should receive.*
Que tú recib-**ieras** *or* recib-**ieses**,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst receive.*
Que él recib-**iera** *or* recib-**iese**,	*that he might* or *should receive.*
Que nosotros recib-**iéramos** *or* recib-**iésemos**,	*that we might* or *should receive.*
Que vosotros recib-**ierais** *or* recib-**ieseis**,	*that you might* or *should receive.*
Que ellos recib-**ieran** *or* recib-**iesen**,	*that they might* or *should receive.*

Irregular Verbs.

Tener, 2. *to have.*

Que yo tuviera *or* tuviese,	*that I might* or *should have.*
Que tú tuvieras *or* tuvieses,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst have.*
Que él tuviera *or* tuviese,	*that he might* or *should have.*
Que nosotros tuviéramos *or* tuviésemos,	*that we might* or *should have.*
Que vosotros tuvierais *or* tuvieseis,	*that you might* or *should have.*
Que ellos tuvieran *or* tuviesen,	*that they might* or *should have.*

Haber, 2. (auxiliary) *to have.*

Que yo hubiera *or* hubiese,	*that I might* or *should have.*
Que tú hubieras *or* hubieses,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst have.*
Que él hubiera *or* hubiese,	*that he might* or *should have.*
Que nosotros hubiéramos *or* hubiésemos,	*that we might* or *should have.*
Que vosotros hubierais *or* hubieseis,	*that you might* or *should have.*
Que ellos hubieran *or* hubiesen,	*that they might* or *should have.*

Estar, 1. *to be.*

Que yo estuviera *or* estuviese,	*that I might* or *should be.*
Que tú estuvieras *or* estuvieses,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst be.*
Que él estuviera *or* estuviese,	*that he might* or *should be.*
Que nosotros estuviéramos *or* estuviésemos,	*that we might* or *should be.*
Que vosotros estuvierais *or* estuvieseis,	*that you might* or *should be.*
Que ellos estuvieran *or* estuviesen,	*that they might* or *should be.*

Ser, 2. *to be.*

Que yo fuera *or* fuese,	*that I might* or *should be.*
Que tú fueras *or* fueses,	*that thou mightest* or *shouldst be.*
Que él fuera *or* fuese,	*that he might* or *should be.*
Que nosotros fuéramos *or* fuésemos,	*that we might* or *should be.*
Que vosotros fuerais *or* fueseis,	*that you might* or *should be.*
Que ellos fueran *or* fuesen,	*that they might* or *should be.*

Dar, 1. *to give.*

Que yo diera *or* diese,	*that I might* or *should give.*
etc.	*etc.*

Andar, 1. *to walk.*

Que yo anduviera *or* anduviese, *that I might* or *should walk.*
etc. *etc.*

Hacer, 2. *to make, to do.*

Que yo hiciera *or* hiciese, *that I might* or *should do.*
etc. *etc.*

Caer, 2. *to fall.*

Que yo cayera *or* cayese, *that I might* or *should fall.*
etc. *etc.*

Poder, 2. *to be able.*

Que yo pudiera *or* pudiese, *that I might* or *should be able.*
etc. *etc.*

Poner, 2. *to put.*

Que yo pusiera *or* pusiese, *that I might* or *should put.*
etc. *etc.*

Querer, 2. *to be willing.*

Que yo quisiera *or* quisiese, *that I might* or *should be willing*
etc. *etc.*

Saber, 2. *to know.*

Que yo supiera *or* supiese, *that I might* or *should know.*
etc. *etc.*

Traer, 2. *to bring.*

Que yo trajera *or* trajese, *that I might* or *should bring.*
etc. *etc.*

Conducir, 3. *to conduct, to take.*

Que yo condujera *or* condujese, *that I might* or *should conduct.*
etc. *etc.*

Pedir, 3. *to ask for.*

Que yo pidiera *or* pidiese, *that I might* or *should ask for.*
etc. *etc.*

Venir, 3. *to come.*

Que yo viniera *or* viniese, etc.	*that I might* or *should come. etc.*

Decir, 3. *to say, to tell.*

Que yo dijera *or* dijese, etc.	*that I might* or *should say. etc.*

Ir, 3. *to go.*

Que yo fuera *or* fuese, etc.	*that I might* or *should go. etc.*

Vocabulario.

El artículo, *the article.*
El asunto, *the business.*
El espejo, *the mirror.*
El gasto, *the expense.*
El idioma, *the language.*
El lugar, *the spot.*
El medio, *the means, the way.*
Aprobar, 1. *to approve.*
Arreglar, 1. *to arrange.*
Convidar, 1. *to invite.*
Dedicar, 1. *to devote.*
Devolver, 2. *to give back.*
Dudar, 1. *to doubt.*

Vocabulary.

Encontrar, 1. *to meet.*
Engañar, 1. *to deceive.*
Fabricar, 1. *to manufacture.*
Llorar, 1. *to weep, to cry.*
Permitir, 3. *to allow.*
Recomendar, 1. *to recommend.*
Suplicar, 1. *to entreat.*
Suponer, 2, *to suppose.*
Á crédito, *on credit.*
En seguida, *immediately.*
En tiempo pasado, *formerly.*
Por precisión, *by necessity.*
Teórico, *theoretical.*

Exercise 85.

1. Mi maestro quería que yo aprendiese una lección más larga. 2. ¿ Qué quería V. que él hiciera sin dinero ? 3. Que comprase las mercancías á crédito. 4. Estos dos caballeros querían que yo les vendiese mi caballo. 5. Yo no creía que fuese tan tarde. 6. ¿ Temía V. que él saliese sin nosotros ? 7. Lo único que yo temía era que él no nos esperase. 8. Era el único almacén donde pudiéramos hallar este artículo. 9. Él quería que yo le dijera lo que yo debía, antes que me diera el dinero. 10. ¿ Dudaba V. que él viniera como lo

había prometido? 11. ¿Aprobaba V. que él me hablase así? ¿2. Era menester que gastásemos muchísimo dinero para arreglar nuestra casa. 13. Yo no creía que V. engañase á sus amigos. 14. Era el único medio que nos quedase, pues nuestros asuntos no permitían que hiciéramos nuevos gastos. 15. Cuando salí para Francia, mi padre me recomendó que viviese con personas que no hablasen otro idioma más que el francés y con quienes tuviese que hablarlo por precisión, bien ó mal. 16. También que leyese algunos buenos autores, y hecho todo esto por algun tiempo, me dedicase entonces al estudio teórico. 17. ¡Quién hubiera pensado que nos encontraríamos en un lugar como éste, después de tanto tiempo que no nos hemos visto! 18. Yo le había escrito á fin de que viniera. 19. He comido mucho, y más de lo que hubiera debido. 20. Yo iba todas las mañanas á su casa para que me diera una lección de español. 21. Cantaban aunque tuviesen gana de llorar. 22. Él deseaba que yo fuese en seguida á su casa. 23. Yo le había suplicado que viniese temprano, pero llegó el último de todos. 24. Aquel hombre pretendía que le pagasen mucho más de lo que había ganado. 25. Él estaba muy sorprendido de que no supiésemos nada de esto.

Exercise 86.

1. What did you wish me to do? 2. I wished that you should write to your friend, and that you should tell him to return. 3. I was surprised that he had not sent me the money. 4. It was to be desired that they should finish in time. 5. When did he wish us to return the money? 6. He wished that you should return it as soon as possible. 7. I did not think that he was so ill. 8. Our teacher wished that we would come earlier to school. 9. We were afraid that it would rain the whole day. 10. He was looking for a man who would lend him money. 11. I went to his house, although I was very tired. 12. Our father did not wish that we should go out so late. 13. He was the best friend I had in the city. 14. It was the best wine that I had ever drunk. 15. It was very unfortunate that he had lost all his money. 16. Although he was poor, he had many friends. 17. It was very natural that he should speak so. 18. He could not spend so much money, however rich he might be. 19. I would not go to his house unless he invited me. 20. He said he would come (*vendría*) provided you would send him a carriage.

21. The Venetians were formerly the only people who manufactured and sold mirrors. 22. I was afraid he would come without his brother. 23. I did not think that you were so foolish. 24. It was necessary for us to go every evening to his house. 25. We did not think that it was so late. 26. Mr. Martin did not wish me to go out without him. 27. He was the only one who spoke Spanish. 28. We did not suppose he would arrive in time. 29. My mother wished us to sing for her.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The imperfect of the subjunctive has two forms: The first ending in:

-ra -ras -ra -ramos -rais -ran

and the second in:

-se -ses -se -semos -seis -sen

While the true endings are **-ara** and **-ase, -iera** and **-iese,** to facilitate the construction the forms may be made from the 3d person plural of the past definite by changing the termination **ron** into the terminations given above.

Examples.

Tuvie-**ron**, *they had;* { tuvie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. / tuvie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.

Hubie-**ron**, *they had;* { hubie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. / hubie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.

Estuvie-**ron**, *they were;* { estuvie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. / estuvie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.

Fue-**ron**, *they were;* { fue-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. / fue-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.

Habla-**ron**, *they spoke;* { habla-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. / habla-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.

Comie-**ron**, *they ate;* { comie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. / comie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.

Recibie-**ron**, *they received;*	recibie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. recibie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.
Pudie-**ron**, *they were able;*	pudie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. pudie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.
Supie-**ron**, *they knew;*	supie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. supie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.
Dije-**ron**, *they said;*	dije-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. dije-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.
Vinie-**ron**, *they came;*	vinie-**ra**, -**ras**, -**ra**, -**ramos**, -**rais**, -**ran**. vinie-**se**, -**ses**, -**se**, -**semos**, -**seis**, -**sen**.
etc.	etc.

NOTE. — The graphic accent must be inserted in these forms in accordance with the usage on pp. 234–235.

2. The **imperfect subjunctive** is used when the verb of the 1st proposition which requires a subjunctive after it, is in one of the past tenses of the indicative:

Yo quería Yo deseé Yo he solicitado Yo había solicitado	que él viniera ó viniese.	*I wished* *I desired* *I have entreated* *I had entreated*	*that he would come.*

OBSERVATION. — All the general rules given on the use of the present subjunctive apply to the **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive.**

3. The **present subjunctive** may, however, be used after the past indefinite, when the time of the action is not definitely stated:

Le he suplicado que venga á mi casa.	*I have entreated him to come to my house.*

4. The **present** or the **imperfect subjunctive** may be used when the verb of the 1st proposition is in the *futuro perfecto:*

Él habrá pretendido que le dejen (dejaran ó dejasen) libre.	*He will have pretended that they should let him free.*

5. The **imperfect subjunctive** is used instead of the present when followed by a conditional clause:

¿Cree V. que me lo diesen, si les pidiera?	*Do you think they would give it to me, if I should ask them.*

6. The **pluperfect subjunctive** is formed from the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary **haber,** *to have;* and the past participle of the verb:

Que yo hubiera *or* hubiese hablado ;	*that I might have spoken.*
Que él hubiera *or* hubiese salido ;	*that I might have gone out*

Lección XLIV. Lesson XLIV.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Yo hablar-**ía,**	*I should* or *would speak.*
Tu hablar-**ías,**	*Thou shouldst* or *wouldst speak*
Él hablar-**ía,**	*He should* or *would speak.*
Nosotros hablar-**íamos,**	*We should* or *would speak.*
Vosotros hablar-**íais,**	*You should* or *would speak.*
Ellos hablar-**ían,**	*They should* or *would speak.*
Yo comer-**ía,**	*I should* or *would eat.*
Tú comer-**ías,**	*Thou shouldst* or *wouldst eat.*
Él comer-**ía,**	*He should* or *would eat.*
Nosotros comer-**íamos,**	*We should* or *would eat.*
Vosotros comer-**íais,**	*You should* or *would eat.*
Ellos comer-**ían,**	*They should* or *would eat.*
Yo recibir-**ía,**	*I should* or *would receive.*
Tú recibir-**ías,**	*Thou shouldst* or *wouldst receive.*
Él recibir-**ía,**	*He should* or *would receive.*
Nosotros recibir-**íamos,**	*We should* or *would receive.*
Vosotros recibir-**íais,**	*You should* or *would receive.*
Ellos recibir-**ían,**	*They should* or *would receive.*
Yo daría,	*I should* or *would give.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo tendría,	*I should* or *would have.*
etc.	*etc.*

Yo habría,	*I should* or *would have.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo estaría,	*I should* or *would be.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo sería,	*I should* or *would be.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo haría,	*I should* or *would make* (or *do*).
etc.	*etc.*
Yo sabría,	*I should* or *would know.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo pondría,	*I should* or *would put.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo podría,	*I should* or *would be able.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo querría,	*I should* or *would be willing.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo valdría,	*I should* or *would be worth.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo diría,	*I should* or *would say.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo saldría,	*I should* or *would go out.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo vendría,	*I should* or *would come.*
etc.	*etc.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
¿Quién diría que este hombre es tan rico?	Who would say that that man is so rich?
¿Que haría V. si V. fuese rico?	What would you do if you were rich?
Yo compraría una casa grande.	I would buy a large house.
Si yo supiera hacerlo, lo haría.	If I knew how to do it, I would do it.
Yo escribiría en inglés si pudiera.	I would write in English if I could.

Yo daría mucho para saber la verdad.	I would give much to know the truth.
¿Qué le escribiría V.?	What would you write to him?
Yo le escribiría todo lo que he oído.	I would write all I have heard.
¿Cuánto dinero necesitaría V.?	How much money would you need?
Yo necesitaría á lo menos cien duros.	I would need at least one hundred dollars.
¿Estaría V. aquí si V. pudiera salir?	Would you be here if you could go out?
Yo saldría en seguida.	I would go out immediately.
V. *debería* venir conmigo.	You *ought* to come with me.
Yo *quisiera* saber dónde está mi hermano.	I *should like to* know where my brother is.
Deberíamos haber salido más temprano.	We *ought to have* gone out sooner.

Vocabulario.

El concepto, *the opinion.*
El motivo, *the motive.*
El precio, *the price.*
El socorro, *the assistance.*
El viento, *the wind.*
La clase, *the class.*
La cosa, *the matter of importance.*
La deuda, *the debt.*
La fresa, *the strawberry.*
La mentira, *the falsehood.*
La recompensa, *the recompense.*
Las señas, *the direction.*
Cansado, *tired.*
Hasta, *until, as far as.*
Haragán, *lazy.*

Vocabulary.

¡Ojalá! *would to God!*
Por cierto, *certainly.*
Adelantar, 1. *to be fast.*
Cambiar 1, *to exchange.*
Descubrir, 3. *to discover.*
Dirigir, 3. *to direct.*
Examinar, 1. *to examine.*
Formar, 1. *to form.*
Jugar, 1. *to play.*
Marchar, 1. *to go.*
Molestar, 1. *to trouble.*
Obligar, 1. *to oblige.*
Pagar, 1. *to pay.*
Pegar, 1. *to strike.*
Repetir, 3. *to repeat.*

Exercise 87.

1. Yo aprendería el francés si tuviera tiempo de estudiar. 2. Colón prometió una recompensa al primero que descubriera la tierra. 3. Si V. fuera al campo este año, yo iría también. 4. Los muchachos habrían comido todas las fresas del jardín si no hubieran temido ser castigados. 5. V. podría saber la verdad si V. quisiera. 6. Yo le habría mandado su carta si hubiera sabido donde V. vivía. 7. ¿Querría V. hacerme un favor? 8. Con mucho gusto; ¿que desea V.? 9. Quisiera

que V. me llevase esta carta al correo. 10. Nada más fácil, déme V. la carta. 11. ¿ Podría V. hacer eso sin mí ? 12. Podría hacerlo si no estuviese tan cansado. 13. Llovería si no hiciera tanto viento. 14. Sería bueno que V. fuese á verle. 15. Si hubieramos recibido el dinero que esperábamos, habríamos salido con el vapor francés. 16. Si V. supiera lo que él ha dicho de su amigo, V. no estaría satisfecho. 17. ¿ Cree V. que si él no viniese, iría yo á verle ? 18. ¡ Ojalá no hubiera yo perdido mi dinero ! 19. Si lloviese esta tarde, y no pudiéramos ir al campo, iríamos al teatro esta noche. 20. Este hombre tendría más dinero, si lo hubiese querido. 21. Aunque fuésemos ricos, no pagaríamos el precio que nos pide. 22. Beberíamos si tuviésemos mejor agua. 23. El S. D. Pedro Molina me dijo que dejaría á V. sus señas para dirigirle sus cartas en París, y con este motivo me he tomado la libertad de molestar á V. 24. Yo no cambiaría mi caballo por el suyo. 25. Quisiera que V. examinase mi reloj, pues no marcha bien. 26. ¿ Marchaba bien, antes ? 27. Adelantaba un poco, pero no era cosa; cinco minutos cada veinticuatro horas. 28. ¿ Porqué no me escribió V. cuando estaba en París ? 29. Yo le habría escrito, si no hubiese pensado que V. había salido de la ciudad. 30. Si tuviéramos tiempo, iríamos con V. hasta la ciudad.

Exercise 88.

1. What would you do, if you were invited to that ball ? 2. I should certainly not go. 3. I should tell a falsehood if I said that. 4. Would you like to go with me ? 5. I would go, if I had time. 6. That poor man would have died without assistance, if I had not come in time. 7. Would you have received my letter in time, if I had written to you ? 8. No, your letter would have arrived too late. 9. What would you have done, if he had struck you ? 10. He never would have struck me; he is afraid of me. 11. Would you repeat what he said ? 12. I would repeat it, if you wished. 13. We would buy that house, if it were not too small for us. 14. Would you buy mine ? 15. I would buy it, if you sold it. 16. You would be now in the first class, if you had not been so lazy. 17. I should like to see your brother; where is he now ? 18. He must be in his room, if he has not gone out. 19. You ought to have spoken to that man when he was here. 20. Were you not afraid that he would go out without you ? 21. Yes, I was afraid he would forget me. 22. I should wish

them to be here to-morrow morning early. 23. It would be necessary for him to give me at least two hundred dollars. 24. I wish that I had never known him. 25. Had I seen the new comedy, I would have told you how it was. 26. If you always worked as much as to-day, you would soon be rich. 27. What opinion would you have formed of me, if I had done what they wished me to do? 28. That young man would not pay his debts, if he were not obliged. 29. If I had thought that you were sick, I would not have gone out. 30. I would not speak to that man, although he were rich.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. The conditional tense is regularly formed by adding the endings:

-ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, -íais, -ían,

to the whole infinitive, taken as stem:

Hablaría,	*I should* or *would speak.*
Comería,	*I should* or *would eat.*
Recibiría,	*I should* or *would receive.*
etc.	*etc.*

This conditional has therefore all the irregularities of the future.

2. The conditional is used after a past tense to express an idea which would be in the future, if the principal verb were present:

Dijo que lo compraría,	*he said he would buy it.*
(Dice que lo comprará,	*he says he will buy it.*)
Pensaba que vendría,	*I used to think that he would come.*
(Pienso que vendrá,	*I think he will come.*)

3. It is used to express a conclusion after a condition with implied negation:

Si tuviese (tuviera) dinero, compraría la casa,	*If he had money, he would buy the house.*
Me iría, si viniera,	*If he should come, I should go away.*

NOTE. — The condition may be replaced by some equivalent expression, or omitted altogether.

Haciendo eso, V. tendría razon,	*In doing that, you would be right* i. e., *if you did that, etc.*
No lo diría,	*I would n't say that (if I thought as you do).*

4. The first form of the imperfect subjunctive (-ra) may be used in conditional sentences instead of the conditional. Thus we may say:

Si tuviese dinero, compraría la casa,
Si tuviera dinero, compraría la casa,
Si tuviese dinero, comprara la casa,
Si tuviera dinero, comprara la casa,
} *If I had money, I would buy the house.*

NOTE. — The second form of the imperfect subjunctive (**-se**) can only be used in the condition.

5. The conditional may be used to express past probability:

Tendría V. frío, *you must have been cold.*

6. The past conditional is formed from the conditional of **haber,** and the past participle of the verb.

Él habría hablado, *he would have spoken.*

7. *Potential Mood.*

1. **May** and **can** may be translated either by the *present indicative* or by the *present subjunctive* of the verb **poder,** 2. *to be able;* and also by the *present subjunctive* of the verb used in the sentence:

Puedo venir,	*I can come.*
Se puede que venga,	*I may come.*
Déme V. el dinero para que pueda pagar lo que debo *or* Déme V. el dinero para que pague lo que debo,	*Give me the money, that I may pay what I owe.*

2. **Could, might, should, would.**

Could is rendered by the *conditional* of the verb **poder,** when a condition is implied, and by the *imperfect* or preterit of the same verb when it implies power:

Yo podría ir si quisiera,	*I could go if I wished.*
Yo no podía ir solo, Yo no pude ir solo,	*I could not* (was not able to) *go alone.*

3. **Might** is translated by the conditional of the verb **poder** when power is implied:

Él podría venir si quisiera, *He might come if he wished.*

When implying *possibility* it is expressed in the same way as **may**:

Se puede que venga, *He may* or *might come.*

4. **Should,** implying *duty,* or meaning **ought to,** is rendered by the *conditional* of the verb **deber**:

V. debería venir conmigo, *You ought to come with me.*
Deberían obedecer, *They should obey.*

5. **Should like to** is rendered by the imperfect subjunctive or conditional of the verb **querer**:

Quisiera *or* querría verle, *I should like to see him.*

6. **Would,** implying *willingness,* is rendered by the imperfect indicative or preterit of the verb **querer**:

No quería (*or* no quiso) hablar, *He would not speak.*

7. **Might have** and **should have** are in most cases translated by the conditional of the verbs **poder** and **deber** with the infinitive of **haber**:

Él podría haber venido, *He might have come.*
Él debería haber venido, *He should have come.*

The imperfect subjunctive may be used in exclamations:

¡ Quién me diera á conocer ! *I should like to know !*

Lección XLV. Lesson XLV.

SUBJUNCTIVE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT.

1. Haber, 2. — **2. Tener**, 2. *to have.*

Hubiere — tuviere,	*I shall* or *will have.*
Hubieres — tuvieres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt have.*
Hubiere — tuviere,	*he shall* or *will have.*
Hubiéremos — tuviéremos,	*we shall* or *will have.*
Hubiereis — tuviereis,	*you shall* or *will have.*
Hubieren — tuvieren,	*they shall* or *will have.*

3. Estar, 1. — **4 Ser**, 2. *to be.*

Estuviere — fuere,	*I shall* or *will be.*
Estuvieres — fueres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be.*
Estuviere — fuere,	*he shall* or *will be.*
Estuviéremos — fuéremos,	*we shall* or *will be.*
Estuviereis — fuereis,	*you shall* or *will be.*
Estuvieren — fueren,	*they shall* or *will be.*

5. Hablar, 1. *to speak.* **6. Comer**, 2. *to eat.* **7. Recibir**, 3. *to receive.*

Hablare — comiere — recibiere,	*I shall* or *will speak — eat — receive.*
Hablares — comieres — recibieres,	*thou shalt* or *wilt speak — eat — receive.*
Hablare — comiere — recibiere,	*he shall* or *will speak — eat — receive.*
Habláremos — comiéremos — recibiéremos,	*we shall* or *will speak — eat — receive.*
Hablareis — comiereis — recibiereis,	*you shall* or *will speak — eat — receive.*
Hablaren — comieren — recibieren,	*they shall* or *will speak — eat — receive.*

Vocabulario.

El alojamiento, *the lodging.*
El invierno, *the winter.*
El lugar, *the place.*
La amistad, *the friendship.*
La noticia, *the news.*
Frío, *cold.*
Acabar, 1. *to finish.*

Vocabulary.

Aconsejar, 1. *to advise.*
Acontecer, 2. *to happen.*
Encontrar, 1. *to find, to meet.*
Mandar, 1. *to order.*
Olvidar, 1. *to forget.*
Padecer, 2. *to suffer.*
Prescribir, 3. *to prescribe.*

Exercise 89.

1. Si el próximo invierno fuere tan frío como el último, los pobres padecerán muchísimo. 2. ¿ Irá V. á pasar el domingo conmigo en el campo? 3. Si yo hubiere acabado lo que tengo que hacer, iré con mucho gusto. 4. Tu padre me ha dicho que si tú estudiares bien, te dará un bonito reloj. 5. No saldré mañana, si el tiempo fuere tan malo como hoy. 6. Si viere V. á su padre mañana, no olvide lo que le he dicho. 7. Llevaremos á su hermano con nosotros, si fuere posible. 8. Compraré la casa en que vivo, cuando tuviere dinero. 9. Si almorzare temprano mañana, iré á ver á mi amigo. 10. No olvidaremos nada de lo que la amistad prescribiere.

Exercise 90.

1. They have promised to tell me all that shall happen while I shall be (am) absent. 2. Tell your friend when you (shall) meet him, that I have good news for him. 3. If you breakfast to-morrow at (*en*) the same place, bring me the umbrella which I forgot there. 4. You must do, my friend, all that your father (shall) commands you. 5. The physician has advised my brother to go to the country, if the weather is not any better. 6. If you are unwell in the country, come back to the city. 7. If we should have money next month, we will send you some. 8. When I find a good teacher, I will learn Spanish. 9. We will write to you if we should be satisfied with (*de*) our new lodging. 10. We will go out, when we have dined.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The **future** of the **subjunctive,** of which the terminations are

-re, -res, -re, -remos, -reis, -ren,

expresses a positive future conditional action, and is therefore used in conditional phrases with **si,** *if,* to denote a future time. It is also used with **cuando,** *when,* and other relatives, when future time is expressed.

The rules given for the use of the present of the subjunctive are applicable to the future of the subjunctive when the sense is conditional or future. The future of the subjunctive is not

of frequent use, and occurs in the sentence to give more energy and precision to the idea expressed.

The **future perfect** of the **subjunctive** is formed from the future of the subjunctive of the auxiliary **haber**, *to have;* and the past participle of the verb.

Lección XLVI. Lesson XLVI.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Government of the infinitive without preposition:

Some of the principal verbs requiring **no preposition** *before the following infinitive:*

Aconsejar, 1. *to advise.*
Acostumbrar, 1. *to accustom.*
Afirmar, 1. *to affirm.*
Concebir, 3. *to conceive.*
Confesar, 1. *to confess.*
Contar, 1. *to relate.*
Creer, 2. *to believe.*
Deber, 2. *to owe, must.*
Declarar, 1. *to declare.*
Dejar, 1. *to let, to leave.*
Desear, 1. *to desire.*
Esperar, 1. *to hope.*
Gustar, *to please, to like.*
Hacer, 2. *to make, to do.*
Imaginar, 1. *to imagine.*
Intentar, 1. *to intend.*
Mandar, 1. *to order.*
Manifestar, 1. *to manifest.*
etc. *etc.*

Necesitar, 1. *to need.*
Negar, 1. *to deny.*
Oír, 3. *to hear.*
Parecer, 2. *to appear.*
Pensar, 1. *to think, to intend.*
Poder, 2. *to be able.*
Preferir, 3. *to prefer.*
Presumir, 3. *to presume.*
Pretender, 2. *to pretend.*
Prohibir, 3. *to forbid.*
Prometer, 2. *to promise.*
Protestar, 1. *to protest.*
Querer, 2. *to be willing.*
Sentir, 3. *to feel, to regret.*
Soler, 2. *to be accustomed.*
Temer, 2. *to fear.*
Ver, 2. *to see.*
etc. *etc.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Deseo tener dinero.	I wish to have money.
El afirma haber dicho la verdad.	He affirms that he has told the truth.
Temo ver á mi amigo.	I fear to see my friend.
Veo venir mucha gente.	I see many people coming.
Osé decirle la verdad.	I dared to tell him the truth.
Oigo llamar á la puerta.	I hear (some one) knocking at the door.

2. Government of the infinitive with the preposition **á**:

Some of the principal verbs requiring the preposition **á** *before the following infinitive:*

Animar, 1. *to encourage.*
Aprender, 2. *to learn.*
Aspirar, 1. *to aspire.*
Ayudar, 1. *to help.*
Comenzar, 1. *to commence.*
Condenar, 1. *to condemn.*
Consentir, 3. *to consent.*
Convidar, 1. *to invite.*
Echar, 1. *to begin.*
Empezar, 1. *to begin.*
Enseñar, 1. *to teach.*
Habituar, 1. *to accustom.*
Inclinar, 1. *to incline.*
Invitar, 1. *to invite.*
Obligar, 1. *to oblige.*
Pasar, 1. *to pass.*
Principiar, 1. *to begin.*
Salir, 3. *to go out.*
Tender, 2. *to aim.*
Venir, 3. *to come.*
Volver, 2. *to return.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Autorizo á V. *á* hablar.	I authorize you to speak.
Él vino *á* visitarme.	He came to visit me.
Salí *á* ver los soldados.	I went out to see the soldiers.
Él me enseña *á* cantar.	He teaches me to sing.
Nos convidó *á* comer con él.	He invited us to dine with him.

3. Government of the infinitive with the preposition **de**:

Some of the verbs requiring the preposition **de** *before the following infinitive:*

Cesar, 1. *to cease.*
Dejar, 1. *to leave.*
Disuadir, 3. *to dissuade.*
Encargar, 1. *to commission.*
Excusar, 1. *to excuse.*
Eximir, 3. *to free.*
Jurar, 1. *to swear.*
Rabiar, 1. *to rage.*
Tratar, 1. *to try.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Cesó *de* venir aquí.	He ceased coming here.
Me encargó *de* darle á V. esta carta.	He requested me to give you this letter.

4. Government of the infinitive with the preposition **para**:

Lo hago *para* complacerle á V.	I do it to please you.
Trabajo *para* ganar dinero.	I work to earn money.

5. Government of the infinitive with the preposition **en**:

Le ocupo *en* escribir una carta.	I employ him to write a letter.
Persiste *en* querer salir.	He insists on going out.

6. Government of the infinitive with the preposition **con:**

Le entretengo *con* leerle algo interesante.	I amuse him by reading something interesting to him.

7. The infinitive used with the *article:*

Mucho temo el *verle* venir.	I much fear to see him come.
El perfecto *tocar* de este músico me encanta.	The perfect playing of this musician delights me.
No es tan fácil el *escribir* un buen poema.	It is not so easy to write a good poem.
Al *verle*, me fuí.	On seeing him I went away.
Al *salir*, recibió una carta.	On going out, he received a letter.
Enfermó del mucho *beber*.	He became sick from much drinking.
Al *ir* á verle, le encontré.	In going to see him, I met him.

Vocabulario.

El centavo, *the cent.*
El paseo, *the walk.*
El viaje, *the journey.*
La autorización, *the authorization.*
La dificultad, *the difficulty.*
La intención, *the intention.*
La página, *the page.*
La traducción, *the translation.*
Bajo, *low.*
Dispuesto, *disposed.*
Inocente, *innocent.*
Seguro, *sure.*
Tal, *such as.*
Acostumbrar, 1. *to accustom.*
Acusar, 1. *to accuse.*
Autorizar, 1. *to authorize.*
Ayudar 1. *to help.*
Complacer, 2. *to please.*
Consistir, 3. *to consist.*
Copiar, 1. *to copy.*

Vocabulary.

Dar (1.) **un paseo,** *to take a walk.*
Deber, 2. *must.*
Descansar, 1. *to rest.*
Dibujar, 1. *to draw.*
Encargar, 1. *to charge.*
Entender, 2. *to understand.*
Excusar, 1. *to excuse.*
Esperar, 1. *to expect.*
Gobernar, 1. *to manage, to govern.*
Gritar, 1. *to cry.*
Inducir, 3. *to induce.*
Obligar, 1. *to compel.*
Osar, 1. *to dare.*
Partir, 3. *to leave.*
Pensar, 1. *to intend.*
Resolver, 2. *to resolve.*
Soler 2. *to be in the habit.*
Visitar, 1. *to visit.*
Volver (2.) **á hacer,** 2. *to do again.*

Exercise 91.

1. Creo haber visto á su hermano en el concierto, pero no estoy seguro si era él. 2. ¿ Me promete V. venir mañana ? 3. Yo se lo prometo á V. 4. Acostumbro comer y dormir poco. 5. V. no me deja

trabajar con su mucho hablar. 6. No podremos salir hoy, porque tenemos muchísimo que hacer. 7. Su amigo de V. debe saber á que hora llega el correo. 8. ¿ Quién le ha autorizado á V. á hacer eso ? 9. Nadie me ha autorizado, pero yo creía poder hacerlo sin autorización. 10. No estoy acostumbrado comer tanto. 11. Mi amigo vino á visitarme ayer, pero no estábamos en casa. 12. El comenzó hablando bajo y acabó gritando. 13. Mi padre me ha encargado de decirle á V. que sentía mucho no poder mandarle el dinero hoy. 14. Nunca le excusaré de haber hablado así. 15. Vengo á ver si ha llegado de la Habana el señor Alvárez. 16. No puedo decírselo, porque no lo sé. 17. ¿ Porqué trabaja V. tan tarde ? 18. Lo hago para complacerle á mi padre. 19. Este hombre no entiende gobernar su casa. 20. He resuelto no salir de la ciudad este verano. 21. ¿ Á dónde va V. ahora ? 22. Voy á visitar á algunos amigos que han llegado de Francia. 23. La dificultad consiste en saber dónde hallar al señor Romero. 24. Anduve todo el día para ver si encontraba una casa bastante grande para mi familia. 25. Preste dos libros á su amigo de V., pero él no ha vuelto á traérmelos. 26. Acabo de ver al Señor Juliano en la calle. 27. Me dijo que acababa de llegar de Europa. 28. Mis hijas aprenden á dibujar con el Señor Rondel. 29. El banquero nos convidó á comer, pero no pudimos ir. 30. Aquel profesor fué el que me enseñó á hablar inglés.

Exercise 92.

1. We went out this morning to see the procession, but we did not see anything; for we arrived too late. 2. My brother begins to speak Spanish 3. I went to see your brother last Sunday, but they told me that he was not in (the) town. 4. I am working now to rest this evening. 5. I intend to leave at the end of this week. 6. What have you resolved to do ? 7. I have resolved to sell my house, and to buy a larger one. 8. When are you going to bring me my books ? 9. I am going to bring them to-morrow. 10. The physician has advised me not to go out to-day. 11. He continued to sing and I to write. 12. I am in the habit of writing every week to my family. 13. If you will help me to finish my translation, I will help you to copy these pages. 14. You cannot compel me to do this. 15. I am disposed to pay what is right, but not one cent more. 16. Nothing will induce me to visit him. 17. He thought that he could do it without me, but he very soon saw that it was impossible. 18. I dared to tell

him the truth, and he forgave me. 19. We were invited to go to the country, but we could not leave our work. 20. If *I* do it, it is only to please you. 21. We wish to have money to go to the theater. 22. He protests that he never had such an intention. 23. I fear not to have money enough for my journey. 24. Will you promise me never to do that again? 25. I cannot promise that. 26. Will you tell your brother that we expect him to-morrow? 27. We are going to take a walk this evening, will you come with us? 28. We cannot go, we have too much to do. 29. Do you know how to speak French? 30. No, sir, I only speak English. 31. He accuses me of having done that, but I assure you that I am innocent.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Some Spanish verbs require no preposition before another verb in the infinitive mood. Such are principally the verbs which indicate *desire*, *wish*, *fear*, *doubt*, *need*, *duty*, and also those which express a *thought* or *speech*, *command*, *advice*, *prohibition*, and a few others as given above. Many of these verbs may also be used with the present indicative and the conjunction **que**:

Él cuenta que ha ganado mucho dinero,	*He says that he has earned much money.*

2. Although according to the Spanish Academy the verb **decir**, 3. *to say*, *to tell*, must never be followed by an infinitive, many writers do not adhere to this rule:

Añadían el perjuicio que decían recibir. — QUINTANA.	*They added the prejudice which they said they were receiving.*

NOTE. — The verb **decir** requires the preposition **á** before a person.

Dije á mi hermano que viniese,	*I told my brother to come.*

3. Other verbs require in Spanish the preposition **á** before another verb in the infinitive mood.

Such are principally those which express a *destination*, *encouragement*, *habit*, *propriety*, etc., and others given above.

Verbs which indicate *motion*, as **venir**, 3. *to come ;* **salir**, 3. *to go out ;* belong to the same category.

4. The verb **comenzar**, 1. **empezar**, 1. and **acabar**, 1. require the preposition **por** in the sense of *to begin with*, and *to end by :*

La diversión comenzó por cantar, y acabó por llorar,	*The amusement began with singing and ended with crying.*

Note. — In cases like the above, the *gerund* is more generally used :

Comenzó hablando bajo y acabó gritando,	*He began speaking low and ended by shouting.*

5. Those verbs which govern the infinitive with the preposition **de** are principally those which express *distance*, *cessation*, *accusation*, *discussion*, and a few others :

6. The preposition **para** is used before the infinitive to express more forcibly an *intention*, and whenever the English preposition **to** may be rendered by **in order to :**

Trabajo ahora para descansar luego,	*I am working now to rest later.*

7. Those verbs which express *occupation* or *insistence* require the preposition **en** before the infinitive :

Me ocupa en leer,	*He occupies me in reading.*
Persiste en decirlo,	*He persists in saying so.*

8. The preposition **con** governs in the infinitive those verbs which indicate *entertainment*, *diversion*, *amusement*, etc. :

Le entretengo con contarle cuentos,	*I amuse him by telling him stories.*

Note. — The *gerund* is oftener used, however, in such cases :

Le divierto tocando el piano,	*I amuse him by playing on the piano.*

9. Some verbs may take or omit either of the prepositions according to their meaning :

Este hombre no entiende hacer eso,	*That man does not understand how to do that.*
No entiendo de meterme en negocios ajenos,	*I don't mean to meddle with other people's business.*
Acerté á verle al ir á su casa,	*I succeeded in seeing him on going to his house.*

He acertado en hablar con él, — *I have done right in speaking to him.*

NOTE. — There are even verbs which have different meanings with the same preposition :

Dejó *de* escribir cuando entré, — *He ceased writing when I entered.*
No deje V. *de* escribirme, — *Do not neglect writing to me.*

10. The following rules for the guidance of the student in the use of prepositions require special attention :

1. When the infinitive occurs in the sentence as subject or object of the determining verb, it is used without a preposition when the question **who?** or **what?** may be asked :

He resuelto salir hoy, — *I have resolved* (what?) *to go out to-day.*
Él ofreció ayudarme, — *He offered* (what?) *to help me.*

2. When the question **to what?** or **where to?** may be asked, the preposition **á** must be used :

Yo le animaré á hacerle, — *I will encourage him* (to what?) *to do it.*
Voy á visitar mi tío, — *I am going* (where to?) *to visit my uncle.*

3. The preposition **de** is used in answer to the questions **of what? from what? at what? from where?**

Se espantó de verle tan pálido, — *He was alarmed* (at what?) *at seeing him so pale.*
Su pobreza proviene de su gastar, — *His poverty is the result* (of what?) *of his expenses.*

4. The preposition **en** is used in answer to the questions **in what? on what?**

La dificultad consiste en hallarle, — *The difficulty consists* (in what?) *in finding him.*
Él insiste en salir, — *He insists* (on what?) *on going out.*

5. The preposition **con** is used in answer to the questions **with what? by what?**

Este hombre ha destruido su salud con mucho beber, — *This man has destroyed his health* (by what?) *by much drinking.*

NOTE. — Although there are many cases in which the right use of the preposition cannot be indicated, the rules given above may be followed in most cases.

11. The verb **acabar,** 1. *to end, to finish,* followed by the preposition **de** and an infinitive, expresses an action which has just taken place :

Acabo de verle,	*I have just seen him.*
Acababa de comer cuando yo entré,	*He had just dined when I entered.*

12. The verbs **mandar,** 1. *to send, to order,* and **hacer,** 2. *to make, to do,* followed by an infinitive, have the meaning of the English verbs *to cause, to let, to have :*

Hago hacer un sombrero,	*I have a hat made.*
Mando lavar mi ropa,	*I have my clothes washed.*
Hace teñir el paño,	*He has the cloth dyed.*

NOTE. — In such cases the Spanish active infinitive is often rendered in English by the passive.

13. The infinitive may be used in Spanish as a substantive and as the subject or object of the verb. It may, therefore, be preceded in this case by the article or by any other part of speech :

No he olvidado el insoportable hablar de este hombre,	*I have not forgotten the insupportable talking of that man.*
Al avanzar nuestro ejército se retiraron los enemigos,	*Our army having advanced, the enemy retired.*
No ganará V. nada con ese hablar,	*You will gain nothing by this talk.*

14. There are cases where the infinitive may be used with or without the article :

Es injusto acusar (*or* el acusar) este hombre de este crimen,	*It is unjust to accuse this man of this crime.*

Lección XLVII. Lesson XLVII.

THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

Á más de, Además de, Sobre, Tras de,	*Besides, although.*
Á menos de,	*Unless.*
Á pesar de, Sin embargo de, No obstante de,	*Notwithstanding, however.*
Después de,	*After.*
Antes de,	*Before.*
Sin,	*Without.*
En cuanto á,	*As for.*
Por,	*On account of, for, instead of.*
En consecuencia de,	*In consequence of.*

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Á más de / Además de } haberle visto, le he hablado,	Besides seeing him, I spoke to him.
Á pesar de / Sin embargo de / No obstante de } haberle yo pagado no estuvo satisfecho,	Notwithstanding that I paid him, he was not pleased.
Antes de salir, comió,	He dined before going out.
Después de haber comido, salió,	He went out after having dined.
Salí sin nadie verme.	I went out without anybody seeing me.
No fué admitido por ser estrangero,	He was not admitted (*on account of his*) being a stranger.
Tras de no pagarme, me insulta,	Besides not paying me, he insults me.
Sobre ser Inglés, quiere pasar por Americano.	Although he is an Englishman, he wishes to pass for an American.
En cuanto á dar dinero, no lo haré.	As for giving money, I shall not do it.
No sé cómo acabar eso.	I don't know how to finish that.

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El gasto, *the expense.*	**Atacar**, 1. *to attack.*	**Invocar**, 1. *to invoke.*
El obrero, *the workman.*	**Castigar**, 1. *to punish.*	**Obedecer**, 2. *to obey.*
El vestido, *the dress.*	**Consultar**, 1. *to consult.*	**Obtener**, 2. *to obtain.*
La colocación, *the situation.*	**Contestar**, 1. *to answer.*	**Ofender**, 3. *to offend.*
La divinidad, *the divinity.*	**Continuar**, 1. *to continue.*	**Pagar**, 1. *to pay.*
La pregunta, *the question.*	**Descansar**, 1. *to rest.*	**Seguir**, 3. *to follow.*
Generoso, *generous.*	**Entrar**, 1. *to enter.*	**Trabajar**, 1. *to work.*
Tal, *such as.*	**Examinar**, 1. *to examine.*	**Volver**, 2. *to return*

Exercise 93.

1. Después de haber yo leído el libro, se lo presté á mi amigo. 2. Á pesar de no bien trabajar, quiere que le paguen bien. 3. Además de ser haragán, gasta mucho. 4. Sin embargo de ser muy pobre, quiere pasar por rico. 5. Antes de consentir yo á lo que él quiere, debo examinar si él tiene razón. 6. Perdonó á sus enemigos, antes de morir. 7. En consecuencia de haberle yo dicho que viniera, vino. 8. En cuanto á tener yo que hacer todos los gastos, lo veremos. 9. ¿ Qué contestar á tal pregunta ? 10. ¿ Cómo saber si mi amigo está en la ciudad ? 11. ¿ Á dónde ir para encontrarle ? 12. Este hombre me ha ofendido demasiado por poder perdonarle yo. 13. El muchacho tomó el libro sin dárselo yo. 14. Sin verme nadie, entré en mi cuarto. 15. No haga V. nada antes de consultarme. 16. ¿ Porqué hizo V. eso ? 17. Lo hize sin saber lo que estaba haciendo. 18. Además de ser él mi amigo, lo es también de V. 19. Quiero hacerlo sin decírselo á nadie. 20. Le dí la carta por creer que era para él.

Exercise 94.

1. After having written his letters, he went out. 2. You cannot obtain that situation, unless you speak Spanish and English. 3. Do not go out without seeing me. 4. Michael (*Miguel*) is punished for having spoken. 5. Do not speak without knowing. 6. Besides being very rich, he is also very generous. 7. Notwithstanding that I told him not to do it, he would not obey me. 8. How shall I do that ? 9. Where shall I look for my books ? 10. He could not follow us (on account of his) being too old. 11. Before going away, he said that he would not return. 12. Although he works badly (*mal*), he wishes to be paid like a good workman. 13. After he had rested, he con-

tinued his journey. 14. Besides his not reading the letter, he tore it to pieces (*la hizo pedazos*). 15. Besides receiving him in my house, I gave him money and clothes. 16. They invoked their divinities before attacking the enemy. 17. He took the money without my giving it to him. 18. He is sick on account of having eaten too much. 19. Besides not paying us, he says that we owe him money. 20. I wish you to do it without saying a word to him.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Some of the prepositions given above which govern the infinitive have different meanings.

Por, for instance, has the meaning of *on account of* or *because* in the following sentence:

No fué admitido por ser estrangero,	*He was not admitted on account of his being a stranger,*

while in the next sentence it is to be rendered by *instead of:*

Le dí mi libro por darle el suyo,	*I gave him my book instead of giving him his own.*

2. The infinitive is often governed also by the conjunctions **como,** *how,* and **que,** *that,* by the adverb **donde,** *where,* and by the interrogative pronouns:

No sé cómo acabar esto,	*I don't know how to finish that.*
Le traigo que comer,	*I bring you to eat.*
¡ Cómo decir lo que siento !	*How shall I say what I feel !*
¿ No sabe V. á quién vender su caballo ?	*Do you not know to whom you could sell your horse ?*

NOTE. — The above examples can only be explained by an ellipsis, by which the natural object of the infinitive is omitted:

No sé cómo (puedo) acabar esto,	*I don't know how (I can) finish that.*
¡ Cómo (podré) decir lo que siento !	*How (shall I be able) to say what I feel !*
Le traigo (algo que V. pueda) comer,	*I bring you (something that you can) eat.*

3. The infinitive sentences may also be rendered in Spanish by the present indicative or by the subjunctive mood, by adopting a different construction:

Después de haberle dado el dinero salió *or* Después que le hube dado el dinero, salió, } *After I had given him the money, he went out.*

Tras de no pagarme, no me saluda *or* Tras de que no me paga no me saluda, } *Besides not paying me, he does not salute me.*

Salí sin verme él *or* Salí sin que él me viera, } *I went out without his seeing me.*

Lección XLVIII. Lesson XLVIII.

THE GERUND AND PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

1. Amar, 1. *to love;*	**amando,** amante, *loving.*
Causar, 1. *to cause;*	**causando,** causante, *causing.*
Habitar, 1. *to inhabit;*	**habitando,** habitante, *inhabiting.*
Participar, 1. *to participate;*	**participando,** participante, *participating.*
Tocar, 1. *to touch;*	**tocando,** tocante, *touching.*
Obedecer, 2. *to obey;*	**obedeciendo,** obediente, *obeying.*
Pertenecer, 2. *to belong;*	**perteneciendo,** perteneciente, *belonging.*
Seguir, 3. *to follow;*	**siguiendo,** siguiente, *following.*

Vocabulario.		Vocabulary.
El almirante, *the admiral.*	**La capital,** *the capital.*	**Por,** *through.*
El capitán, *the captain.*	**La equivocación,** *the mistake.*	**Atravesar,** 1. *to cross over.*
El colegio, *the college.*	**La escuadra,** *the squadron.*	**Construir,** 3. *to construct.*
El enemigo, *the enemy.*	**La guerra,** *the war.*	**Desobedecer,** 2. *to disobey.*
El estudio, *the study.*	**La hora,** *the time.*	**Explicar,** 1. *to explain.*
El habitante, *the inhabitant.*	**La imprenta,** *the press.*	**Licenciar,** 1. *to disband.*
El lado, *the side.*	**La posada,** *the inn.*	**Montar,** 1. *to mount.*
El ojo, *the eye.*	**La posesión,** *the possession.*	**Reír,** 3. *to laugh.*
El palacio, *the palace.*	**La Tartaria,** *Tartary.*	**Sacar,** 1. *to draw.*
El precepto, *the precept.*	**La victoria,** *the victory.*	**Salir (2) de,** *to leave.*
El puente, *the bridge.*	**Dentro de,** *within.*	**Sublevar,** 1. *to revolt.*
El reino, *the kingdom.*		**Suspender,** 2. *to suspend.*

Exercise 95.

1. Los muchachos llegaron llorando de la escuela, pues habían sido castigados. 2. Hablando de otra cosa, cómo está su padre de V.? 3. Está muy bien hoy, gracias. 4. Pasando el otro día por la calle nueva, ví á su amigo de V. 5. Saliendo yo de la iglesia, entraba él. 6. No sabiendo que hacer, dormí todo el día. 7. Los estudiantes de nuestro colegio acabarán sus estudios dentro de pocos días. 8. Él entró riendo, pero salió llorando. 9. Diciendo esto, salió del cuarto. 10. Estando el padre en Francia, murió el hijo en Nueva York. 11. Habiendo el general ganado la victoria, tomó la fortaleza. 12. Temiendo el emperador que volviese á empezar la guerra, licenció sólo una parte de su ejército. 13. Habiendo el rey mandado que suspendiesen la libertad de imprenta, se sublevó el país. 14. Habiendo sabido que su hermano no había venido, mandó per él. 15. Los hombres habiendo de temer á Dios, desobedecen sus preceptos. 16. Los habitantes de esta ciudad son muy industriosos. 17. Creyendo yo encontrar á mi amigo, fuí muy temprano á su casa. 18. Los hijos de este pobre hombre son muy obedientes. 19. Habiendo el general hecho construir un puente, pasó todo el ejército al otro lado del río. 20. Cuando entré, estaba él durmiendo. 21. ¿ Qué estaban haciendo los muchachos en el cuarto? 22. Algunos estaban jugando, y otros estudiando. 23. Queriendo sacar su reloj, vió que se lo habían robado. 24. Siendo capitán el almirante Blake, fué mandado con una pequeña escuadra contra las posesiones españolas. 25. Viajando un extranjero por la Tartaria llegó á la capital del reino y por equivocación tomó el palacio del rey por una posada pública.

Exercise 96.

1. To whom were you writing this morning? 2. I was writing to my brother in Paris. 3. My father having heard that you were in town, has sent me to invite you to his house. 4. As we were passing through your street, we met Miss Mary. 5. While we were in Paris, we heard that your father was very sick. 6. Not knowing what to do, we wrote to our friends. 7. When he opened his eyes he saw his brother near his bed. 8. I have been reading the whole morning. 9. I saw the boys stealing the apples in the garden. 10. If you explain our lesson to us, we shall understand it. 11. To-morrow at this time, we shall be travelling. 12. If I have time, I will do it.

13. The general, having defeated the enemy, was received by the king. 14. The captain having mounted his horse, left the city. 15. When he saw the soldiers coming, he called me. 16. Hannibal having crossed the Alps, defeated the Romans. 17. Having studied the English language for several years, I speak it well now. 18. My brother is a student in that college. 19. When my father gave me the money, I paid all my debts. 20. As he was traveling through England, he met all our friends. 21. Those children are very disobedient. 22. He has annoyed us by talking too much. 23. As I was not able to do it alone, I told my brother to help me. 24. Why are these little girls crying? 25. Because they have lost their mother.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. In Spanish the gerund is clearly distinguished both in form and usage from the present participle. The latter may now be considered as forming no part of the verb, and the forms which remain are either adjectives or nouns.

The present participle was formed by the addition of **-ante** or **-ente** to the verb stem:

Diferente, *different.*	(Diferir, *to differ.*)
Obediente, *obedient.*	(Obedecer, *to obey.*)
El amante, *the lover.*	(Amar, *to love.*)
El presidente, *the president.*	(Presidir, *to preside.*)

NOTE. — This form may be found taking the place of other parts of speech, or even of the gerund itself. Such are, however, rather rare.

2. We refer the student to **Lesson 19** for the formation of the gerund and for some of the rules relating to this tense.

3. There are cases when the gerund and the infinitive may be used alike:

Le ví cazando *or* cazar, *I saw him hunting* or *hunt.*

4. When a motion is expressed, either the gerund of the verb **ir,** 3. *to go,* or that of **andar,** 1. *to walk,* may precede the other verbs:

Yendo *or* Andándome paseando, le encontré, *Going to take a walk, I met him.*

5. The gerund is also used:

1st. When it indicates the state of the subject:

Habla durmiendo,	*He speaks while he sleeps.*

2d. When the verb expresses the cause of an action:

Temiendo él que le atacasen, tomó sus pistolas,	*Fearing that they would attack him, he took his pistols.*

NOTE. — In sentences like the above, the gerund may be replaced by the infinitive with **por**: **Por temer el que le atacasen**, etc.

3d. When the verb expresses means or instrumentality:

Estudiando se aprende,	*One learns by studying.*

NOTE. — The infinitive preceded by **con**, *with*, may be used in the above sentence: **Con estudiar se aprende**.

6. The compound gerund or **participio de preterito** is of the same nature as the gerund and is used in the same way:

Habiendo el hijo perdido á su padre, volvió á su país,	*The son, having lost his father, returned to his country.*

7. The gerund is often used in Spanish in cases where the English use the Conjunctions **as, since, if,** and the adverbs **when, while, whilst**:

Siendo así, no saldré,	*Since it is so, I shall not go out.*
No teniendo dinero, no puedo ir al teatro,	*As I have no money, I cannot go to the theater.*
Viéndome tan triste, se puso á llorar,	*When he saw me so sad, he began to cry.*
Habiendo él de venir acá, se fué al teatro,	*While he was to come here, he went to the theater.*

NOTE. — Many sentences rendered in Spanish by the gerund might, however, be used as in English with the tenses of the indicative or of the subjunctive with such words as **como**, *as;* **luego que**, *as soon as;* **cuando, así que**, *when*, etc.

Viéndome *or* Así que me vió,	*When he saw me.*

8. The gerund (simple or compound) is most elegantly used in Spanish at the beginning of the sentence, especially in short narrations, the subject being sometimes separated from its verb:

Paseando un día por la calle el Presidente Jéfferson, con un comerciante, contestó al saludo de un negro que pasaba. — ¿ Porqué, le preguntó el comerciante, se presta V. á saludar á un esclavo ? — Sentiría mucho, contestó el Presidente, que un esclavo me excediese en urbanidad.

As President Jefferson was one day walking through the street with a merchant, he answered the salutation of a passing negro. — Why does your Excellency deign to salute a slave? asked the merchant. — I should be very sorry, answered the President, that a slave should surpass me in politeness.

9. Verbs of the 3d conjugation ending in **-chir, -llir** and **-ñir** form their gerund in **endo** and not in *iendo*, as the diphthong **ie** very seldom stands after **ch, ll** and **ñ**. We must therefore say: **ciñendo,** from **ceñir,** 3. *to gird;* **hinchendo,** from **henchir,** 3. *to fill;* **riendo,** from **reír,** 3. *to laugh.*

The *i* is also omitted for the same reason in the 3d persons of the preterit of the indicative and in all the persons of the subjunctive of the same verbs: **riñó,** from **reñir,** 3. *to quarrel;* **engulleres,** from **engullir,** 3. *to ingulf;* etc.

The verb **volver,** 2. followed by the preposition **á** before an infinitive, expresses the repetition of the action indicated by the infinitive:

Vuelvo á salir, *I go out again.*

Lección XLIX. Lesson XLIX.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Este libro está bien escrito.	This book is well written.
Estos libros están bien escritos.	These books are well written.
La casa está acabada.	The house is finished.
Las casas están acabadas.	The houses are finished.
He recibido una carta de París.	I have received a letter from Paris.
Hemos visto el teatro nuevo,	We have seen the new theater.
Los muchachos han comido las manzanas.	The boys have eaten the apples.
Nuestros soldados han derrotado al enemigo.	Our soldiers have defeated the enemy.
La lección que V. nos ha dado, es muy difícil.	The lesson which you have given us is very difficult.
El enemigo atacado por todas partes, se retiró.	The enemy, being attacked on all sides, retired.
Bien sabido es, que este hombre es rico.	It is well known that this man is rich.
Llamado un cirujano, examinó la herida.	A surgeon having been called, he examined the wound.

Irregular Participles.

Abrir, 3. *to open ;*	**abierto**, *opened.*
Cubrir, 3. *to cover ;*	**cubierto**, *covered.*
Decir, 3. *to say, to tell ;*	**dicho**, *said, told.*
Escribir, 3. *to write ;*	**escrito**, *written.*
Hacer, 2. *to make, to do ;*	**hecho**, *made, done.*
Imprimir, 3. *to print ;*	**impreso**, *printed.*
Morir, 3. *to die ;*	**muerto**, *died.*
Poner, 2. *to put ;*	**puesto**, *put.*
Resolver, 2. *to resolve ;*	**resuelto**, *resolved.*
Ver, 2. *to see ;*	**visto**, *seen.*
Volver, *to return ;*	**vuelto**, *returned.*

Participles having often an active meaning.

Acostumbrado, *accustomed.*	Atrevido, *bold.*
Agradecido, *grateful.*	Bien hablado, *well spoken.*

Callado, *reserved.*
Cansado, *tiresome.*
Comedido, *well behaved.*
Desesperado, *despairing.*
Disimulado, *dissimulated.*
Entendido, *experienced.*
Esforzado, *bold.*
Leído, *well read.*
Medido, *prudent.*
Mirado, *considerate.*
Moderado, *moderate.*
Osado, *bold.*
Parado, *slow.*
Parecido, *resembling.*
Partido, *liberal.*
Pausado, *cautious.*
Porfiado, *obstinate.*
Precavido, *cautious.*
Preciado, *vain.*
Presumido, *conceited.*
Recatado, *wise.*
Sabido, *learned.*
Sentido, *sensible.*
Sufrido, *patient.*
Trascendido, *acute.*
Valido, *influential.*

Vocabulario.

El Congreso, *the Congress.*
El cuadro, *the picture.*
El desuso, *the desuetude.*
El día festivo, *the holiday.*
El grande, *the grandee.*
El Moro, *the Moor.*
El mundo, *the world.*
El refresco, *the refreshment.*
La atención, *the attention.*
La cena, *the supper.*
La comida, *the eating, the dinner.*
La discordia, *the discord.*
La inocencia, *the innocence.*
La ley, *the law.*
La memoria, *the memory.*
La ociosidad, *the idleness.*
La palabra, *the word.*
La pérdida, *the loss.*
La prerogativa, *the prerogative.*
La salida, *the exit.*

Vocabulary.

Agradable, *agreeable.*
Cierto, *certain.*
Enorme, *enormous.*
Fernando, *Ferdinand.*
Isabel, *Isabella.*
Por desgracia, *unfortunately*
Porfiado, *obstinate.*
Presumido, *conceited.*
Atrasar, 1. *to delay.*
Casar, 1. *to marry.*
Concluir, 3. *to conclude.*
Convencer, 2. *to convince.*
Defender, 2. *to defend.*
Establecer, 2. *to establish.*
Ofrecer, 2. *to offer.*
Pintar, 1. *to depict.*
Reinar, 1. *to reign.*
Reparar, 1. *to compensate.*
Sufocar, 1. *to suffocate.*
Volver, 2. *to turn.*

Exercise 97.

1. Concluida la cena, todo el mundo salió. 2. Salí de la casa resuelto á verle. 3. Derrotados los enemigos, volvieron á pasar el río. 4. ¿ Ha recibido V. la carta que yo le he escrito ? 5. La he recibido esta mañana. 6. Ví á su amigo de V. á la salida del teatro. 7. La

comida es muy buena en esta fonda. 8. Debemos considerar como perdidos los días que pasamos en la ociosidad. 9. La discordia ha siempre reinado en el universo. 10. Las puertas estaban abiertas y entraban todos los que querían. 11. ¿ Ha oído V. cantar aquella señora? 12. La oí cantar el domingo pasado en nuestra iglesia. 13. ¿ Ha visto V. los cuadros que mi hermano ha comprado? 14. Todavía no los he visto. 15. Esta ley ha sido establecida por el Congreso. 16. Le hemos mandado á V. todos los libros que V. nos ha pedido. 17. Las cartas estaban tan mal escritas que no pudimos leerlas. 18. Este hombre es muy honrado, siempre me ha devuelto el dinero que le he prestado. 19. ¿ Es verdad que ha muerto Pedro? 20. Por desgracia es cierto. 21. ¿ Ha padecido mucho? 22. No puede V. imaginar lo que ha padecido. 23. Es V., amigo Pablo, el hombre mas porfiado del mundo. 24. No podremos comprar hoy lo que necesitamos, pues los días festivos están cerrados los almacenes. 25. Tengo una hermana casada en Madrid, con un médico español; y como la visité el año pasado, he aprendido á hablar un poco español. 26. Me habían pintado el viaje como bastante desagradable; pero fué al contrario muy agradable, menos el habernos atrasado unas ocho horas en el camino. 27. Don Juan ha dado el brazo á mi madre hasta el coche. 28. No sé como reparar la enorme pérdida que he hecho. 29. Las prerogativas de los grandes de España han sido muchas, pero todas han caído en desuso. 30. Estamos sofocados con el calor que tenemos aquí desde que principió el verano.

Exercise 98.

1. These things have passed from my memory. 2. We have read all the books you have lent us; have you received any others? 3. We can lend you those we bought the other day. 4. Where have you been? 5. I have been to the ball. 6. Why have not the children gone to school to-day? 7. Because one of their teachers has died. 8. I don't know where I have put my gloves; will you do me the favor to look for them for me? 9. I believe that you have left them in your room. 10. Do you know what your father has resolved? 11. He has not resolved anything yet. 12. Whom have you seen in that house? 13. I have not seen anybody. 14. You must not leave your windows open during the night. 15. John is loved by no one, because he is too conceited. 16. My friend will come after (the) dinner. 17 The war with Portugal being concluded,

Ferdinand and Isabella turned their attention to the Moors of Granada. 18. I have lost one of my books, I don't know how. 19. That soldier has lost his arm while defending his country. 20. Have you heard what that man has said? 21. I have heard every word. 22. Have you offered anything to those ladies? 23. Yes, sir, I have offered them refreshments. 24. Have you seen our new theater? 25. I have not seen anything yet, I have not been out for (*desde*) three days. 26. How were your sisters dressed for the ball? 27. They were dressed in (*de*) white. 28. I have been so busy this morning, that I have not been able to write to your father. 29. Our friends arrived this morning, but we have not seen them yet. 30. Being convinced of his innocence, I defended him.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The past participle of the verbs of the 1st conjugation, as has been already said (L. 17, R. 5), ends in **ado**; and those of the 2d and 3d conjugations end in **ido**, the irregular participles being given above.

2. The past participle as well as the gerund is at the same time an adjective, being derived from the verb, as in this sentence:

Una carta bien escrita, *A well written letter.*

3. The past participle is not limited to a certain definite time, but may refer to any past time, according to the tense with which it is combined. It loses its passive signification when connected with the verb **haber**, 2. *to have;* to form the tenses of the **verbo activo**, *active verb.*

With intransitive, unipersonal, and reflexive verbs, it can only have an active signification, as these verbs do not admit the passive form.

4. It has already been observed (L. 18, R. 1), that the past participle joined to the verb **haber**, 2. *to have,* is invariable, although it had formerly a feminine termination, and agreed with its object.

Joined with the verbs **ser**, 2. *to be*, and **estar**, 1. *to be;* the past participle is considered as an adjective, and agrees in gender and number with its subject:

La casa está acabada,	*The house is finished.*
Los buenos muchachos son amados,	*Good boys are loved.*

5. The past participle often occurs in Spanish in an absolute construction, and corresponds then to the Latin *ablative absolute*. In such cases it is generally placed before the noun, with which it agrees in gender and number:

Aprovechadas estas ventajas se facilita el aprender,	*Through profiting by these advantages, learning is made easier.*

NOTE. — The subject may, however, precede the participle, when both sentences have the same subject:

El enemigo atacado de todas partes, se retiró,	*The enemy, being attacked on all sides, retired.*

6. A preposition may sometimes precede the past participle:

Después de restablecida la paz florecerán las artes,	*After peace is reëstablished the arts will flourish.*

NOTE. — As seen by the above examples, the participle is in one case in an absolute construction, while in the other the auxiliary verb is omitted: *Siendo* **aprovechadas estas ventajas**, etc., **después** *de ser* **restablecida la paz**, etc.

7. Past participles used as adjectives may govern the preposition **de** or **por**, the preference being generally given to **de**:

Es un hombre despreciado de todos,	*He is a man despised by all.*

8. Those participles which have an active meaning, have also a passive one:

Active sense.	*Passive sense.*
Hombre leído, *a well read man.*	Libro leído, *a book read.*
Mujer leída, *a well read woman.*	Carta leída, *a letter read.*

9. Many past participles are used as nouns in the feminine form: **bebida**, *drink, beverage;* **entrada**, *entrance*, **salida**, *exit, departure;* **llegada**, *arrival;* **comida**, *dinner, eating;* **medida**, *measure;* **corrida**, *race;* **mirada**, *look;* **vista**, *sight;* etc.

Lección L. Lesson L.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (*Continued*).

Principal Spanish Verbs having two Participles.

Abstraer, 2. *to abstract;*	**abstraido, abstracto,** *abstracted.*
Aceptar, 1. *to accept;*	**aceptado, acepto,** *accepted.*
Astringir, 3. *to contract;*	**astringido, astricto,** *contracted.*
Atender, 2. *to heed;*	**atendido, atento,** *heeded.*
Bendecir, 3. *to bless;*	**bendecido, bendito,** *blessed.*
Compeler, 2. *to compel;*	**compelido, compulso,** *compelled.*
Completar, 1. *to complete;*	**completado, completo,** *completed.*
Comprender, 2. *to understand;*	**comprendido, comprenso,** *understood.*
Comprimir, 3. *to compress;*	**comprimido, compreso,** *compressed.*
Concluir, 3. *to conclude;*	**concluido, concluso,** *concluded.*
Confesar, 1. *to confess;*	**confesado, confeso,** *confessed.*
Confundir, 3. *to confound;*	**confundido, confuso,** *confounded.*
Contentar, 1. *to content;*	**contentado, contento,** *contented.*
Contraer, 2. *to contract;*	**contraido, contracto,** *contracted.*
Convencer, 2. *to convince;*	**convencido, convicto,** *convinced.*
Convertir, 3. *to convert;*	**convertido, converso,** *converted.*
Corregir, 3. *to correct;*	**corregido, correcto,** *corrected.*
Corromper, 2. *to corrupt;*	**corrompido, corrupto,** *corrupted.*
Cultivar, 1. *to cultivate;*	**cultivado, culto,** *cultivated.*
Desertar, 1. *to desert;*	**desertado, deserto,** *deserted.*
Desnudar, 1. *to lay bare;*	**desnudado, desnudo,** *laid bare.*
Despertar, 1. *to awake;*	**despertado, despierto,** *awaked.*
Difundir, 3. *to diffuse;*	**difundido, difuso,** *diffused.*
Dirigir, 3. *to direct;*	**dirigido, directo,** *directed.*
Dispersar, 1. *to disperse;*	**dispersado, disperso,** *dispersed.*
Distinguir, 3. *to distinguish;*	**distinguido, distinto,** *distinguished.*
Dividir, 3. *to divide;*	**dividido, diviso,** *divided.*
Eligir, 3. *to elect;*	**elegido, electo,** *elected.*
Enjugar, 1. *to wipe;*	**enjugado, enjuto,** *wiped.*
Erigir, 3. *to erect;*	**erigido, erecto,** *erected.*
Exceptuar, 1. *to except;*	**exceptuado, excepto,** *excepted.*
Excluir, 3, *to exclude;*	**excluido, excluso,** *excluded.*
Exentar, 1, *to exempt;*	**exentado, exento,** *exempted.*
Expeler, 2. *to expel;*	**expelido, expulso,** *expelled.*
Expresar, 1. *to express;*	**expresado, expreso,** *expressed.*
Extender, 2. *to extend;*	**extendido, extenso,** *extended.*

Extinguir, 3. *to extinguish;*	**extinguido, extinto,** *extinguished.*
Extraer, 2. *to extract;*	**extraido, extracto,** *extracted.*
Favorecer, 2. *to favor;*	**favorecido, favorito,** *favored.*
Fijar, 1. *to fix:*	**fijado, fijo,** *fixed.*
Fingir, 3. *to feign;*	**fingido, ficto,** *feigned.*
Freír, 3. *to fry;*	**freido, frito,** *fried.*
Hartar, 1. *to satiate;*	**hartado, harto,** *satiated.*
Imprimir, 3. *to impress; to print;*	**imprimido, impreso,** *impressed, printed.*
Improvisar, 1. *to extemporize;*	**improvisado, improviso,** *extemporized.*
Incluir, 3. *to include;*	**incluido, incluso,** *included.*
Infectar, 1. *to infect;*	**infectado, infecto,** *infected.*
Inscribir, 3. *to inscribe;*	**inscribido, inscrito,** *inscribed.*
Inserir, 3. / **Insertar**, 1. *to insert;*	**inserido, inserto,** *inserted.*
Invertir, 3. *to invert;*	**invertido, inverto,** *inverted.*
Juntar, 1. *to join;*	**juntado, junto,** *joined.*
Limpiar, 1. *to clear;*	**limpiado, limpio,** *cleared.*
Maldecir, 3. *to curse;*	**maldecido, maldito,** *cursed.*
Manifestar, 1. *to manifest;*	**manifestado, manifesto,** *manifested.*
Marchitar, 1. *to fade;*	**marchitado, marchito,** *faded.*
Nacer, 2. *to be born;*	**nacido, nato,** *been born.*
Ocultar, 1. *to conceal;*	**ocultado, oculto,** *concealed.*
Omitir, 3. *to omit;*	**omitido, omiso,** *omitted.*
Oprimir, 3. *to oppress;*	**oprimido, opreso,** *oppressed.*
Perfeccionar, 1. *to perfect;*	**perfeccionado, perfecto,** *perfected.*
Pervertir, 3. *to pervert;*	**pervertido, perverso,** *perverted.*
Poseer, 2. *to possess;*	**poseido, poseso,** *possessed.*
Prender, 2. *to catch;*	**prendido, preso,** *caught.*
Prescribir, 3. *to prescribe;*	**prescribido, prescrito,** *prescribed.*
Presumir, 3. *to presume;*	**presumido, presunto,** *presumed.*
Pretender, 2. *to pretend;*	**pretendido, pretenso,** *pretended.*
Profesar, 1. *to profess;*	**profesado, profeso,** *professed.*
Proscribir, 3. *to proscribe;*	**proscribido, proscrito,** *proscribed.*
Proveer, 2. *to provide;*	**proveido, provisto,** *provided.*
Repletar, 1. *to fill;*	**repletado, repleto,** *filled.*
Romper, 2. *to break;*	**rompido, roto,** *broken.*
Salvar, 1. *to save;*	**salvado, salvo,** *saved.*
Secar, 1. *to dry;*	**secado, seco,** *dried.*
Sepultar, 1. *to bury;*	**sepultado, sepulto,** *buried.*
Situar, 1. *to place;*	**situado, sito,** *placed.*
Soltar, 1. *to let loose;*	**soltado, suelto,** *let loose.*
Sujetar, 1. *to subject;*	**sujetado, sujeto,** *subjected.*

Suprimir, 3. *to suppress;*	**suprimido, supreso**, *suppressed.*
Suspender, 2. *to suspend;*	**suspendido, suspenso**, *suspended.*
Sustituir, 3. *to substitute;*	**sustituido, sustituto**, *substituted.*
Tender, 2. *to spread;*	**tendido, tenso**, *spread.*
Teñir, 3. *to dye;*	**teñido, tinto**, *dyed.*
Torcer, 2. *to twist;*	**torcido, tuerto**, *twisted.*
Vaciar, 1. *to empty;*	**vaciado, vacio**, *emptied.*

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El accidente, *the accident.*	**La liberalidad**, *the liberality.*
El cielo, *the heaven.*	**La lista**, *the list.*
El cólera, *the cholera.*	**La máxima**, *the maxim.*
El monte, *the mountain.*	**La opinión**, *the opinion.*
El monumento, *the monument.*	**La obra**, *the work.*
El muro, *the wall.*	**La ruina**, *the ruin.*
El pescuezo, *the neck.*	**La silla**, *the chair.*
El populacho, *the mob.*	**Bajo**, *under.*
El servicio, *the service.*	**Delante**, *before.*
La bagatela, *the trifle.*	**Junto**, *together.*
La carcel, *the prison.*	**Liberal**, *liberal.*
La cuenta, *the account.*	**Militar**, *military.*
La estatua, *the statue.*	**Vacío**, *empty.*
La invitación, *the invitation.*	

Exercise 99.

1. ¿Quién ha abierto la puerta y ha puesto una silla delante? 2. ¿No le he dicho yo á V. que había visto á su hermana en el teatro? 3. He escrito todo lo que V. me ha prescrito. 4. Estoy convencido que mi amigo llegará hoy mismo. 5. El cólera ha infectado á mucha gente, y todavía hay muchos que están infectos. 6. El cocinero ha torcido el pescuezo de la gallina. 7. El buque está provisto de todo lo necesario. 8. Los ladrones estaban ocultos en el monte, pero han sido prendidos por los soldados. 9. Aunque estuviese yo despierto, él pretende que me ha despertado. 10. El cielo ha bendecido sus obras. 11. Estoy tan confuso que no sé lo que estoy haciendo. 12. No me han permitido salir todavía. 13. Este cuadro no está todavía completo. 14. Todavía no hemos comprendido lo que él quería decir. 15. Hemos corregido todos los ejercicios, y ahora están correctos. 16. Son los hombres mas corruptos que hemos conocido. 17. No comprendo lo que está inscrito en (*on*) este monumento.

18. Fué un accidente imprevisto, y á nadie podemos culpar. 19. Todas las mesas en la casa están rotas. 20. Estos libros han sido impresos en París.

Exercise 100.

1. My friend invited me to dine with him, but I could not accept his invitation. 2. I was awake when your friends arrived in the night. 3. These two friends are always together. 4. The flowers you bought for your sister are already faded. 5. The roads are not dry yet, and we will have to take a carriage. 6. Fill the empty glasses with (*de*) wine. 7. More than fifty men were buried under the ruins of the old church. 8. The thieves were caught and taken to (the) prison. 9. The mob has been dispersed by the soldiers. 10. We have included all our expenses in the account we gave you. 11. Do you know if the fire has been extinguished? 12. It was extinguished when I passed through the street. 13. This young man has been exempted from military service. 14. He has confessed that he has spent all his money in buying trifles. 15. The inhabitants of the city have erected a statue to that great man. 16. I have been obliged to sell my favorite horse. 17. All these maxims were inscribed on the walls of our school. 18. These men have been expelled from their country for their liberal opinions.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Many verbs have in Spanish two past participles, a regular and an irregular one. The regular participle of such verbs must be used in compound tenses with the verb **haber,** 2. *to have;* or when the sentence is passive:

Le hemos convencido de su error,	*We have convinced him of his error.*
Fué expulsado del país,	*He was expelled from the country.*

The irregular participle is used as an adjective and can never be accompanied by the auxiliary **haber,** 2. *to have.*

2. The irregular past participles of the following verbs are perhaps oftener used with **haber** than are the regular:

Freír, *to fry,* freído, frito.	Proveer, *to provide,* proveído, provisto.
Prender, *to take,* prendido, preso.	Romper, *to break,* rompido, roto.

Lección LI. Lesson LI.

THE PASSIVE VERB (VOZ PASIVA).

Ser alabado, *to be praised.*

INFINIT. PRES.:	Ser alabad-o, -a, -os, -as,	*to be praised.*
PRET. PERF.:	haber sido alabad-o, -a, -os, -as,	*to have been praised.*
FUTURO:	haber de ser alabad-o, -a, -os, -as,	*to have to be praised.*
PART. PAS.:	alabad-o, -a, -os -as,	*praised.*
GERUNDIO:	siendo alabado,	*being praised.*
PART. PRET.:	habiendo sido alabado,	*having been praised.*
PART. FUTURO:	habiendo de ser alabado,	*having to be praised.*
INDIC. PRES.:	yo soy alabado (a),	*I am praised.*
	nosotros (as) somos alabados (as),	*we are praised.*
PRET. IMPERF.:	yo era alabado,	*I was praised.*
PRET. DEFINIDO:	yo fuí alabado,	
PRET. INDEFIN.:	yo he sido alabado,	*I have been praised.*
PRET. ANTERIOR:	yo hube sido alabado,	*I had been praised.*
PRET. PLUSCUAMP.:	yo había sido alabado,	
FUTURO IMPERF.:	yo seré alabado,	*I shall* or *will be praised.*
FUTURO PERF.:	yo habré sido alabado,	*I shall* or *will have been praised.*
COND. SIMP.:	yo sería alabado,	*I should* or *would be praised.*
IMPERATIVE:	sé alabado,	*be praised.*
SUBJ. PRES.:	que yo sea alabado,	*that I may be praised.*
SUBJ. IMPERF.:	que yo fuere *or* fuese alabado,	*that I might be praised.*
PRET. PERF.:	que yo haya sido alabado,	*that I may have been praised.*
PLUSCUAMPERF.:	que yo hubiera / que yo hubiese sido alabado,	*that I might have been praised.*
COND. COMP.:	yo habría sido alabado,	*I should* or *would have been praised.*
FUTURO IMP.:	yo fuere alabado,	*I shall be praised.*
FUTURO COMP.:	yo hubiere sido alabado,	*I shall have been praised.*

Ejemplos. **Examples.**

La casa del general está vendida. The general's house is sold.
Los enemigos han sido derrotados. The enemy has been defeated.

El puente está construido.	The bridge is built.
Mi conducta ha sido aprobada.	My conduct has been approved.
La carta ha sido escrita por él.	The letter has been written by him.
Los muchachos han sido castigados.	The boys have been punished.
Mi sombrero está perdido.	My hat is lost.
Hemos sido engañados.	We have been deceived.
Él es estimado y amado.	He is esteemed and loved.
Queremos ser obedecidos.	We wish to be obeyed.

Examples with the pronoun **se**:

Esto se ve á menudo.	That is often seen.
El café se vende bien.	Coffee sells well.
Se ama al hombre de bien.	The honest man is loved.
Se admira la sabiduría de Sócrates.	The wisdom of Socrates is admired.
Esto no se puede hacer así.	That cannot be done so.
Aquí se habla español.	Spanish is spoken here.
No se puede ver cosa mas maravillosa.	Nothing more wonderful can be seen.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El diputado, *the deputy.*	**La tienda**, *the shop.*
El gobierno, *the government.*	**Barato**, *cheap.*
El objeto, *the object.*	**Escipión**, *Scipio.*
El retrato, *the picture.*	**Alabar**, 1. *to praise.*
El terremoto, *the earthquake.*	**Alquilar**, 1. *to let.*
La cantatriz, *the singer.*	**Arruinar**, 1. *to ruin.*
La ciencia, *the science.*	**Componer**, 2. *to compose.*
La comedia, *the comedy.*	**Destruir**, 3. *to destroy.*
La conjuración, *the conspiracy.*	**Escoger**, 2. *to select.*
La juventud, *the youth.*	**Eligir**, 3. *to elect.*
La licencia, *the license.*	**Favorecer**, 2. *to favor.*
La muerte, *the death.*	**Reconocer**, 2. *to know.*
La necesidad, *the necessity.*	**Representar**, 1. *to play.*
La obra, *the work.*	**Reprimir**, 3. *to repress.*
La sentencia, *the maxim.*	**Restablecer**, 2. *to reëstablish.*

Exercise 101.

1. Este paño se vende en la tienda del Señor Palma. 2. Se han admirado mucho las sentencias de Séneca. 3. Las ciencias han siempre sido favorecidas por los buenos gobiernos. 4. Este príncipe no será alabado después de su muerte. 5. La cantatriz ha sido muy

aplaudida anoche. 6. Mi amigo ha sido eligido diputado de su ciudad. 7. ¿ Qué se dice en la ciudad ? 8. Se dice que el azúcar se venderá muy bien este año. 9. Este retrato ha sido hecho por uno de nuestros mejores pintores. 10. Esta señora es amada y estimada de todos los que la conocen. 11. Se ve que V. está contento hoy. 12. No engañamos á nadie, pero somos engañados muy á menudo. 13. Estos muchachos han sido alabados por sus maestros. 14. No hemos sido convidados por su hermano, y así no hemos ido á su casa. 15. ¿ Se hubiera descubierto la conjuración de Catilina, si Cicerón no hubiese sido consul ? 16. Se reconoce al verdadero amigo en la necesidad. 17. ¿ Sabe V. si se vende esa casa ? 18. No, señor, se alquila. 19. Esta obra ha sido compuesta por mi amigo. 20. La hacienda ha sido vendida después de la muerte del dueño. 21. La licencia fué reprimida y la paz restablecida en el país. 22. Estas cosas han sido escogidas por mi hermano cuando estaba en París. 23. No se puede saber como le fué posible al ladrón entrar en la casa. 24. Estoy seguro que esta carta no ha sido escrita por él. 25. Se cree que el Presidente llegará esta mañana.

Exercise 102.

1. These goods have been received from England. 2. Where have these objects been found ? 3. They have been found in a carriage. 4. Those glasses have been broken by the children. 5. Those houses have been sold very cheap. 6. The general had been wounded several times in his youth. 7. This letter has been written by one of our friends. 8. What would you have done if you had known that ? 9. I would have done the same thing that I have done. 10. If you go to his house, you will be very well received. 11. This comedy has been played twice at (*en*) the large theater. 12. Have the thieves been caught ? 13. Two of them have been caught. 14. If I had been invited to the ball, I would have gone with my sister. 15. It is said that there has been a great fire in the city. 16. It was said yesterday that the general had died. 17. That city has been destroyed by an earthquake. 18. I think that coffee will sell very well this year. 19. Such things are often seen. 20. French goods are sold in that store. 21. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 22. The beautiful house of the banker will be sold this week. 23. Your brother is seen every afternoon in the park. 24. They speak only French in that school. 25. Our friends have been ruined by the war

26. All the sugar has been bought by that merchant. 27. I have been deceived several times by that man. 28. That child is loved by everybody.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Passive verbs are conjugated in all their tenses with the auxiliary verb **ser,** 2. *to be.* To this auxiliary the past participle of *active* or *transitive* verbs is added, the same agreeing in gender and number with the subject:

El muchacho es amado,	*The boy is loved.*
La muchacha es amada,	*The girl is loved.*
Los muchachos son amados,	*The boys are loved.*
Las muchachas son amadas,	*The girls are loved.*

2. Active verbs are often used *passively* with the pronoun **se** in the third person singular or plural (*Cf.* Lesson LII.):

Estos libros se venden en aquella librería,	*Those books are sold in that bookstore.*
No se puede ver nada,	*Nothing can be seen.*
El café se vende bien,	*Coffee sells well.*

3. It is to be noticed, however, that when a passive sentence is formed with the pronoun **se,** this sentence may preserve the construction of the active:

Se ama al hombre de bien,	*The honest man is loved.*

4. The verb remains invariable in the singular when the passive subject is a person, and the acting ablative is not expressed:

Es dolor el ver como se aprecia más á los infames aduladores que á los hombres honrados.	*It is painful to see that infamous flatterers are more esteemed than honorable men.*

5. The past participle remains invariable with the compound tense of the verb:

Se ha amado á María por sus virtudes,	*Mary has been loved for her virtues.*

6. When the object of the sentence is a thing, or when the acting ablative is expressed, the verb agrees with the object, although the past participle remains invariable:

¡Oh siglo miserable, en el cual se estiman las virtudes por bicocas, cuando las acompaña la pobreza!	*O miserable century, in which virtue is considered as nothing when accompanied by poverty!*
Se han admirado mucho las sentencias de Séneca por sus proprios enemigos,	*The maxims of Seneca have been much admired, even by his enemies.*

7. The verbs **quedar**, 1. *to remain*, and **ir**, 3. *to go*, may sometimes be used instead of **ser** to give more expression to the sentence:

Ha quedado verificado que eso no es verdad,	*It has been proved that this is not true.*
Va demostrado que la tierra rotura alrededor del sol,	*It is proved that the earth revolves around the sun.*

Lección LII. Lesson LII.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Pronouns accompanying the Reflexive Verbs.

Me, *myself.*
Te, *thyself.*
Se, *himself, herself, itself, themselves, yourself, yourselves.*
Nos, *ourselves.*
Os, *yourselves.*

Alabarse, *to praise one's self.*

Infinitive.

Alabarse, *to praise one's self.*

Past.

Haberse alabado, *to have praised one's self.*

Past Participle.

Alabádose, *praised one's self.*

Gerund.

Alabándose,	*praising one's self.*
Habiéndose alabado,	*having praised one's self.*

Indicative Present.

Me alabo,	*I praise myself.*
Te alabas,	*thou praisest thyself.*
Se alaba,	*he praises himself.* / *she praises herself.*
Nos alabamos,	*we praise ourselves.*
Os alabáis,	*you praise yourselves.*
Se alaban,	*they praise themselves.*
V. se alaba (*sing.*),	*you praise yourself.*
VV. se alaban (*pl.*),	*you praise yourselves.*
etc.	*etc.*

Past Indefinite.

Me he alabado,	*I have praised myself.*
Te has alabado,	*thou hast praised thyself.*
Se ha alabado,	*he has praised himself.* / *she has praised herself.*
V. se ha (*sing.*) alabado,	*you have praised yourself.*
Nos hemos alabado,	*we have praised ourselves.*
Os habéis alabado,	*you have praised yourselves.*
Se han alabado,	*they have praised themselves.*
VV. se han (*pl.*) alabado,	*you have praised yourselves.*
etc.	*etc.*

Imperative.

Alábate,	*praise thyself.*
Alabaos,	*praise yourselves.*

Present Subjunctive.

Me alabe,	*I may praise myself.*
Te alabes,	*thou mayest praise thyself.*
Se alabe,	*he may praise himself.*
Nos alabemos,	*we may praise ourselves.*
Os alabéis,	*you may praise yourselves.*
Se alaben,	*they may praise themselves.*

Reflexive verb conjugated with another verb.

Yo quiero alabar-**me**,	*I will praise myself.*
Tú quieres alabar-**te**,	*thou wilt praise thyself.*
Él quiere alabar-**se**,	*he will praise himself.*
Ella quiere alabar-**se**,	*she will praise herself.*
V. quiere (*sing.*) alabar-**se**,	*you will praise yourself.*
Nosotros queremos alabar-**nos**,	*we will praise ourselves.*
Vosotros queréis alabar-**os**,	*you will praise yourselves.*
Ellos (*m.*) / Ellas (*f.*) quieren alabar-**se**,	*they will praise themselves.*
VV. quieren (*pl.*) alabar-**se**,	*you will praise yourselves.*

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Llamarse, 1. ¿Como se llama V.? — Me llamo José.	What is your name? — My name is Joseph.
Equivocarse, 1. V. se equivoca.	You are mistaken.
Sentarse, 1. Siéntese V., señora.	Sit down, madam.
Levantarse, 1. ¿Á qué hora se levanta V.? — Me levanto á las seis.	At what time do you rise? — I rise at six o'clock.
Acostarse, 1. ¿Porqué no se acuestan los muchachos? — Se acostarán pronto.	Why do not the boys go to bed? — They will soon go to bed.
Pasearse, 1. ¿Quiere V. pasearse conmigo? — No tengo tiempo de pasearme.	Will you take a walk with me? — I have no time to walk.
Divertirse, 3. Me divierto mucho aquí.	I amuse myself very much here.
Enfadarse, 1. No se enfade V.	Do not get angry.
Cortarse, 1. Los muchachos se han cortado.	The boys have cut themselves.
Vestirse, 3. Nos vestiremos más tarde.	We will dress later.
Calentarse, 1. Caliéntese V.	Warm yourself.
Verse, 2. No puedo verme en el espejo.	I cannot see myself in the looking-glass.
Arrepentirse, 3. Él se arrepintió antes de morir.	He repented before dying.
Dirigirse, 3. Á quién debo dirigirme? — V. puede dirigirse á mí.	To whom must I apply? — You may apply to me.
Ellas se han escrito.	They have written to each other.
No nos hemos hablado.	We have not spoken to each other.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El mercader, *the merchant.*	**Defender**, 2. *to defend.*
La colocación, *the situation.*	**Desmayarse**, 1. *to faint.*
La cuenta, *the account.*	**Despertarse**, 1. *to awake.*
La miseria, *the misery.*	**Divertirse**, 3. *to amuse one's self.*
Ligero, *quick.*	**Dormirse**, 3. *to fall asleep.*
Parado, *standing.*	**Enfadarse**, 1. *to get angry.*
Acordarse, 1. *to remember.*	**Equivocarse**, 1. *to make a mistake.*
Acostarse, 1. *to go to bed.*	**Llamarse**, 1. *to be called.*
Apoderarse, 1. *to take possession.*	**Levantarse**, 1. *to rise.*
Bañarse, 1. *to bathe.*	**Pasearse**, 1. *to take a walk.*
Burlarse, 1. *to laugh at.*	**Quedarse**, 1. *to remain.*
Caerse, 2. *to fall.*	**Quejarse**, 1. *to complain.*
Calentar, 1. *to warm.*	**Quemar**, 1. *to burn.*
Casarse, 1. *to marry.*	**Rendirse**, 3. *to surrender.*
Comportarse, 1. *to behave.*	**Sentarse**, 1. *to sit down.*

Exercise 103.

1. ¿ Porqué no se sienta V. ? 2. No estoy cansado, prefiero quedarme parado. 3. ¿ Se divierten VV. en el campo ? 4. Nos divertimos muchísimo ahí. 5. ¿ No se equivoca V. cuando V. dice eso ? 6. No me equivoco. 7. ¿ Porqué no se pasea V. todas las mañanas ? 8. Me paseo cuando el tiempo está bueno. 9. ¿ Se levanta V. temprano ? 10. Me levanto tan pronto como me despierto. 11. Si V. tiene frío, caliéntese. 12. No se queme V. ; el plato está muy caliente. 13. No sé lo que tengo, pero no puedo dormir cuando me acuesto por la noche. 14. Es porque V. se acuesta demasiado temprano, y se levanta demasiado tarde. 15. ¿ Cómo se llama su amigo de V. ? 16. Se llama Juan, y su hermana se llama María. 17. ¿ Porqué no va V. al jardín á divertirse con los muchachos ? 18. No me siento bien, quiero ir á acostarme. 19. Los enemigos se apoderaron de una de nuestras fortalezas. 20. Toda la familia está en el campo ; yo me he quedado solo en la ciudad. 21. ¿ Se acuerda V. de lo que dijo este hombre ? 22. Me acuerdo de todo lo que dijo. 23. Dígale V. al mercader que se equivocó en la cuenta que nos mandó. 24. ¿ Porqué se queja V. de mí ? 25. Yo no me quejo de nadie. 26. ¿ Se han hablado estas señoras ? 27. Creo que no se han hablado. 28. ¿ Dónde ha conocido V. á este caballero ? 29. Nos hemos conocido en Madrid. 30. ¿ Porqué se burlan VV. de este hombre ? 31. Porque es muy ridículo. 32. El hijo de Juan se está muriendo. 33. La pobre madre

se desmayó cuando le hablaron de la muerte de su hijo. 34. Mi hermano se casará cuando tenga una buena colocación. 35. Si V. no hubiese corrido tan ligero, no se habría caído.

Exercise 104.

1. Why do not the children go to bed? 2. They will not go to bed. 3. How is that said in Spanish? 4. I don't know how it is said. 5. What is your name, my friend? 6. My name is Edward. 7. Why does not your brother get up; is he sick? 8. He is not sick, but he always gets up late. 9. Sit down; I will be ready in a moment. 10. Will you take a walk with us? 11. With pleasure; where do you wish to go? 12. Let us go to the park. 13. Why do you get angry so quickly? 14. You are mistaken; I never get angry. 15. Will you not go to the concert with us? 16. I am so tired that I am afraid to fall asleep. 17. When I was in the country I rose very early, but since I have been (am) in town I rise very late. 18. Have the children taken a walk? 19. Yes, sir, they take a walk every morning early. 20. What did you say when he complained to you? 21. I did not say anything. 22. He believed himself rich, but he was far from being so. 23. These soldiers defended themselves with the greatest courage. 24. That officer covered himself with glory. 25. Where have you known each other? 26. We have known each other in France. 27. The enemy has surrendered. 28. The children have taken a bath in the river. 29. Don't laugh at that man, because he is poor and old. 30. I have never laughed at him. 31. That boy has behaved very badly. 32. She fainted on hearing that. 33. You have made a mistake in saying that. 34. After having lost his fortune, he saw himself in the greatest misery. 35. My sister will be married next week.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Reflexive or pronominal verbs are conjugated in Spanish with two personal pronouns of the same person, the *first* (expressed or understood) being the subject, and the second, according to the *active* or *neuter* meaning of the verb, the direct or indirect object:

Yo me divierto *or* me divierto,	*I amuse myself.*
Él se alaba *or* se alaba,	*He praises himself.*

NOTE. — The indirect pronoun may also be placed after the verb and form but one word with the same:

Divertímonos muchísimo, *We amuse ourselves much.*

2. Reflexive verbs are either **essentially reflexive,** that is, they cannot be used *without the two personal pronouns,* as **arrepentirse,** 3. *to repent;* **acordarse,** 1. *to remember,* etc., or **accidentally reflexive,** that is, they may be formed as in English, from active or neuter verbs: **quemarse,** 1. *to burn one's self,* from **quemar,** 1. *to burn;* **calentarse,** 1. *to warm one's self,* from **calentar,** 1. *to warm,* etc.

The number of verbs **essentially reflexive** is limited, but *accidentally reflexive verbs* are unlimited, since in Spanish, as well as in English, almost any verb may be used *reflexively.*

3. Many verbs which are reflexive in Spanish are not so in English. Such are, among others, the verbs:

Quejarse, 1. *to complain.*	Arrepentirse, 3. *to repent.*
Acordarse, 1. *to remember.*	Apoderarse, 1. *to take possession.*
etc.	etc.

4. A reflexive verb, conjugated with another verb, takes the corresponding personal pronoun with the infinitive:

Quiero **divertirme,**	*I wish to amuse myself.*
Vamos á **bañarnos,**	*We are going to take a bath.*

NOTE. — It is to be observed that in this case also the *indirect pronoun* may precede the first verb: **Me quiero divertir,** *I wish to amuse myself;* **nos vamos á bañar,** *we are going to take a bath,* etc. This is not the better usage.

5. In compound tenses, the object pronoun is placed before the auxiliary:

Me he cortado,	*I have cut myself.*
Se han burlado de V.,	*They have made fun of you.*
Él se ha comprado una casa,	*He has bought himself a house.*

6. Reflexive verbs, when used with plural persons, also express in Spanish a reciprocal or mutual action. When the reciprocal form is not plainly indicated by the simple reflexive, **el uno . . . el otro,** or **uno . . . otro** must be added to the verb:

Nos alabamos,	*We praise ourselves.*
Nos alabamos el **uno al otro,**	*We praise each other.*
Se vieron, pero no se hablaron,	*They saw each other, but they did not speak to each other.*
Se han escrito muchas cartas,	*They have written many letters to each other.*

7. The *d* of the second person is dropped in the imperative of reflexive verbs:

Amaos instead of *amados,*	*Love each other.*

8. When the present subjunctive forms are used for the imperative, the object pronoun follows and is united to the verb. In the first person plural the final *s* is then dropped:

Alábese,	*let him praise himself.*
Alábese V.,	*praise yourself.*
Alábense,	*let them praise themselves*
Alabense VV.,	*praise yourselves.*
Alabémonos,	*let us praise ourselves*
Amémonos,	*let us love each other.*

NOTE. — For further details, *cf.* Lesson XLII.

9. Accidentally reflexive verbs have often a different meaning from that of the primitive verb, as for instance:

Burlarse de uno,	*To make fun of some one.*
Burlar las esperanzas de uno,	*To destroy the hopes of some one.*
Dormirse, 3. *to fall asleep.*	Dormir, 3. *to sleep.*
Desmayarse, 1. *to faint.*	Desmayar, 1. *to lose courage.*
Caerse, 2. *to fall.*	Caer en una falta, *to commit a fault.*

10. There are many Spanish verbs which may be used either reflexively or not, without altering their meaning:

Fiarse *or* fiar de alguno,	*To trust somebody.*
Chancearse *or* chancear con alguno,	*To joke with some one.*
Reírse *or* reír de alguno,	*To laugh at some one.*
Se ha muerto *or* Ha muerto,	*He has died.*

Lección LIII. Lesson LIII.

REFLEXIVE VERBS (*Continued*).

Irse, 3. *to go away.*

Yo me voy,	*I am going away.*
Tú te vas,	*Thou art going away.*
Él se va,	*He is going away.*
Ella se va,	*She is going away.*
V. (*sing.*) se va,	*You are going away.*
Nosotros nos vamos,	*We are going away.*
Vosotros os vais,	*You are going away.*
Ellos (*m.*) se van, / Ellas (*f.*) se van,	*They are going away.*
VV. (*pl.*) se van,	*You are going away.*

Reflexive Verbs referring to parts of the Body.

Cortarse *la* mano,	*To cut one's hand.*
Yo me corto la mano	*I cut my hand.*
Tú te cortas la mano,	*Thou cuttest thy hand.*
Él se corta la mano,	*He cuts his hand.*
Ella se corta la mano,	*She cuts her hand.*
V. (*sing.*) se corta la mano,	*You cut your hand.*
Nosotros nos cortamos la mano,	*We cut our hand.*
Vosotros os cortáis la mano,	*You cut your hand.*
Ellos (*m.*) se cortan la mano, / Ellas (*f.*) se cortan la mano,	*They cut their hand.*
VV. (*pl.*) se cortan la mano,	*You cut your hand.*

Ponerse *el* sombrero,	*To put on one's hat.*
Yo me pongo el sombrero,	*I put on my hat.*
Tú te pones el sombrero,	*Thou puttest on thy hat.*
Él se pone el sombrero,	*He puts on his hat.*
Ella se pone el sombrero,	*She puts on her hat.*
V. (*sing.*) se pone el sombrero,	*You put on your hat.*
Nosotros nos ponemos el sombrero,	*We put on our hat.*
Vosotros os ponéis el sombrero,	*You put on your hat.*
Ellos (*m.*) se ponen el sombrero, / Ellas (*f.*) se ponen el sombrero,	*They put on their hat.*
VV. (*pl.*) se ponen el sombrero,	*You put on your hat.*

Ponerselo,	*To put it on.*
Yo me lo pongo,	*I put it on.*
Tú te lo pones,	*Thou puttest it on.*
Él se lo pone,	*He puts it on.*
Ella se lo pone,	*She puts it on.*
V. (*sing.*) se lo pone,	*You put it on.*
Nosotros nos lo ponemos,	*We put it on.*
Vosotros os lo ponéis,	*You put it on.*
Ellos (*m.*) se lo ponen, / Ellas (*f.*) se lo ponen,	*They put it on.*
VV. (*pl.*) se lo ponen,	*You put it on.*

Compound Tenses.

Yo me he cortado la mano,	*I have cut my hand.*
Tú te has cortado la mano,	*Thou hast cut thy hand.*
Él se ha cortado la mano,	*He has cut his hand.*
Ella se ha cortado la mano,	*She has cut her hand.*
V. (*sing.*) se ha cortado la mano,	*You have cut your hand.*
Nosotros nos hemos cortado la mano,	*We have cut our hand.*
Vosotros os habéis cortado la mano,	*You have cut your hand.*
Ellos (*m.*) se han cortado la mano, / Ellas (*f.*) se han cortado la mano,	*They have cut their hand.*
VV. (*pl.*) se han cortado la mano,	*You have cut your hand.*
Yo me he puesto el sombrero,	*I have put on my hat.*
etc.	*etc.*
Yo me lo he puesto,	*I have put it on.*
etc.	*etc.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Mateo se ensució los dedos.	Matthew soiled his fingers.
Nos hemos quemado la mano.	We have burned our hand.
¿ Se ha quitado V. los zapatos ?	Have you taken off your shoes ?
No me los he quitado.	I have not taken them off.
¿ Se pondrá V. el sombrero nuevo ?	Will you put on your new hat ?
Me pondré el viejo.	I will put on the old one.
¿ Quién le corta á V. las uñas ?	Who cuts your nails ?
Mi madre me las corta.	My mother cuts them for me.
¿ Cuándo se va V. ?	When are you going away ?
Me voy ahora.	I am going away now.

Vocabulario.

El dedo, *the finger.*
El guante, *the glove.*
La bota, *the boot.*
La cama, *the bed.*
La camisa, *the shirt.*
La cara, *the face.*
La casaca, *the coat.*
La media, *the stocking.*
La pierna, *the leg.*
La uña, *the nail.*
Adiós, *good-by.*

Vocabulary.

Afuera, *out.*
Hinchado, *swollen.*
Pues, *well.*
Afeitar, 1. *to shave.*
Lavar, 1. *to wash.*
Marcharse, 1. *to depart.*
Ponerse, 2. *to put on.*
Quitarse, 1. *to take off.*
Seguir, 3. *to continue.*
Sentar, 1. *to become.*

Exercise 105.

1. Váyase V. de aquí, V. hace demasiado ruido. 2. Me iré en un momento. 3. ¿ Se ha lavado V. las manos ? 4. Me he lavado las manos y la cara. 5. ¿ Cuándo se marcha su hermano de V. ? 6. Se marchará esta noche á las ocho. 7. ¿ Porqué no se corta V. las uñas ? 8. Me las corto todas las semanas. 9. Los hombres quieren irse. 10. Pues, que se vayan. 11. ¿ Porqué no se quita V. las medias antes de acostarse ? 12. Yo me las quito en la cama. 13. Quítese V. el sombrero cuando V. entra en el cuarto. 14. Yo siempre me lo quito. 15. Vámonos, ya es tarde. 16. No puedo irme ahora; tengo todavía demasiado que hacer. 17. No puedo ponerme los zapatos, tengo los pies hinchados. 18. Ese muchacho se va á cortar los dedos si sigue jugando con el cuchillo. 19. Póngase V. otra camisa, la que V. tiene no está limpia. 20. El pobre Juan se rompió la pierna, cuando cayó de su caballo. 21. ¿ Cuántas veces se afeita V. ? 22. Me afeito todos los días. 23. ¿ Porqué no se quita V. las botas ? 24. No puedo quitármelas. 25. Adiós, amigo, me voy.

Exercise 106.

1. Why do you go away so soon ? 2. I have to go away, it is already late. 3. Johnny is a bad boy, he would not take off his hat in Mrs. Riera's house. 4. Wash that child's face and take him out. 5. I cannot write, I must first warm my hands. 6. Do not go away yet, I need you. 7. When can I go away ? 8. You may go away in half an hour. 9. Would you go away if you could remain longer ? 10. I would not go away if I had not so much to do. 11. Wash your

hands and come with me. 12. Do not take off your hat, you have to go out yet. 13. I cannot put on these gloves, they are too small for me. 14. Poor Mr. Castro broke his arm the other day. 15. Which coat will you put on? 16. I will put my blue coat on. 17. Let us go away, my father is waiting for us. 18. Which of your brothers is going away next week? 19. They are both going away. 20. Take off that hat, it does not become you. 21. Good-by, sir, we are going away. 22. If you fall down, you will break your head. 23. I have burned my hand, and I cannot work to-day. 24. He put on his hat and coat, and went away without saying a word. 25. Felipe will not put on his shoes; he says that he has sore feet. 25. Our friends are going away to-morrow. 27. Why do you not go with them? 28. You know very well that I am obliged to remain in town.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The reflexive pronoun is used in Spanish when the object of the verb is a *part of the body*, and in such cases the article takes the place of the *possessive adjective* before the noun:

Yo me corto el dedo,	*I cut my finger.*
Él se lava la cara,	*He washes his face.*

NOTE. — **Se** is the pronoun which refers to the subject. **If le were** used the reference would be to some person other than the subject:

Ella le lava la cara,	*She washes his face.*

2. The verbs **ponerse**, 2. *to put on*, and **quitarse**, 1. *to take off*, follow the same rule as above when referring to articles of clothing:

Me pongo el sombrero,	*I put on my hat.*
Me quito los guantes,	*I take off my gloves.*

Lección LIV. Lesson LIV.

PERIPHRASTIC VERBS.

Hacerse,	*to become.*	Haber de,	*must, shall.*
Meterse á,		Tener que,	
Ponerse,		Haber menester de,	
Volverse,		Tener menester de	
Llegar á ser,		Deber de,	
Venir á ser			
Irse haciendo,		Placer, 2.	*to like, to please.*
Venir á ser,		Gustar, 1.	
Venir á parar,		Agradar, 1.	

Conjugation.

Hacerse, 2. **meterse**, 2. **ponerse**, 2. **volverse**, 2. *to become.*

Present Indicative.

Yo me hago,	*I become.*
Tú te haces,	*thou becomest.*
Él se hace,	*he becomes.*
Ella se hace,	*she becomes.*
V. (*sing.*) se hace,	*you become.*
Nosotros nos hacemos,	*we become.*
Vosotros os hacéis,	*you become.*
Ellos (*m.*) se hacen, / Ellas (*f.*) se hacen,	*they become.*
VV. (*pl.*) se hacen,	*you become.*

Preterit Indefinite.

Me he hecho,	*I have become.*
Te has hecho,	*thou hast become.*
Él se ha hecho,	*he has become.*
Ella se ha hecho,	*she has become.*
V. (*sing.*) se ha hecho,	*you have become.*
Nosotros nos hemos hecho,	*we have become.*
Vosotros os habéis hecho,	*you have become.*
Ellos (*m.*) se han hecho, / Ellas (*f.*) se han hecho,	*they have become.*
VV. (*pl.*) se han hecho,	*you have become.*

Llegar, 1. **venir á ser.**

Present Indicative.

Yo llego á ser, / Yo vengo á ser,	*I become.*
etc.	*etc.*

Preterit Indefinite.

He llegado á ser, / He venido á ser,	*I have become.*

Irse haciendo.

Present Indicative.

Yo me voy haciendo,	*I am becoming.*
Tú te vas haciendo,	*thou art becoming.*
Él se va haciendo,	*he is becoming.*
Ella se va haciendo,	*she is becoming.*
V. (*sing.*) se va haciendo,	*you are becoming.*
Nosotros nos vamos haciendo,	*we are becoming.*
Vosotros os vais haciendo,	*you are becoming.*
Ellos (*m.*) se van haciendo, / Ellas (*f.*) se van haciendo,	*they are becoming.*
VV. (*pl.*) se van haciendo,	*you are becoming.*

Preterit Indefinite.

Me he ido haciendo,	*I have become.*
Te has ido haciendo,	*thou hast become.*
Se ha ido haciendo,	*he* or *she has become.*
V. (*sing.*) se ha ido haciendo,	*you have become.*
Nos hemos ido haciendo,	*we have become.*
Os habéis ido haciendo,	*you have become.*
Se han ido haciendo,	*they have become.*
VV. (*pl.*) se han ido haciendo,	*you have become.*

Haber, 2. **tener menester de, haber de, deber de.**

Present Indicative.

Yo he menester de salir,	*I must go out.*
etc.	*etc.*

Preterit Indefinite.

He habido menester de salir,	*I have been obliged to go out.*
etc.	*etc.*

Gustar, 1. **placer,** 2. **agradar,** 1. *to like, to please.*

Present Indicative (*affirmatively*).

Me gusta *or* **gustan,**	*I like* or *like to.*
Te gusta *or* **gustan,**	*thou likest* or *likest to.*
Le gusta *or* **gustan,**	*he* or *she likes* or *likes to.*
Á V. le gusta *or* **gustan** (*sing.*),	*you like* or *like to.*
Nos gusta *or* **gustan,**	*we like* or *like to.*
Os gusta *or* **gustan,**	*you like* or *like to.*
Les gusta *or* **gustan,**	*they like* or *like to.*
Á VV. les gusta *or* **gustan** (*pl.*)	*you like* or *like to.*

Present Indicative (*interrogatively*).

¿ **Me gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á mí** ?	*do I like* (or *do I like to*) ?
¿ **Te gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á ti** ?	*dost thou like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Le gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á él** ?	*does he like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Le gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á ella** ?	*does she like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Le gusta** (*or* **gustan, á V.** (*sing.*) ?	*do you like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Nos gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á nosotros** ?	*do we like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Os gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á vosotros** ?	*do you like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Les gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á ellos** (*m.*) ?	*do they like* (or *like to*) ?
¿ **Les gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á ellas** (*f.*) ?	
¿ **Les gusta** (*or* **gustan**) **á VV.** (*pl.*) ?	*do you like* (or *like to*) ?

Vocabulario.

El chaleco, *the vest.*
El precio, *the price.*
El prisionero, *the prisoner.*
El sastre, *the tailor.*
La lluvia, *the rain.*
Los padres, *the parents.*
Débil, *weak.*
De repente, *suddenly.*
Despacio, *slowly.*
Honrado, *honest.*
Loco, *insane.*
Orgulloso, *proud.*

Vocabulary.

Otra cosa, *something else.*
Sobre, *about.*
Fusilar, 1. *to shoot.*
Concluirse, 3. *to end.*
Construir, 3. *to build.*
Correr, 2. *to run.*
Echarse, 1. *to begin.*
Gritar, 1. *to scream.*
Llamar, 1. *to call.*
Odiar, 1. *to hate.*
Respetar, 1. *to respect.*
Seguir, 3. *to continue.*

Exercise 107.

1. Mi hermano se ha hecho negociante. 2. Este hombre no sabe nada, y se ha metido á médico. 3. Por sus talentos llegó aquel

oficial á ser general. 4. El tiempo se ha puesto tan malo, que no hemos podido marcharnos. 5. Juan se puso tan malo, que creíamos que se iba á morir. 6. Yo no sé en qué vendrá á parar esta disputa. 7. Me es preciso salir mañana muy temprano. 8. Si el enfermo sigue malo, habrá que llamar al médico. 9. El hijo debe y ha de respetar á sus padres. 10. El general mandó fusilar á los prisioneros. 11. Sobre eso, hay mucho que decir. 12. El muchacho se echó á correr después de haber robado las manzanas. 13. ¿ Le gusta á V. la cerveza? 14. No me gusta mucho. 15. ¡Qué se hará de nosotros si no recibimos dinero! 16. Hemos menester de salir antes de las tres. 17. Nuestro amigo Felipe trabaja mucho, y se va haciendo rico. 18. Estando en la calle, se puso á gritar. 19. Muchos de mis amigos se han hecho ricos en América. 20. No me gustan estos libros, y así no los leo. 21. Se dice que el padre de Enrique se ha vuelto loco. 22. Aquel hombre se volvió tan orgulloso que era odiado de todos. 23. Tendremos que pagarle á este hombre el precio que pide. 24. Mejor quiero ser pobre que robar. 25. El año que viene me haré construir una casa más grande. 26. No me agrada la conducta de este hombre. 27. Vamos más despacio, á mi no me gusta andar tan ligero. 28. ¿ Á qué ha venido á parar aquello? 29. Todavía no se sabe. 30. No nos place que VV. hagan eso. 31. Deje V. entrar á este hombre.

Exercise 108.

1. My brother would have become a general if the war had not ended. 2. What will become of those two men? 3. A bad prince seldom becomes a good king. 4. Being in the street, he became very sick. 5. The poor man became so weak that he could not walk. 6. John is getting richer every day. 7. I do not like this man, I don't believe he is honest. 8. You will have to give him all the money he asks. 9. The thief began to run when he saw us. 10. What will become of those poor children? 11. You will get sick if you are not more prudent. 12. When iron is exposed to rain it becomes rusty. 13. What would you like to eat? 14. I should like to eat some chicken. 15. I believe that man has become insane. 16. He has become a physician after having studied several years in Paris. 17. You will have to speak to him, if he comes again. 18. I am having a new vest made by my tailor. 19. If you don't like this wine, I will give you something else. 20. The weather has suddenly

become very cold. 21. I don't know what will become of that man. 22. Napoleon the First became great by his victories. 23. I have to stay at home until my brother returns. 24. He began to laugh when I told him that. 25. Are we going to read or to write? 26. You are to read first. 27. If I call you, come immediately, and don't keep me waiting (*make me wait*). 28. Next year we are going to have a house built. 29. Henry has become rich in a few years. 30. My sister says that she does not like her new house.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. There are verbs besides the auxiliary verbs already mentioned which may be called **periphrastic verbs**, because they are used not only to form the compound tenses of other verbs, but also to circumscribe the sentence. The verbs **haber**, 2. and **tener**, 2. followed by the preposition **de**, belong to this category, and so do certain *active* and *neuter* verbs taken reflexively or followed by the preposition **á**, as will be seen by the list above.

2. The verb **to become**, when expressing a change of condition or profession by the subject, is rendered in Spanish by **hacerse**, 2. **ponerse**, 2. and **meterse**, 2.:

Se ha hecho medico,
Se ha puesto medico,
Se ha metido á médico,
} *He has become a physician.*

3. When the change of condition is not performed by the subject, but is a consequence of its merits, **llegar á ser, venir á ser,** or **ser hecho** are then used:

Por sus talentos llegó á ser (vino á ser *or* fué hecho) médico de cámara, — *By his talents he became physician of the court.*

NOTE. — **Irse haciendo, irse poniendo,** and **ir siendo,** are used to express a progressing action.

4. To become or **to get** is translated by **ponerse,** 2. to express a change in health, and by the same verb and by **volverse,** 2. or **hacerse,** 2. if we express a change in the physical or moral condition of a person, animal, or thing:

Se ha puesto enfermo, — *He has become sick.*
Se volvió loco, — *He became insane.*

5. To result is best translated by **ser, salir de,** or **venir á parar:**

Yo no sé en que vendrá á parar (que saldrá *or* que será) de esta disputa,	*I don't know what the result of this dispute will be.*

6. To commence, when governing an infinitive and expressing a motion, or the feeling of joy and sadness, is rendered by **empezar,** 1. **ponerse,** 2. and **echarse,** 1. with the preposition **á:**

Empezó á correr,	*He began to run.*
Se puso á reír,	*He began to laugh.*
Se echó á llorar,	*He began to cry.*

Lección LV. Lesson LV.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Llover, 2. *to rain.*

Llueve,	*It rains.*
Llovía,	*It was raining.*
Llovió,	*It did rain.*
Lloverá,	*It will rain.*
Llovería,	*It should* or *would* **rain.**
Que llueva,	*That it may rain.*
Que lloviese *or* lloviera,	*That it might rain.*
Ha llovido,	*It has rained.*
Había llovido,	*It had been raining.*
Hubo llovido,	*It had rained.*
Habrá llovido,	*It will have rained.*
Habría llovido,	*It should* or *would have rained.*
Que haya llovido,	*That it may have rained.*
Que hubiese / Que hubiera } llovido,	*That it might have rained.*
Habiendo llovido,	*Having rained.*

Helar, 1. *to freeze;*	hiela, *it freezes.*
Granizar, 1. *to hail;*	graniza, *it hails.*
Deshelar, 1. *to thaw;*	deshiela, *it thaws.*
Nevar, 1. *to snow;*	nieva, *it snows.*

Tronar, 1. *to thunder ;*	truena, *it thunders.*
Lloviznar, 1. *to drizzle ;*	llovizna, *it drizzles.*
Relampaguear 1. *to lighten ;*	relampaguea, *it lightens.*
Ventear, 1. *to blow ;*	ventea, *it blows.*
Amanecer, 2. / **Alborear**, 1. } *to dawn ;*	amanece, / alborea, } *it dawns.*
Anochecer, 2. *to grow dark ;*	anochece, *it grows dark.*

Hacer, 2. and **Haber**, 2. impersonally.

¿ Qué tiempo hace ?	*How is the weather ?*
Hace buen tiempo, / Hace hermoso tiempo, }	*It is fine weather.*
Hace mal tiempo,	*It is bad weather.*
Hace calor,	*It is warm.*
Hace frío,	*It is cold.*
Hace viento,	*It is windy.*
Hace sol, / Hay sol, }	*The sun shines.*
Hay luna,	*The moon shines.*
Hace lodo,	*It is muddy.*
Hay polvo,	*It is dusty.*
Hace día,	*It is daylight.*
Hace noche,	*It is night.*

Acaecer, 2. / **Acontecer**, 2, / **Suceder**, 2. } *to happen.* etc.

Importar, 1. *to be important.*
Parecer, 2. *to appear, to seem.*
Convenir, 3. *to be proper.*
etc.

Vocabulario.

El invierno, *the winter.*
El lodo, *the mud.*
El puerto, *the port.*
El quitasol, *the sunshade.*
El sobretodo, *the overcoat.*
El trineo, *the sleigh.*
El trueno, *the thunder.*
La carreta, *the cart.*
La estación, *the season.*
La luna, *the moon.*
La milla, *the mile.*

Vocabulary.

La sociedad, *the society.*
La ventana, *the window.*
Algo, *rather.*
A menudo, *often.*
Comedido, *polite.*
Húmedo, *damp.*
Oscuro, *dark.*
Preciso, *necessary.*
Singular, *singular.*
Alegrarse, 1. *to rejoice.*
Vestirse, 3. *to dress.*

Exercise 109.

1. ¡Qué hermoso tiempo hace hoy! ¿no es verdad? 2. Sí, hace un tiempo de primavera. 3. ¿Hace calor en su país de V.? 4. No hace tanto calor como aquí. 5. Hoy llueve demasiado, los muchachos no podrán salir. 6. Esta noche habrá luna, podremos dar un paseo en el parque. 7. Si sigue la lluvia, habrá mucho lodo en las calles. 8. ¿Qué tiempo hará mañana? V. puedo estar seguro que hará mal tiempo. 9. Hay mucho sol; tome V. su quitasol. 10. Ayer hizo bastante frío. 11. No hizo demasiado frío. 12. ¿Qué fué lo que sucedió? 13. Sucedió que nadie tenía dinero, cuando fué preciso pagar. 14. Si hace frío, póngase V. el sobretodo. 15. Nunca hace demasiado frío para mí. 16. Ni para mí tampoco. 17. Ha nevado muy á menudo este invierno. 18. Abra V. la ventana, y vea V. que tiempo hace. 19. Está helando. 20. Relampagueó muchísimo anoche. 21. Conviene ser comedido en la sociedad. 22. Importa que salgamos temprano mañana. 23. Acaece muchas veces que llueve y hiela al mismo tiempo. 24. Es verdad que su hermano me ha dicho esto, pero yo no lo creo. 25. Yo amanecí en Toledo y anochecí en Madrid. 26. Me acaecieron muchas cosas en el viaje 27. Anochece muy temprano ahora. 28. Está tronando ¿oye V. el trueno? 29. No es el trueno, es una carreta que está pasando en la calle. 30. Si hace buen viento, llegaremos mañana temprano al puerto.

Exercise 110.

1. It is important to know who was the last person who entered the room. 2. A singular thing has occurred. 3. It seems as if you had nothing to say. 4. As soon as it dawns we will dress and leave the house. 5. If I had known that it was so cold, I should not have gone out. 6. It was so hot here last summer that we all went to the country. 7. It hailed last night, and I thought that it would also hail to-day. 8. It thundered and lightened the whole day, but it did not rain. 9. Did it snow this morning? 10. No, but it will either snow or rain in a moment. 11. It dawns very early in this season. 12. I wish it would snow every day, that we might go in a sleigh. 13. How many miles are there from here to B.? 14. It is too late to go there to-day. 15. Dear friend, how glad I am to see you again! 16. It is too damp to-day to go out. 17. It is very dark here, open the windows. 18. It is not daylight yet. 19. It was very fine

weather yesterday. 20. It was rather cold. 21. Was it cold when you were in the country? 22. It was colder there than last year at the same time. 23. I think that it will be very warm this summer. 24. Do you know what happened to my brother? 25. Yes, John told me what happened to him. 26. It is very muddy, put on your other shoes. 27. If it rains, I will lend you my umbrella. 28. It was raining, but it does not rain now. 29. It is very windy. 30. They say that it is just as warm in the country as in the city.

Gramática. **Grammar.**

1. Impersonal verbs can only be used in the infinitive or in the third person singular without any pronoun:

Llueve, *it rains;* granizа, *it hails.*

2. Impersonal verbs are either **essentially impersonal,** that is, cannot be used otherwise, as **llover,** 2. *to rain;* **nevar,** 1. *to snow;* etc., or they are accidentally impersonal, that is, they may be formed from any *active* or *neuter verb.*

3. The verbs **amanecer,** 1. *to dawn,* and **anochecer,** 2. to *grow dark,* when used as neuter verbs, may be conjugated with all persons. We may therefore say:

Amanecimos en Toledo, y anochecimos en Madrid.	*It was daylight when we reached Toledo, and night when we reached Madrid.*

4. The impersonal verbs **acaecer,** 2. **acontecer,** 2. **convenir,** 3. **importar,** 1. **parecer,** 2. **suceder,** 2. admit a subject and agree with the same when accompanied by the pronouns **me, te, le,** etc.:

Me acaecieron muchas cosas,	*Many things happened to me.*
Le sucedieron varias desgracias,	*Several misfortunes happened to him.*

Leccion LVI. Lesson LVI.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

Verbs requiring Prepositions after them.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
V. abusa *de* nuestra amistad.	You abuse our friendship.
El se acerca *de* (á) la ventana.	He approaches the window.
Yo me acuerdo *de* él.	I remember him.
Me alegro *de* ver á V.	I am glad to see you.
El se aleja *de* nosotros.	He goes away from us.
El se inclina *al* vicio.	He inclines towards vice.
Yo adhiero *á* mi opinión.	I adhere to my opinion.
Él está acostumbrado á la limpieza.	He is accustomed to cleanliness.
Ha sido condenado *á* la prisión.	He has been sentenced to prison.
El país abunda *en* hierro.	The country is abundant in iron.
Él ha caido *en* error.	He has fallen into a mistake.
Yo confió *en* V.	I trust to you.
Hemos convenido *en* esto.	We have agreed to that.
Yo no creo en eso.	I do not believe in that.
Se casó *con* mi hermana.	He married my sister.
Cumplo *con* mi obligación.	I do my duty.
Me he excusado *con* él.	I have apologized to him.
Me molesta *con* sus visitas.	He annoys me with his visits.
Él calla *por* miedo.	He is silent through fear.
Me doy *por* vencido.	I consider myself as conquered.
Estoy *por* él.	I abide by him.
Pecamos *por* orgullo.	We sin through pride.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El avaro, *the miser.*	**Adherir**, 3. *to adhere.*
El beneficio, *the benefit.*	**Alejarse**, 1. *to leave.*
El consejo, *the advice.*	**Apartar**, 1. *to remove.*
El pleito, *the lawsuit.*	**Apelar**, 1. *to appeal.*
El reo, *the culprit.*	**Censurar**, 1. *to censure.*
La costa, *the expense.*	**Colmar**, 1. *to overwhelm.*
La fiebre, *the fever.*	**Condenar**, 1. *to condemn.*
La friolera, *the trifle.*	**Dedicar**, 1. *to devote.*
La lágrima, *the tear.*	**Desconfiar**, 1. *to distrust.*
La sentencia, *the judgment.*	**Embarcar**, 1. *to engage.*
La yerba, *the grass.*	**Entender**, 2. *to understand.*
Acostumbrado, *accustomed.*	**Formalizarse**, 1. *to get vexed.*
Agradecido, *thankful.*	**Habituarse**, 1. *to accustom one's* ***self.***
Bordado, *trimmed.*	**Interesarse**, 1. *to take interest.*
Acercarse, 1. *to approach.*	**Jactarse**, 1. *to boast.*

Exercise 111.

1. Si V. adhiere á mi opinión, adheriré yo á la suya. 2. El reo ha sido condenado á muerte. 3. Acuérdese V. de mí. 4. El rey colmó á su ministro de beneficios. 5. Este hombre padece de fiebres. 6. Censuran á este rico de avaro. 7. Con mis consejos le he apartado de malas compañías. 8. Mi hermano ha sido condenado en las costas del pleito. 9. No se acerque V. de la ventana, pues hace frío. 10. Estoy acostumbrado á estos trabajos. 11. V. no tiene razón de acusarme de esto. 12. Estoy agradecido á los beneficios que he recibido. 13. Me alejé de aquella tierra con las lágrimas en los ojos. 14. Me alegro de verle á V. bueno. 15. El negociante ha apelado de la sentencia. 16. El traje de la reina estaba bordado de oro. 17. V. no debería burlarse de este hombre. 18. Yo no me burlo de nadie. 19. He cambiado mi caballo por otro. 20. Nos hemos cansado del viaje. 21. Él se casará con aquella señora tan rica. 22. Aquel joven dedica todo su tiempo al estudio. 23. Desconfío de este hombre sin conocerle. 24. Temo que V. se embarque en malos negocios 25. No entendemos nada de eso. 26. VV. se han formalizado por una friolera. 27. No tiene V. razón de gloriarse de esa acción. 28. No hemos podido habituarnos á ese país. 29. Nos hemos interesado en este joven, pero él nos ha engañado. 30. El pobre hombre se mantenía de frutas y de yerbas.

Exercise 112.

1. If you make fun of me, I will tell it to your father. 2. Has the soldier been sentenced to death? 3. He has been sentenced to (the) prison. 4. He boasts of a thing of which he ought to be ashamed. 5. Our teacher takes great interest in our studies. 6. Do you remember my brother? 7. I remember him very well, but I don't remember your cousin. 8. I am doing something now to which I am not accustomed. 9. Why do you not come near the fire? 10. I am not cold, I am very well here. 11. I am very glad to know that you have not lost your money in that business. 12. We have exchanged our coffee for tea. 13. I do not understand anything about this matter. 14. You are wrong to distrust that man, he is your friend. 15. He accuses me of having deceived him, but he does not tell the truth. 16. I adhere to what I have said. 17. If you engage in that business you will lose all your money. 18. That young man supports his family with his work. 19. Remember what I told you when you see your brother. 20. We are thankful for the benefits we have received. 21. Do not go away from the window. 22. He is very glad to see that his brother studies so much. 23. If you appeal from the judgment, you will be condemned a second time. 24. I have become tired of that house. 25. Do you think that Mr. Martinez will marry Miss Ruiz? 26. I think he will marry her next month.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Many verbs which sometimes in English are not followed by any preposition, govern in Spanish either the genitive, the dative, or the ablative, with the prepositions **de, á con, por, para, sobre,** etc. Some of these verbs may even, without changing their meaning, govern different prepositions, as:

Instruir á alguno *de, en* or *sobre* algo, *To inform some one of something.*

Other verbs change their meaning according to the preposition which follows them:

Creo en él, *I believe in him.*
Me creo de esta cosa, *I am convinced of that thing.*

2 Most reflexive verbs, and those which express the movements of the soul or mind, want, fulness, separation, accusation, blame, etc., generally govern the preposition **de**.

OBSERVATION. — It would be difficult to give definite rules for the government of the other prepositions. The Grammar of the Spanish Academy contains a long list of verbs with their corresponding prepositions. We have omitted the same, as we consider that the student will have to depend principally on practice and reading to master these as well as other difficulties.

Lección LVII. Lesson LVII.

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Ejemplos.	Examples.
Este hombre es digno *de* su posición.	This man is worthy of his position.
Estoy deseoso *de* verle.	I am anxious to see him.
Mi hermano es alto *de* cuerpo.	My brother is tall in size.
Aquella señora es pálida de color.	That lady has a pale complexion.
Nuestra casa está cercana de la ciudad.	Our house is near the city.
Estoy cierto de su venida.	I am sure of his coming.
Este vino es agrio *al* gusto.	This wine is sour to the taste.
Él es amable á todos.	He is amiable towards everybody.
Esto es benéfico á la salud.	This is good for the health.
Él es fiel á sus amigos.	He is faithful to his friends.
Él está triste por la muerte de su hermano.	He is sad about the death of his brother.
Estoy alegre con la llegada de mi hermano.	I am glad at the arrival of my brother.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El compañero, *the companion.*	**Despreciado,** *despised.*
El héroe, *the hero.*	**Digno,** *worthy.*
El pesar, *the grief.*	**Encendido,** *red.*
El poder, *the power.*	**Exento,** *exempted.*
El principio, *the principle.*	**Favorable,** *favorable.*
El temor, *the fear.*	**Incapaz,** *incapable.*
La alabanza, *the praise.*	**Indigno,** *unworthy.*
La botella, *the bottle.*	**Inmóvil,** *immovable.*
La costumbre, *the manner.*	**Lleno,** *full.*
La mina, *the mine.*	**Maduro,** *ripe.*
La naranja, *the orange.*	**Penoso,** *hard, painful.*
La razón, *the reason.*	**Poderoso,** *powerful.*
La ruina, *the ruin.*	**Propenso,** *inclined.*
La súplica, *the entreaty.*	**Propicio,** *propitious.*
Aceptable, *acceptable.*	**Sorprendido,** *surprised.*
Ansioso, *eager.*	**Descascarar,** 1. *to peel.*
Codicioso, *greedy.*	**Obrar,** 1. *to act.*
Conforme, *conformably.*	

Exercise 113.

1. Este hombre es muy codicioso de dinero. 2. V. está lleno de soberbia, y V. no tiene motivo para ello. 3. Mi hermano ha sido exento del servicio militar. 4. Es una cosa fácil de hacer, y sin embargo V. la hace muy mal. 5. Los habitantes de aquella isla son puros de costumbres. 6. Es penoso de ver á ese hombre correr á la ruina. 7. Hemos obrado conforme á la razón. 8. Don Pedro es un hombre despreciado de todos é indigno del empleo que ocupa. 9. Esta fruta no es buena para comer. 10. V. es incapaz de comprender nuestras ideas. 11. Estoy contento con lo que tengo, y no deseo nada más. 12. La proposición que V. nos hace es aceptable para todos. 13. La pobre mujer se quedó inmóvil de temor. 14. La acción de ese hombre es digna de alabanza. 15. La vida humana está llena de pesares. 16. El héroe está siempre ansioso de gloria; y el avaro, codicioso de dinero. 17. Este muchacho es muy bonito de cara. 18. Esta lengua es fácil de aprender. 19. Aquel país es rico en granos, pero pobre en minas. 20. Estoy cierto de mi aserción. 21. El hombre verdaderamente liberal es fiel á sus principios. 22. La libertad es propicia á las ciencias y á las artes. 23. ¿ Porqué está V. tan encendido de cara? 24. Porque acabo de correr, y tengo mucho calor. 25. La naranja madura es fácil de descascarar.

Exercise 114.

1. That fruit is not good to eat, it is not ripe yet. 2. If you act in (*de*) that way you will be despised by everybody. 3. You ought to be satisfied with what you have. 4. I am anxious to see your brother; when does he arrive? 5. He will be here to-morrow. 6. That action is unworthy of an honest man. 7. The mighty are inclined to abuse their power. 8. It is easy to say that, but it is not so easy to do as you think. 9. I am certain of what I say. 10. The weather is very favorable for our journey. 11. That bottle is full of wine. 12. That country is very rich in gold mines. 13. We are most anxious to know the truth. 14. I knew that you were incapable of acting thus. 15. That child is beloved by all his companions. 16. They have acted according to (the) reason. 17. Life is full of misery. 18. I am tired of the conduct of this man. 19. We are not accustomed to see so many people in our small town. 20. I am surprised at what that man has told us. 21. He is deaf to all our entreaties. 22. Those men are poor in means, but rich in credit. 23. They are very sad about the death of their father. 24. Your father's proposition is acceptable to everybody. 25. The poor servant was all his life faithful to his master.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Many adjectives have in Spanish a meaning by themselves, while others require a complement to their meaning, as **digno,** *worthy;* **propenso,** *inclined;* **comparable,** *comparable;* etc.:

Es una acción digna (*of what?*) de elogio,	*It is an action worthy of praise.*
Los poderosos son propensos (*to what?*) á abusar de su poder,	*The mighty are inclined to abuse their power.*

2. An adjective may govern a noun, an infinitive, or a sentence in the subjunctive mood:

Fiel á sus amigos,	*Faithful to his friends.*
Diestro en saltar,	*Skillful in jumping.*
Él es indigno de que le compadezcan,	*He is unworthy of being pitied.*

3. Those adjectives which express *worthiness, unworthiness, facility, difficulty, fullness, want, scarcity, eagerness, anxiety, de-*

sire, exception, moral or *physical qualities, moral* or *physical separation, distance, proximity, certainty, uncertainty, danger,* etc., are generally followed by the preposition **de**:

Digno de recompensa,	*Worthy of reward.*
Indigno de perdón,	*Unworthy of pardon.*
Fácil de hacer,	*Easy to do.*
Penoso de hacer,	*Difficult to do.*
Lleno de soberbia,	*Full of pride.*
Escaso de conceptos,	*Poor in ideas.*
Deseoso de trabajar,	*Desirous of working.*
Codicioso de dinero,	*Eager for money.*
Gordo de talle,	*Stout in body.*
Blando de corazón,	*Soft in heart.*
Inseparable de sus amigos,	*Inseparable from his friends.*
Cercano de la ciudad,	*Near the city.*
Lejano de la ciudad,	*Far from the city.*
Cierto de su venida,	*Certain of his arrival.*
Seguro de peligro,	*Sure of danger.*
etc.	*etc.*

4. Adjectives expressing the feelings of the soul or mind take the prepositions **de, por,** or **con**:

Inmóvil de temor,	*Immovable with fear.*
Triste por su muerte,	*Sad at his death.*
Alegre con su llegada,	*Pleased at his arrival.*

NOTE. — When the adjective precedes a verb in the Infinitive mood, the preposition **de** may always be used:

Contento de ver,	*Glad to see you.*

5. In most other cases the adjectives require the same prepositions as in English.

6. Past participles used as adjectives may be followed by **de** or **por**:

Es un hombre despreciado de (*por*) todos,	*He is a man despised by all.*

7. There are also adjectives which vary in meaning, according to the preposition which follows them:

Esta fruta es buena para comer,	*This fruit is good to eat.*
Esta naranja es buena de descascarar,	*This orange is easy to peel.*

Lección LVIII. Lesson LVIII.

THE ADVERB.

Adverbs of Place.

Ahí, *there.*
Aquí, acá, *here.*
Allí, *there.*
Allá, *yonder.*
Cerca (de), *near.*
Lejos (de), *far.*
Donde, *where.*
Ádonde, *whereto.*
Dedonde, *wherefrom.*
Adentro, *within.*
etc.

Dentro (de), *in.*
Fuera (de), *out.*
Arriba, *up.*
Abajo, *down.*
Adelante, *forward.*
Atrás, *back.*
Delante (de), *before.*
Detrás (de), *behind.*
Encima (de), *upon.*
etc.

Adverbs of Time.

Hoy, *to-day.*
Mañana, *to-morrow.*
Ahora, *now.*
Luego, *afterwards.*
Tarde, *late.*
Temprano, *early.*
Presto, *quick.*
etc.

Pronto, *soon.*
Siempre, *always.*
Nunca, Jamás, } *never.*
Ya, *already.*
Mientras, *whilst.*
Aun, *yet, still.*
etc.

Adverbs of Manner.

Bien, *well.*
Mal, *badly.*
Así, *so, thus.*
Bajo, *low.*
etc.

Recio, *loud.*
Despacio, *slowly.*
De prisa, *quickly.*
Alto, *loud.*
etc.

Adverbs of Quantity.

Mucho, *much.*
Poco, *little.*
Sobrado, Harto, Bastante, } *enough.*
etc.

Muy, *very.*
Tan, *so, as.*
Tanto, *so much, as much.*
Cuanto, *how much.*
Demasiado, *too much.*
etc.

Adverbs of Comparison.

Más, *more.*	Mejor, *better.*
Menos, *less.*	Peor, *worse.*
etc.	etc.

Adverbs of Order.

Primeramente, *first.*	Sucesivamente, *successively.*
Últimamente, *lastly.*	Antes (de), *before.*
	Después (de), *after.*

Adverbs of Affirmation.

Sí, *yes.*	Verdaderamente, *verily.*
Ciertamente, *certainly.*	Indudablemente, *undoubtedly.*
etc.	etc.

Adverbs of Negation.

No, *no.*	Nada, *nothing, not anything.*
Tampoco, *neither, not either.*	De ninguna manera, *nowise.*
etc.	etc.

Adverbs of Uncertainty.

Tal vez, Quizá, Quizás, *perhaps.*	Acaso, Por ventura, Por fortuna, *perhaps (in interrogations).*
etc.	etc.

Adverbial Expressions.

Sobre poco más ó menos,	*About, more or less.*
Á lo menos, al menos,	*At least.*
Á diestra y siniestra,	*Right and left.*
Á duras penas,	*With great trouble.*
De aquí para allí, De acá para allá, Aquí y allí, Acá y allá, acullá,	*Here and there.*

Formation of Adverbs with *mente* (ly).

Fácil, fácilmente,	*Easy, easily.*
Constante, constantemente,	*Constant, constantly.*
Triste, tristemente,	*Sad, sadly.*
Alegre, alegremente,	*Joyful, joyfully.*
Elegante, elegantemente,	*Elegant, elegantly.*
Sabio, sabiamente.	*Wise, wisely.*

Delicado, delicadamente,	*Delicate, delicately.*
Claro, claramente,	*Clear, clearly.*
Verdadero, verdaderamente,	*True, truly.*

Vocabulario.

El bastón, *the cane.*
La desgracia, *the misfortune.*
La fuerza, *the strength.*
La grosería, *the rudeness.*
La tarde, *the afternoon.*
Acaso, *perhaps.*
Afuera, *without.*
Amargo, *bitter.*
Bajo, *low.*
Callado, *silent.*
Ciego, *blind.*
Claro, *clear.*
Conciso, *concise.*
Cortés, *polite.*

Vocabulary.

Cruel, *cruel.*
Después, *after, afterward.*
Probable, *probable.*
Tal vez, *perhaps.*
Acompañar, 1. *to accompany.*
Arrepentirse, 3. *to repent.*
Conseguir, 3. *to obtain.*
Escuchar, 1. *to listen to.*
Faltar, 1. *to fail.*
Oír, 3. *to hear.*
Provenir, 3. *to result.*
Referir, 3. *to relate.*
Responder, 2. *to answer.*

Exercise 115.

1. ¡ Cómo me ha engañado este hombre ! 2. Hemos siempre sabido nuestra lección desde que vamos á la escuela. 3. He venido acá temprano para ver á su hermano de V. 4. Cicerón habló sabia y elocuentemente. 5. César escribió clara, concisa y elegantemente. 6. Yo le hablé cortésmente y él me respondió con grosería. 7. Los muchachos entraron calladitamente, pues la madre estaba muy mala. 8. Jamás ví tal cosa. 9. Si V. quiere, iremos mañana al teatro. 10. Le referiré á V. la historia, si ya no la sabe V. 11. Yo creo que V. podrá conseguir fácilmente el dinero que V. necesita. 12. Esta casa debe haber costado mucho dinero. 13. Vengo de afuera, y he visto una cosa muy curiosa. 14. Aquí mataron á un hombre, según he oído. 15. Primero vino su hermano de V. y después los otros amigos. 16. ¿ Acaso vendrá su padre hoy ? 17. Vendrá tal vez esta noche á las diez. 18. Él anda de aquí para allí sin saber dónde sentarse. 19. V. ha sido muy imprudente, y de ahí proviene su desgracia. 20. ¿ Á qué hora vendrá el médico ? 21. Ya viene. 22. Lo haré si ya no me faltan las fuerzas. 23. No iré allá, pues estoy mejor donde estoy. 24. ¡ Qué tristísimamente llora esta mujer ! 25. Hable V. claro, si V. quiere que yo le comprenda. 26. Nunca volveré á ver á mi querido amigo.

Exercise 116.

1. If you do not pay him, you will repent it bitterly. 2. These two friends are constantly together. 3. You must act prudently if you do not wish to lose your money. 4. Your friend has treated his sister very cruelly. 5. Your exercise is not well done; you have written it badly. 6. You would have acted more wisely if you had not answered that man. 7. I could not listen politely to all he said about you. 8. I have blindly followed your instructions. 9. Speak low, my friend, there is somebody in the other room. 10. How do you do to-day? 11. I am pretty well, thank you. 12. When will your sister arrive? 13. She will probably arrive this afternoon. 14. Look for my cane, I wish to go out now. 15. Shall you accompany your friends to Paris? 16. I shall perhaps accompany them. 17. If you come to-morrow, do not come too late. 18. I shall not be able to come before nine o'clock. 19. Our house is already finished. 20. They walk the whole day here and there without doing anything. 21. Do not speak so loud, I have a headache. 22. I was near him when he was wounded. 23. He was before me, and my brother was behind me. 24. Come quick, I have something to tell you. 25. This author writes very well. 26. We walked very slowly and arrived too late.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. *Place of the Adverb.*

1. The adverb is generally placed in Spanish after the verb. In compound tenses it is placed after the participle, and never between the same and the auxiliary:

El discípulo ha estudiado siempre su lección,	*The scholar has always studied his lesson.*

Although, according to the rules of syntax, we may deviate from this rule, the student would do well to adhere to the same, and thus avoid the mistakes which may result from any deviation.

2. A few adverbs must always stand before the verb, as **no,** etc., and the adverbs of exclamation: **cuánto, cuán, cómo,** etc.:

¡ Cómo me ha engañado !	*How he has deceived me !*

The following adverbs also precede the verb : **apenas,** *hardly ;* **cuando,** *when ;* **luego que,** *as soon as ;* **así que,** *so soon as ;* **mientras que,** *whilst ;* **donde,** *where ;* **de donde,** *whence,* and a few others.

2. *Formation of Adverbs.*

1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives in two different ways :

Adjectives having the same termination for both genders add **mente** (corresponding to the English termination *ly*).

Fácil, fácilmente,	*Easy, easily.*
Dulce, dulcemente,	*Sweet, sweetly.*
Feliz, felizmente,	*Happy, happily.*
Igual, igualmente,	*Equal, equally.*

NOTE. — If an adverb is formed from an adjective which has the written accent, this accent is preserved, even though it does not indicate the accented syllable of the adverb :

Fácilmente. Cortésmente.

2. Adjectives having a different form for the masculine and feminine add **mente** to the feminine form :

Sabio, sabiamente,	*Wise, wisely.*
Claro, claramente,	*Clear, clearly.*
Honrado, honradamente,	*Honest, honestly.*
Rico, ricamente,	*Rich, richly.*

3. Superlatives may be formed from all adverbs ending in **mente :**

Tristísimamente,	*Most sadly.*
Dulcísimamente,	*Most sweetly.*

4. When several adverbs follow each other in the same sentence, it is sufficient to add the termination **mente** to the last adverb, while all the preceding adverbs take the form of the feminine of the adjective :

El habla sabia y elocuentemente,	*He speaks wisely and eloquently.*
El escribe clara, concisa y elegantemente,	*He writes clearly, concisely, and elegantly.*

The same rule is to be observed for the superlative.

5. When different adverbs in **mente** occur in the same sentence without modifying the same verb, it is preferable, for the sake of euphony, to replace one of the adverbs by a noun connected with the preposition **con**:

Hablé cortésmente y él respondió con grosería,	*I spoke courteously and he answered rudely* (with rudeness).

6. Adverbs ending in **mente** govern the same prepositions as the adjectives from which they are formed:

Anteriormente á, etc.	*Anterior to, etc.*

7. Adverbs cannot be formed from all adjectives. Such are: **verde,** *green;* **azul,** *blue;* **enfermo,** *ill;* **poco,** *little;* **mucho,** *much,* etc.

8. A few adverbs may be used diminutively or augmentatively, but only in a familiar way:

Se entró calladitamente y la tomó suavitamente por la mano,	*He entered very quietly and took her very gently by the hand.*

9. Certain adjectives may be used in Spanish as adverbs, and remain then invariable. Such are the adjectives: **claro,** *clear, clearly;* **oscuro,** *obscure, obscurely;* **derecho,** *straight;* **torcido,** *twisted;* **fuerte,** *strong, strongly,* etc.

10. The adverb **ya,** which is generally rendered by *already,* is sometimes rendered by *indeed, since, now,* etc.:

Ya ha llegado,	*He has already arrived.*
Ya de día, ya de noche,	*Now in daytime, now at night.*
Ya que V. lo sabe,	*Since you know it.*
Ya se arrepentirá V.,	*You will indeed repent it.*

Lección LIX. Lesson LIX.

THE PREPOSITION.

Á, *to, at.*	**Hacia**, *towards, to.*
Ante, *before.*	**Hasta**, *as far as, until, till, even.*
Con, *with.*	**Para**, *for, in order to, to.*
Contra, *against.*	**Por**, *by, through, for.*
De, *of, from.*	**Según**, *according to, as.*
Desde, *from, since.*	**Sin**, *without.*
En, *in.*	**Sobre**, *on, upon, about, above.*
Entre, *between, among.*	**Tras**, *behind, besides.*

Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases requiring *de* after them.

Además, *besides.*	**Dentro**, *in.*
Alrededor, *around.*	**Después**, *after.*
Antes, *before* (ref. to time).	**Detrás**, *behind.*
Á pesar, *notwithstanding.*	**Encima**, *on, upon.*
Cerca, *near.*	**Enfrente**, *opposite.*
Debajo, *under.*	**Fuera**, *out.*
Delante, *before.*	**Por medio**, *by means.*

Prepositions followed by *á*.

En cuanto, *as far.*	**Junto**, *next.*

Ejemplos.	**Examples.**
Vendré *á* las ocho.	I will come at eight o'clock.
Compareció *ante* el juez.	He appeared before the judge.
Estoy *con* mi padre.	I am with my father.
Estamos *contra* V.	We are against you.
Se habla *de* V.	They speak of you.
Saldré *en* el mes de Agosto.	I shall leave in the month of August.
Eran *entre* quinze á veinte hombres.	There were between fifteen and twenty men.
Mire V. *hacia* el norte.	Look towards the north.
Voy *hasta* mi casa.	I am going as far as my house.
Trabajo *para* ganar.	I work to earn.
Va á Madrid *por* un año.	He goes to Madrid for a year.
Lo digo *según* me lo han dicho.	I tell it as they told me.

Vive *sin* trabajar.	He lives without working.
El libro está *sobre* la mesa.	The book is on the table.
Voy *tras* V.	I go behind you.
Vendré *después de* las tres.	I will come after three o'clock.
El está *detrás de* mi.	He is behind me.
El perro está *debajo de* la mesa.	The dog is under the table.

Vocabulario.	Vocabulary.
El empleo, *the employment, situation.*	**Corto**, *short.*
El grito, *the outcry.*	**Culpado**, *guilty.*
El marinero, *the sailor.*	**Derecho**, *right.*
El número, *the number.*	**El reo**, *the culprit.*
El principiante, *the beginner.*	**El sueño**, *the dream.*
La cadena, *the chain.*	**El verso**, *the verse.*
La cárcel, *the prison.*	**La bondad**, *the kindness.*
La caridad, *the charity.*	**Sentado**, *seated.*
La cera, *the wax.*	**Cojear**, 1. *to limp, to be lame.*
La comida, *the dinner.*	**Comparecer**, 2. *to appear.*
La gota, *the drop.*	**Contar**, 1. *to count.*
La insolencia, *the insolence.*	**Costar**, 1. *to cost.*
La máscara, *the mask.*	**Dirigir**, 3. *to direct.*
La peseta, *the shilling.*	**Disputar**, 1. *to dispute.*
La prueba, *the proof.*	**Exceder**, 2. *to exceed.*
La vara, *the yard.*	**Mover**, 2. *to move, to turn.*
La vela, *the candle.*	**Pararse**, 1. *to stand.*
Abundante, *abundant.*	**Preguntar**, 1. *to inquire.*
Borracho, *intoxicated.*	**Suministrar**, 1. *to offer.*

Exercise 117.

1. Esta carta va dirigida á mi hermano. 2. Andamos de calle á calle sin saber dónde vamos. 3. Este paño se vende á cinco pesetas la vara. 4. He tomado el dinero á tres por ciento. 5. El vino se perdió gota á gota. 6. El reo compareció ante el juez, y fué condenado á la cárcel por veinte años. 7. Con enseñar también se aprende. 8. La vida del hombre con ser tan corta, nos suministra abundantes pruebas de que no es un sueño. 9. Esta casa está cerca de la de mi hermano. 10. Esta vela es de cera. 11. Mi amigo cojea del pie derecho. 12. Nos vestimos de marineros para ir al baile de máscaras. 13. Yo haré esto para V., pero no de balde. 14. Yo iría de buena gana al campo con V. 15. Tengo un empleo y gano desde ayer. 16. Nadie le excedía á este hombre en bondad. 17. Entre otras cosas he visto un cuadro muy hermoso en la casa del médico. 18. Quintana cuenta

con razón á Herrera entre (or en) el número de los primeros autores españoles. 19. Este hombre hasta tuvo la insolencia de venir borracho á mi casa. 20. Para principiante, no ha hecho V. mal este trabajo. 21. La caridad es sobre todas las virtudes. 22. Se disputa sobre el sentido de este verso. 23. Movióse la conversación sobre vinos franceses. 24. Tras ser culpado, es él que más levanta el grito. 25. Este reloj me cuesta cien pesos sin la cadena. 26. Los hombres estaban sentados alrededor de la mesa.

Exercise 118.

1. That lady comes from Europe. 2. She used to live at our house before the death of her husband. 3. What were you doing under the table? 4. I was looking for my pen. 5. We can do nothing without money. 6. Will you go as far as the church for me? 7. I will accompany you as far as that street. 8. You speak without knowing what you say. 9. Here are some apples for you. 10. My sister lives far from us. 11. Do you know the lady who lives opposite your house? 12. Yes, she is an English lady. 13. Why do those boys walk behind us? 14. They are going to the school next to our house. 15. My brother will come first, and I will go afterwards. 16. My father is in his room and is writing to my mother. 17. Do nothing without consulting me. 18. Come and (*á*) see us this evening with your friends. 19. Do not stand before me, I cannot see anything. 20. His sons were seated around the table. 21. Those two ladies live opposite the church. 22. Let us go as far as the park. 23. The dog is under the table. 24. There is a garden behind the house, and a church behind the garden. 25. I was seated next to my brother, and my sister next to him. 26. Here is money for your dinner. 27. I received these goods by railroad. 28. Has anybody inquired for me? 29. There came a man who inquired for you, and who went away when he heard that you were not at home. 30. We must stay here until to-morrow.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. The preposition **á** is used in Spanish:

1. To express *position at*, or *direction towards:*

Está á izquierda,	*He is on the left.*
Fué á bordo,	*He went on board.*
Irá á Sevilla,	*He will go to Seville.*

2. *In expressions of time:*

Á mediodía,	*At midday.*
Á las once de la mañana,	*At eleven o'clock in the morning.*
Al llegar,	*Upon his arrival.*

3. To express *manner, means:*

Va á pie,	*He goes on foot.*
Le eché á palos,	*I drove him away with a stick.*
Gota á gota,	*Drop by drop.*

4. To express *price* or *rate:*

¿ Á cuánto se vende ?	*What is the price?*
Á dos duros el metro,	*Two dollars a meter.*
Á toda fuerza de máquina,	*At full speed.*
Á cuatro por ciento,	*At four per cent.*

5. To express *resemblance:*

Á la inglesa,	*In the English style.*
Á lo matador,	*Like a bull-fighter.*

6. After verbs requiring or implying the prepositions *to* or *from:*

Dió al niño un perro chico,	*He gave the child a cent.*
Ofreció al juez cien duros,	*He offered the judge a hundred dollars.*
Robaran al ciego su dinero,	*They stole the blind man's money.*

7. To form a great number of adverbial locutions:

Á la verdad,	*Truly.*
Á lo menos,	*At least.*

2. The preposition **ante,** *before,* means in the presence of:

Ante el juez,	*Before the judge.*

It often takes the place of **antes que** or **antes de,** and indicates the preference of one thing or action over another:

Ante todo *or* antes de todo,	*Before everything.*

3. The preposition **con,** *with,* may also mean *although* or *by* when accompanied by the Infinitive:

Con enseñar también se aprende,	*By teaching one also learns.*
La vida del hombre, con ser tan corta, etc.	*The life of man, although short, etc.*

Con is also used to form certain locutions:

Con que V. ha llegado,	*So you have arrived.*

4. The preposition **de** is used

1. To express *time:*

De diá,	*In daytime.*
De noche,	*By night.*
De sol á sol,	*From morning to night.*

2. To express *origin, derivation, separation:*

Viene del almacén de su padre,	*He comes from his father's store.*
Bajó del tren,	*He got out of the train.*
Don Quijote de la Mancha,	*Don Quixote of* (the province of) *La Mancha.*

3. To express *material* and *ownership:*

Un reloj de oro,	*A gold watch.*
Una vela de cera,	*A wax candle.*
Los primos de la mujer de Juan,	*John's wife's cousins.*
El techo de la casa,	*The roof of the house.*

4. To express *use:*

Un perro de caza,	*A hunting dog.*
Una caña de pescar,	*A fishing rod.*

5. To express *contents:*

Un vaso de agua,	*A glass of water.*
Una jícara de chocolate,	*A cup of chocolate.*

6. In exclamations of sorrow and pity:

¡ Pobre de mi padre !	*My poor father !*

7. To express *characteristic, cause, manner:*

La moza de los cabellos rubios,	*The red-headed girl.*
Morir de hambre,	*To die of hunger.*

8. When the word **pedazo,** *piece,* or another noun is understood:

Probé del asado,	*I tasted* (a piece of) *the roast meat.*
Dame de vestir,	*Give me* (clothes) *to dress.*

9. To form many adverbial locutions:

De balde, *for nothing;* de veras, *truly;*
De modo que, *so that;* de buena gana, *willingly.*

10. After a passive verb **by** is expressed by **de,** if the action be *mental:*

Es odiado de todos,	*He is hated by all.*
Era amado de los niños,	*He was loved by the children.*

NOTE. — If the action be *physical,* **por** is used:

Era castigado por el maestro,	*He was punished by the teacher.*

5. The preposition **en,** *in,* is used

1. To express *rest in, motion into, position:*

Vivía en aquella casa,	*He used to live in that house.*
La cena está en la mesa,	*Supper is on the table.*
Entró en el coche,	*He got into the carriage.*
Se sentó en la cama,	*He sat down on the bed.*

2. To express *time:*

En todo el día,	*During the whole day.*
En diciendo eso,	*While saying this.*
Lo hizo en cuatro horas,	*He did it in four hours.*

6. The preposition **para,** *for, to* (*in order to*), also expresses an act ready to be performed:

Estoy para partir,	*I am about leaving.*

7. The preposition **por,** *for, by, though,* also expresses:

1. *Means,* etc.:

Casarse por procurador,	*To marry by proxy.*

2. *Motive,* etc.:

Lo hace por fuerza,	*He does it by force.*

3. *Price,* etc.:

Lo compró por poco dinero,	*He bought it for little money.*

4. *Time:*

Se ausentó por ocho días,	*He was away for a week.*
Por mucho tiempo,	*For a long while.*

5. What happens in favor of a person or thing:

Empeñarse por él,	*To occupy one's self for him.*

6. What is done in place of a person or thing:

Trabajo por él, *I work in his place.*

7. Exchange:

Le doy mi sombrero por el suyo, *I give you my hat for yours.*

8. The estimation in which a person or thing is held:

Está tenido por bueno, *He is considered as a good man.*

Lección LX. Lesson LX.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1st *Conjugation.*

Antojarse, *to long for* (only used in the third person).

2d *Conjugation.*

Pacer, *to graze.*
Placer, *to please.*
Raer, *to rub off.*
Reponer, *to reply.*
Roer, *to gnaw.*
Soler, *to be accustomed.*
Yacer, *to lie.*

Gramática. Grammar.

1. Pacer is not used in the first person singular of the present indicative, or the whole of the present subjunctive.

2. Placer is seldom used except in exclamations:

¡ Plegue á Dios ! *Please God!*
¡ Pluguiera á Dios ! *Would to God!*

[NOTE. — In its other forms it is generally replaced by *querer*, *gustar*, etc.

3. Raer is generally replaced by **borrar**, *to erase*, or **rayar**, *to cross out:*

NOTE. — When used it is conjugated like **caer**.

4. Reponer, in the sense of *to reply,* is only used in the *Pretérito definido* of the Indicative: **repuse, repusiste, repuso,** etc.

5. Roer is generally found only in the following forms:

PRES. IND.	**Roo, roigo** *or* **royo, roes, roe, roemos, roéis, roen.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**Roa,** etc., **roiga,** etc., **roya,** etc.

6. Soler is generally found only in the following tenses and persons:

Suelo, *I am accustomed to;* **sueles, suele, solemos, soléis, suelen.**

Solía, *I was accustomed to;* **solías, solía, solíamos, solíais, solían.**

NOTE.—The present subjunctive is sometimes formed: **suela, suelas, suela, solamos, soláis, suelan.**

7. Yacer, 2. *to lie,* is conjugated thus:

GERUNDIO:	**Yaciendo.**
INDICATIVO PRESENTE:	**Yazgo, yazco, yago.**
IMPERFECTO:	**Yacía,** etc.
FUTURO:	**Yaceré,** etc.
CONDICIONAL:	**Yacería,** etc.
IMPERATIVO:	**Yace** *or* **yaz tu, yaced vosotros.**
PRESENTE:	**Yazga, yazca,** *or* **yaga.**
IMPERFECTO SUBJUNTIVO:	**Yaciera,** etc.
FUTURO DE SUBJUNTIVO:	**Yaciere.**

Lección LXI. Lesson LXI.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

Vocabulario.

El creador, *the creator.*
El movimiento, *the movement.*
El padrino, *the godfather.*
El ratón, *the mouse.*
El sol, *the sun.*
La causa, *the cause, the case.*
La especie, *the species.*
La fiesta, *the feast.*
La grandeza, *the greatness.*
La humanidad, *the humanity.*
La marcha, *the march.*
La mayor parte, *the most.*
La mitad, *the half.*
La navegación, *navigation.*
La necesidad, *necessity.*
La obra, *the work.*

Vocabulary.

La planta, *the plant.*
César, *Cæsar.*
Pompeyo, *Pompey.*
Distinto, *distinct.*
Supremo, *supreme.*
Aguardar, 1. *to expect, to await*
Anunciar, 1. *to announce.*
Arruinar, 1. *to ruin.*
Conversar, 1. *to converse.*
Decidir, 3. *to decide.*
Divertir, 3. *to amuse.*
Escapar, 1. *to escape.*
Instruir, 3. *to instruct.*
Interesar, 1. *to interest.*
Juzgar, *to judge.*
Sentir, 3. *to feel.*

Exercise 121.

1. Pedro, Juan y yo hemos estado aquí esta mañana. 2. El padre y el hijo han salido esta mañana. 3. Ni el teatro ni la música me divierten. 4. El ejército de Francia é Inglaterra estaban en marcha. 5. El estudiar y conversar con los sabios instruye al hombre. 6. Dar y saber dar son dos cosas muy distintas. 7. La justicia, la religión y la humanidad quieren que V. obre de otro modo. 8. Los cielos y la tierra, el sol y las estrellas, todo nos anuncia la grandeza del supremo creador. 9. La mitad de los soldados se ha ido. 10. Es la obra y no la persona que interesa la posteridad. 11. Juzgar y sentir no son la misma cosa. 12. Serán VV., señores, quienes decidirán en esta causa. 13. Son trenta duros que V. me debe. 14. El número de las especies de animales es más grande, según dicen, que el número de las especies de plantas. 15. Su padre de V. ó su tío será el padrino de mi hermanito. 16. El padre de Juan es uno de los que han sido arruinados por la última guerra. 17. Ni V. ni él lo saben. 18. De

mis conocidos no todos serían mis amigos. 19. La agricultura, las artes, el comercio y la navegación, todo está perdido en aquel pobre país. 20. La mayor parte de mis amigos está esta noche en el teatro.

Exercise 122.

1. My brother and I will leave to-morrow for the country. 2. Have not most of your friends left for Paris? 3. Most of them intend to remain in town this summer. 4. Neither Cæsar nor Pompey was to be an emperor. 5. John and Henry are very good friends. 6. Great, rich, poor, little, no one escapes death. 7. Fear or necessity are the cause of all the movements of the mouse. 8. One half of the children of that school are Germans. 9. It is we who are responsible for your conduct. 10. Your brother and I will go to the same school next year. 11. I am sure that it is you who have said that. 12. A great number of strangers were present at that feast. 13. He and I are brothers. 14. Neither you nor your friend will arrive in time. 15. It was your father and not your mother who was here. 16. He or she will have the book. 17. This gentleman and I have traveled together. 18. It is not the son but the daughter who has died. 19. There are three gentlemen at the door. 20. It is they we are expecting. 21. Charles and I are poor, but Peter and his brother are rich.

Gramática. Grammar.

1. When the subject is composed of two or more nouns joined by a conjunction, the verb is put in the plural:

El padre y el hijo han estado aquí, *The father and the son have been here.*

2. When the subjects are connected by **ni,** *neither*, or by **ó,** *or*, the verb must also be put in the plural. Usage and euphony allow, however, the use of the singular, and we can say:

Ni la música ni el teatro le divierten *or* divierte, *Neither music nor the theater amuse him.*

This sentence may also have the subjects at the end of the sentence: **No le divierte ni la música ni el teatro.**

3. The verb must likewise be in the plural when one subject alone is expressed and the other or others are understood:

El ejército de Valencia y Murcia estaban en marcha, *The armies of Valencia and Murcia were on their march.*

4. If the subjects are not of the same person, the verbs agree with the person which has the priority. The first person has the priority of the second, and the second of the third:

V. y yo lo sabemos,	*You and I know it.*
V. y él lo saben,	*You and he know it.*

5. The verb is put in the singular when the subject is composed of two infinitives:

El estudiar y conversar con los sabios instruye al hombre,	*Studying and conversing with wise men instruct man.*

6. When a verb has several subjects not connected by any conjunction, it is put in the singular, unless the sentence begins with the verb. In this case the verb is put in the plural:

La justicia, la religión, la humanidad, lo reclama, *or* Lo reclaman la justicia, la religión y la humanidad,	*Justice, religion, and humanity demand it.*

7. When a word occurs in the sentence which embraces all the others, the verb must agree with this word:

Los cielos y la tierra, el sol y las estrellas, todo nos anuncia la grandeza de Dios,	*The heavens and the earth, the sun and the stars, all announce the greatness of God to us.*

8. When the verb has for its subject a general collective noun, it agrees with the latter:

El ejército está bien organizado,	*The army is well organized.*

If the collective is partitive, the verb may either agree with the same, or with the noun which follows it, and which is governed by the preposition **de**:

La mitad de los soldados se ha ido, *or* se han ido,	*One half of the soldiers have gone away.*

Lección LXII. Lesson LXII.

CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

Conjunctions.

The Conjunctions most generally used are:

Y, *and.*
Ni...**ni**, *neither*...*nor.*
Ó, *or.*
Ya...**ya**, *now*...*now.*
Sea...**sea**, *either*...*or.*
Pero, *but.*
Sin embargo, *however.*
No obstante, *notwithstanding.*
Á menos que, *unless.*
Si, *if, whether, so.*
Con tal que, *provided.*
Para que, *in order that.*
Porqué, *why.*
Porque, *because.*
Ya que, *since.*
Respecto, *regarding.*
Por consiguiente, *consequently.*
Por eso, *therefore.*
Sobre, *thereupon.*
Algo, *somewhat.*
Pues, *since.*
Mientras, *whilst.*
Conforme, *as.*
Antes que, *before.*
Aun, *ever.*
Por miedo, *for fear.*

Interjections.

Of Joy.

Ah, ah! *Ah, ah!*
Ah, que alegría! / **Ay que gozo!** } *What a joy!*
Bueno! *Good!*
Gracias á Dios! *Thank God!*
Bendito sea Dios! / **Alabado sea Dios!** } *God be praised!*
Vaya, vaya! *Well, now!*

Of Sadness.

Ah, ay! *Ah, ay!*
Ay qué pena! *What a pain!*
Ay de mí! *Woe to me!*
Ay de mí! *Poor me!*
Dios mío! *Good heavens!*
Válgame Dios! *May God help me!*
Virgen santísima! *Holy Virgin!*
Ave María! *God forbid!*

Of Approbation and Surprise.

Muy bien! *Very well!*
Bien hecho! *Well done!*
Me alegro mucho! *I am very glad!*
Grandemente! *Splendid!*
Excelente! *Excellent!*
Es un pasmo! / **Es una maravilla!** } *Beautiful!*
Cáspita! / **Chispas!** / **Cáscaras!** / **Caracoles!** / **Fuego!** / **Ascuas!** } *Zounds!*
Bravo! *Bravo!*

Está muy bien! *It is very well!*
Es milagro! *Wonderful!*
Guapo! *Magnificent!*
Viva, viva! *Hurrah, hurrah!*
Otra vez! *Another time! Encore!*
Oiga! calle! *You don't say so!*
Hola! *Hallo!*
Mire V.! *Do you see!*
Caramba! *Plague!*
Toma! *Indeed!* (Ironically.)

Of Contempt, Blame, and Disgust.

Dios mío! *Good heavens!*
Eso no vale nada! *That is good for nothing!*
Eso es bueno! *That is good indeed!*
Vaya, vaya! *Well, now!*
Que asco! *How disgusting!*
Grande hazaña, *A great feat!*
Guapa cosa! *A fine thing!*
Qué vergüenza! *What a shame!*
Quita allá! *Get away!*
Oxte! *Shame!*
Calle, qué es bueno! / **Vaya en gracia!** } *That is very fine!* (Iron.)

Of Anger.

Voto á! si me enfado! *Don't make me mad!*
Voto á chápiro! *I tell you, sir!*
Par diez! / **Caramba!** } *The plague take you!*
Diantre! *Hang it!*
Anda enhoramala! / **Vaya V. á pasear!** } *Get away!*
Ascuas! *That's too bad!*

Of Exhortation and Encouragement.

Vaya, vaya! *Bravely!*
Vamos, vamos! *Come on!*
Alerta! *Wide awake!*
Ea, venga alguien! *Somebody here!*
Ea pues! *Well, now!*
Ea. ánimo! *Courage!*
Basta, basta! *Enough!*
Quedo, quedo! *Gently!*
Guarda, guarda! *Look out!*
Á un ladito! *Step aside!*
Cuidado! *Take care!*
Fuera, fuera! *Out with him!*
Fuego, fuego! *Fire!*
Ay, que me matan! *Murder!*
Cógele, cógele! *Hold him!*
Acabóse! *It is all over!*

Of Silence.

Calla, calla! *Be silent!*
Que callen! *Quiet!*
Silencio! *Silence!*
Chito, chitón! *Hush!*

TÁBULA DE LAS TERMINACIONES

DE LAS TRES CONJUGACIONES REGULARES

EN LOS TIEMPOS SIMPLES.

Conjugation.	Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
1. ar	am-ar	am-ando	am-ado	am-o am-as am-a am-amos am-áis am-an	am-aba am-abas am-aba am-ábamos am-abais am-aban	am-é am-aste am-ó am-amos am-asteis am-aron
2. er	com-er	com-iendo	com-ido	cóm-o com-es com-e com-emos com-éis com-en	com-ía com-ías com-ía com-íamos com-íais com-ían	com-í com-iste com-ió com-imos com-isteis com-ieron
3. ir	recib-ir	recib-iendo	recib-ido	recib-o recib-es recib-e recib-imos recib-ís recib-en	recib-ía recib-ías recib-ía recib-íamos recib-íais recib-ían	recib-í recib-iste recib-ió recib-imos recib-isteis recib-ieron

TABLE OF TERMINATIONS

OF THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

IN THEIR SIMPLE TENSES.

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
amar-é	amar-ía		am-e	am-ara	-ase	am-are
amar-ás	amar-ías	am-a	am-es	am-aras	-ases	am-ares
amar-á	amar-ía		am-e	am-ara	-ase	am-are
amar-emos	amar-íamos		am-emos	am-áramos	-ásemos	am-áremos
amar-éis	amar-íais	am-ad	am-éis	am-arais	-aseis	am-areis
amar-án	amar-ían		am-en	am-aran	-asen	am-aren
comer-é	comer-ía		com-a	com-iera	-iese	com-iere
comer-ás	comer-ías	com-e	com-as	com-ieras	-ieses	com-ieres
comer-á	comer-ía		com-a	com-iera	-iese	com-iere
comer-emos	comer-íamos		com-amos	com-iéramos	-iésemos	com-iéremos
comer-éis	comer-íais	com-ed	com-áis	com-ierais	-ieseis	com-iereis
comer-án	comer-ían		com-an	com-ieran	-iesen	com-ieren
recibir-é	recibir-ía		recib-a	recib-iera	-iese	recib-iere
recibir-ás	recibir-ías	recib-e	recib-as	recib-ieras	-ieses	recib-ieres
recibir-á	recibir-ía		recib-a	recib-iera	-iese	recib-iere
recibir-emos	recibir-íamos		recib-amos	recib-iéramos	-iésemos	recib-iéremos
recibir-éis	recibir-íais	recib-id	recib-áis	recib-ierais	-ieseis	recib-iereis
recibir-án	recibir-ían		recib-an	recib-ieran	-iesen	recib-ieren

TÁBULA ALFABÉTICA DE LOS PRINCIPALES VERBOS IRREGULARES Ó DEFECTIVOS.

NOTA. — El número colocado después del Presente del Infinitivo de cada verbo indica la Conjugación á la que pertenece este verbo.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERIT.
Abolir, 3. *to abolish.*	aboliendo	abolido	 abolimos abolís	abolía abolías abolía abolíamos abolíais abolían	abolí aboliste abolió abolimos abolisteis abolieron
Abrir, 3. *to open.*	Regular in all the other tenses.	abierto			
Absolver, 2. *to absolve.*	conjugated like **Mover.**	absuelto			
Abstraer, 2. *to abstract.*	conjugated like **Traer.**				
Acertar, 1. *to hit the mark.*	conjugated like **Acrecentar.**				
Acordar, 1. *to agree.*	acordando	acordado	acuerdo acuerdas acuerda acordamos acordáis acuerdan	acordaba acordabas acordaba acordábamos acordabais acordaban	acordé acordaste acordó acordamos acordasteis acordaron
Acostar, 1. *to lay down.*	conjugated like **Acordar.**				
Acrecentar, 1. *to increase.*	acrecentando	acrecentado	acreciento acrecientas acrecienta acrecentamos acrecentáis acrecientan	acrecentaba acrecentabas acrecentaba acrecentábamos acrecentabais acrecentaban	acrecenté acrecentaste acrecentó acrecentamos acrecentasteis acrecentaron
Adestrar, 1. *to guide.*	conjugated like **Acrecentar.**				
Adherir, 3. *to adhere.*	conjugated like **Asentir.**				

ALPHABETICAL TABLE OF THE PRINCIPAL IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE VERBS.

NOTE. — The number put after the Present Infinitive of each verb indicates the Conjugation to which that verb belongs.

FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. TERMINATION 1.	2.	FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
aboliré	aboliría			abol-iera	-iese	aboliere
abolirás	abolirías			abol-ieras	-ieses	abolieres
abolirá	aboliría			abol-iera	-iese	aboliere
aboliremos	aboliríamos			abol-iéramos	-iésemos	aboliéremos
aboliréis	aboliríais	abolid		abol-ierais	-ieseis	aboliereis
abolirán	abolirían			abol-ieran	-iesen	abolieren
acordaré	acordaría		acuerde	acord-ara	-ase	acordare
acordarás	acordarías	acuerda	acuerdes	acord-aras	-ases	acordares
acordará	acordaría		acuerde	acord-ara	-ase	acordare
acordaremos	acordaríamos		acordemos	acord-áramos	-ásemos	acordáremos
acordaréis	acordaríais	acordad	acordéis	acord-arais	-aseis	acordareis
acordarán	acordarían		acuerden	acord-aran	-asen	acordaren
acrecentaré	acrecentaría		acreciente	acrecent-ara	-ase	acrecentare
acrecentarás	acrecentarías	acrecienta	acrecientes	acrecent-aras	-ases	acrecentares
acrecentará	acrecentaría		acreciente	acrecent-ara	-ase	acrecentare
acrecentaremos	acrecentaríamos		acrecentemos	acrecent-áramos	-ásemos	acrecentáremos
acrecentaréis	acrecentaríais	acrecentad	acrecentéis	acrecent-arais	-aseis	acrecentareis
acrecentarán	acrecentarían		acrecienten	acrecent-aran	-asen	acrecentaren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Adquirir, 3. *to acquire.*	adquiriendo	adquirido	adquiero adquieres adquiere adquirimos adquirís adquieren	adquiría adquirías adquiría adquiríamos adquiríais adquirían	adquirí adquiriste adquirió adquirimos adquiristeis adquirieron
Aducir, 3. *to convey.*	See **Conducir.**				
Advertir, 3. *to advise.*	See **Asentir.**				
Agorar, 1. *to divine.*	See **Acordar.**				
Alentar, 1. *to encourage.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Almorzar, 1. *to breakfast.*	See **Acordar.**				
Andar, 1. *to walk.*	andando	andado	ando andas anda andamos andáis andan	andaba andabas andaba andábamos andabais andaban	anduve anduviste anduvo anduvimos anduvisteis anduvieron
Apacentar, 1. *to graze.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Apostar, 1. *to bet.*	See **Acordar.**				
Aprobar, 1. *to approve.*	See **Acordar.**				
Apretar, 1. *to tighten.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Argüir, 3. *to argue.*	See **Instruir.**	The diæresis is kept in all forms, except before **y**.			
Arrecirse, 3. *to be benumbed.*	See **Abolir.**				
Arrendar, 1. *to rent.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive 1.	Termination 2.	Future Subjunctive.
adquiriré	adquiriría		adquiera	adquir-iera	-iese	adquiriere
adquirirás	adquirirías	adquiere	adquieras	adquir-ieras	-ieses	adquirieres
adquirirá	adquiriría		adquiera	adquir-iera	-iese	adquiriere
adquiriremos	adquiriríamos		adquiramos	adquir-iéramos	-iésemos	adquiriéremos
adquiriréis	adquiriríais	adquirid	adquiráis	adquir-ierais	-ieseis	adquiriereis
adquirirán	adquirirían		adquieran	adquir-ieran	-iesen	adquirieren
andaré	andaría		ande	and-uviera	-uviese	anduviere
andarás	andarías	anda	andes	and-uvieras	-uvieses	anduvieres
andará	andaría		ande	and-uviera	-uviese	anduviere
andaremos	andaríamos		andemos	and-uviéramos	-uviésemos	anduviéremos
andaréis	andaríais	andad	andéis	and-uvierais	-uviereis	anduviereis
andarán	andarían		anden	and-uvieran	-uviesen	anduvieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Arrepentirse, 3. *to repent.*	See **Asentir.**				
Ascender, 2. *to ascend.*	See **Atender.**				
Asentar, 1. *to establish.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Asentir, 3. *to acquiesce.*	asintiendo	asentido	asiento asientes asiente asentimos asentís asienten	asentía asentías asentía asentíamos asentíais asentían	asentí asentiste asintió asentimos asentisteis asintieron
Aserrar, 1. *to saw.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Asestar, 1. *to aim.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Asir, 3. *to seize.* This verb is used only in a metaphorical sense.	asiendo	asido	asgo ases ase asimos asís asen	asía asías asía asíamos asíais asían	así asiste asió asimos asisteis asieron
Asolar, 1. *to devastate.*	See **Acordar.**				
Atender, 2. *to mind.*	atendiendo	atendido	atiendo atiendes atiende atendemos atendéis atienden	atendía atendías atendía atendíamos atendíais atendían	atendí atendiste atendió atendimos atendisteis atendieron
Atentar, 1. *to attempt.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Aterrar, 1. *to prostrate.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Atestar, 1. *to crowd.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Atraer, 2. *to attract.*	See **Traer.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive. TERMINATION 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
asentiré	asentiría		asienta	asint-iera	-iese	asintiere
asentirás	asentirías	asiente	asientas	asint-ieras	-ieses	asintieres
asentirá	asentiría		asienta	asint-iera	-iese	asintiere
asentiremos	asentiríamos		asintamos	asint-iéramos	-iésemos	asintiéremos
asentiréis	asentiríais	asentid	asintáis	asint-ierais	-ieseis	asintiereis
asentirán	asentirían		asientan	asint-ieran	-iesen	asintieren
asiré	asiría		asga	asiera	asiese	asiere
asirás	asirías	ase	asgas	asieras	asieses	asieres
asirá	asiría		asga	asiera	asiese	asiere
asiremos	asiríamos		asgamos	asiéramos	asiésemos	asiéremos
asiréis	asiríais	asid	asgáis	asierais	asieseis	asiereis
asirán	asirían		asgan	asieran	asiesen	asieren
atenderé	atendería		atienda	atend-iera	-iese	atendiere
atenderás	atenderías	atiende	atiendas	atend-ieras	-ieses	atendieres
atenderá	atendería		atienda	atend-iera	-iese	atendiere
atenderemos	atenderíamos		atendamos	atend-iéramos	-iésemos	atendiéremos
atenderéis	atenderíais	atended	atendáis	atend-ierais	-ieseis	atendiereis
atenderán	atenderían		atiendan	atend-ieran	-iesen	atendieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Atravesar, 1. *to cross over.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Aventar, 1. *to fan.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Avergonzar, 1. *to shame.*	See **Acordar.**				
Bendecir, 3. *to bless.*	bendiciendo	bendito bendecido	bendigo bendices bendice bendecimos bendecís bendicen	bendecía bendecías bendecía bendecíamos bendecíais bendecían	bendije bendijiste bendijo bendijimos bendijisteis bendijeron
Caber, 2. *to be contained.*	cabiendo	cabido	quepo cabes cabe cabemos cabéis caben	cabía cabías cabía cabíamos cabíais cabían	cupe cupiste cupo cupimos cupisteis cupieron
Caer, 2. *to fall.*	cayendo	caído	caigo caes cae caemos caéis caen	caía caías caía caíamos caíais caían	caí caiste cayó caímos caísteis cayeron
Calentar, 1. *to warm.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Cegar, 1. *to blind.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Ceñir, 3. *to gird.*	See **Pedir.**				
Cerner, 2. *to sift.*	See **Atender.**				
Cerrar, 1. *to close, to shut.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Cimentar, 1. *to ground, found.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive. TERMINATION 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
	bend-			bend-	bend-	
bendeciré	-ecirí a		bendiga	-ijera	-ijese	bendijere
bendecirás	-ecirías	bendice	bendigas	-ijeras	-ijeses	bendijeres
bendecirá	-ecirí a		bendiga	-ijera	-ijese	bendijere
bendeciremos	-ecirí amos		bendigamos	-ijéramos	-ijésemos	bendijéremos
bendeciréis	-ecirí ais	bendecid	bendigáis	-ijerais	-ijeseis	bendijereis
bendecirán	-ecirían		bendigan	-ijeran	-ijesen	bendijeren
cabré	cabrí a		quepa	cupiera	cupiese	cupiere
cabrás	cabrías	cabe	quepas	cupieras	cupieses	cupieres
cabrá	cabrí a		quepa	cupiera	cupiese	cupiere
cabremos	cabrí amos		quepamos	cupiéramos	cupiésemos	cupiéremos
cabréis	cabrí ais	cabed	quepáis	cupierais	cupieseis	cupiereis
cabrán	cabrían		quepan	cupieran	cupiesen	cupieren
caeré	caeria		caiga	cayera	cayese	cayere
caerás	caerías	cae	caigas	cayeras	cayeses	cayeres
caerá	caería		caiga	cayera	cayese	cayere
caeremos	caeríamos		caigamos	cayéramos	cayésemos	cayéremos
caeréis	caeríais	caed	caigáis	cayerais	cayeseis	cayereis
caerán	caerían		caigan	cayeran	cayesen	cayeren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Cocer, 2. *to boil.*	cociendo	cocido	cuezo cueces cuece cocemos cocéis cuecen	cocía cocías cocía cocíamos cocíais cocían	cocí cociste coció cocimos cocisteis cocieron
Colar, 1. *to strain.*	See **Acordar.**				
Colegir, 3. *to collect.*	See **Pedir.**				
Colgar, 1. *to hang.*	See **Acordar.**				
Comedirse, 3. *to govern oneself.*	See **Pedir.**				
Comenzar, 1. *to commence.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Competir, 3. *to compete.*	See **Pedir.**				
Concebir, 3. *to conceive.*	See **Pedir.**				
Concernir, 3. *to concern.*	See **Asentir.**				
Concertar, 1. *to concert.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Concordar, 1. *to agree.*	See **Acordar.**				
Condescender, 2. *to condescend.*	See **Atender.**				
Condolerse, 2. *to condole.*	See **Mover.**				
Conducir, 3. *to conduct.*	conduciendo	conducido	conduzco conduces conduce conducimos conducís conducen	conducía conducías conducía conducíamos conducíais conducían	conduje condujiste condujo condujimos condujisteis condujeron

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
coceré	cocería		cueza	cociera	ciese	ciere
cocerás	cocerías	cuece	cuezas	cocieras	cieses	cieres
cocerá	cocería		cueza	cociera	ciese	ciere
coceremos	coceríamos		cozamos	cociéramos	ciésemos	ciéremos
coceréis	cocerías	coced	cozáis	cocierais	cieseis	ciereis
cocerán	cocerían		cuezan	cocieran	ciesen	cieren
conduciré	conduciría		conduzca	condu-jera	-jese	condujere
conducirás	conducirías	conduce	conduzcas	condu-jeras	-jeses	condujeres
conducirá	conduciría		conduzca	condu-jera	-jese	condujere
conduciremos	conduciríamos		conduzcamos	condu-jéramos	-jésemos	condujéremos
conduciréis	conduciríais	conducid	conduzcáis	condu-jerais	-jeseis	condujereis
conducirán	conducirían		conduzcan	condu-jeran	-jesen	condujeren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Conferir, 3. *to confer.*	See **Asentir.**				
Confesar, 1. *to confess.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Conocer, 2. *to know, to be acquainted with.*	conociendo	conocido	conozco conoces conoce conocemos conocéis conocen	conocía conocías conocía conocíamos conocíais conocían	conocí conociste conoció conocimos conocisteis conocieron
Conseguir, 3. *to obtain.*	See **Pedir.**				
Consentir, 3. *to consent.*	See **Asentir.**				
Consolar, 1. *to comfort.*	See **Acordar.**				
Constreñir, 3. *to constrain.*	See **Pedir.**				
Contar, 1. *to count.*	See **Acordar.**				
Contener, 2. *to contain.*	See **Tener.**				
Contender, 2. *to contend.*	See **Atender.**				
Contradecir, 3. *to contradict.*	See **Decir.**				
Controvertir, 3. *to controvert.*	See **Asentir.**				
Contraer, 2. *to contract.*	See **Traer.**				
Convertir, 3. *to convert.*	See **Asentir.**				
Corregir, 3. *to correct.*	See **Pedir.**				
Cubrir, 3. *to cover.*		cubierto	Regular in all other tenses.		

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
conoceré	conocería		conozca	conoc-iera	-iese	conociere
conocerás	conocerías	conoce	conozcas	conoc-ieras	-ieses	conocieres
conocerá	conocería		conozca	conoc-iera	-iese	conociere
conoceremos	conoceríamos		conozcamos	conoc-iéramos	-iésemos	conociéremos
conoceréis	conoceríais	conoced	conozcáis	conoc-ierais	-ieseis	conociereis
conocerán	conocerían		conozcan	conoc-ieran	-iesen	conocieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Dar, 1. *to give.*	dando	dado	doy das da damos dais dan	daba dabas daba dábamos dabais daban	dí diste dió dimos disteis dieron
Decaer, 2. *to decay.*	See **Caer.**				
Decentar, 1. *to commence with*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Decir, 3. *to tell, to say.*	diciendo	dicho	digo dices dice decimos decís dicen	decía decías decía decíamos decíais decían	dije dijiste dijo dijimos dijisteis dijeron
Deducir, *to deduct.*	See **Conducir.**				
Defender, 2. *to defend.*	See **Atender.**				
Deferir, 3. *to defer.*	See **Asentir.**				
Degollar, 1. *to behead.*	See **Acordar.**				
Demoler, 2. *to demolish.*	See **Mover.**				
Demostrar, 1. *to demonstrate.*	See **Acordar.**				
Denegar, 1. *to deny.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Denostar, 1, *to abuse.*	See **Acordar.**				
Derrengar, 1. *to hate.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Derretir, 3. *to melt.*	See **Pedir.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
daré	daría		dé	diera	diese	diere
darás	darías	da	des	dieras	dieses	dieres
dará	daría		dé	diera	diese	diere
daremos	daríamos		demos	diéramos	diésemos	diéremos
daréis	daríais	dad	deis	dierais	dieseis	diereis
darán	darían		den	dieran	diesen	dieren
diré	diría		diga	dijera	dijese	dijere
dirás	dirías	di	digas	dijeras	dijeses	dijeres
dirá	diría		diga	dijera	dijese	dijere
diremos	diríamos		digamos	dijéramos	dijésemos	dijéremos
diréis	diríais	decid	digáis	dijerais	dijeseis	dijereis
dirán	dirían		digan	dijeran	dijesen	dijeren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Desavenir, 3. *to disagree.*	See **Venir.**				
Descender, 2. *to descend.*	See **Atender.**				
Descollar, 1. *to exceed.*	See **Acordar.**				
Descordar, 1. *to uncord an instrument.*	See **Acordar.**				
Descomedirse, 3. *to be rude.*	See **Pedir.**				
Describir, 3. *to describe.*	descrito	Regular in all the other tenses.			
Desflocar, 1. *to remove flakes.*	See **Acordar.**				
Deshacer, 2. *to undo.*	See **Hacer.**				
Deshelar, 1. *to thaw.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Desleír, 3. *to dilute.*	See **Reír.**				
Desolar, 1. *to desolate.*	See **Acordar.**				
Desollar, 1. *to flay.*	See **Acordar.**				
Desovar, 1. *to spawn.*	See **Acordar.**				
Despedir, 3. *to dismiss.*	See **Pedir.**				
Despernar, 1. *to break* or *cut off one's legs.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Despertar, 1. *to awake.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Desterrar, 1. *to banish.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. 1. termination 2.	Future Subjunctive

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit
Desplegar, 1. *to unfold.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Desvergonzarse, 2. *to act impudently.*	See **Acordar.**				
Dezmar, 1. *to tithe.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Diferir, 3. *to delay.*	See **Asentir.**				
Digerir, 3. *to digest.*	See **Asentir.**				
Discernir, 3. *to discern.*	See **Asentir.**				
Discordar, 1. *to disagree.*	See **Acordar.**				
Disolver, 2. *to dissolve.*	See **Mover.**				
Divertir, 3. *to amuse.*	See **Asentir.**				
Doler, 2. *to ache.*	See **Mover.**				
Dormir, 3. *to sleep.*	durmiendo	dormido	duermo duermes duerme dormimos dormís duermen	dormía dormías dormía dormíamos dormíais dormían	dormí dormiste durmió dormimos dormisteis durmieron
Elegir, 3. *to elect.*	See **Pedir.**				
Embestir, 3. *to attack, to assail.*	See **Pedir.**				
Empedrar, 1. *to pave.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Empezar, 1. *to begin.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Emporcar, 1. *to soil.*	See **Acordar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
dormiré	dormiría		duerma	durm-iera	-iese	durmiere
dormirás	dormirías	duerme	duermas	durm-ieras	-ieses	durmieres
dormirá	dormiría		duerma	durm-iera	-iese	durmiere
dormiremos	dormíamos		durmamos	durm-iéramos	-iésemos	durmiéremos
dormiréis	dormíais	dormid	durmáis	durm-ierais	-ieseis	durmiereis
dormirán	dormían		duerman	durm-ieran	-iesen	durmieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Encender, 2. *to light.*	See **Atender.**				
Encensar, 1. *to perfume (with incense).*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Encerrar, 1. *to shut in, to inclose.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Encomendar, 1. *to recommend.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Encontrar, 1. *to meet.*	See **Acordar.**				
Encordar, 1. *to put strings and cords (to an instrument).*	See **Acordar.**				
Engreírse, 3. *to adorn one's self.*	See **Reír.**				
Engrosar, 1. *to fatten.*	See **Acordar.**				
Enmendar, 1. *to correct.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Enrodar, 1. *to break on the wheel.*	See **Acordar.**				
Ensangrentar, 1. *to stain with blood.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Entender, 2. *to understand.*	See **Atender.**				
Enterrar, 1. *to bury.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Envestir, 3. *to invest.*	See **Pedir.**				
Erguir, 3. *to hold up the head.*	irguiendo	erguido	yergo yergues yergue erguimos erguís yerguen	erguía erguías erguía erguíamos erguíais erguían	erguí erguiste irguió erguimos erguisteis irguieron

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
erguiré	erguiría		yerga	irgu-iera	-iese	irguiere
erguirás	erguirías	yergue	yergas	irgu-ieras	-ieses	irguieres
erguirá	erguiría		yerga	irgu-iera	-iese	irguiere
erguiremos	erguríamos		irgamos	irgu-iéramos	-iésemos	irguiéremos
erguiréis	erguríais	erguid	irgáis	irgu-ierais	-ieseis	irguiereis
erguirán	ergurían		yergan	irgu-ieran	-iesen	irguieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Errar, 1. *to err.*	errando	errado	yerro yerras yerra erramos erráis yerran	erraba errabas erraba errábamos errabais erraban	erré erraste erró erramos errasteis erraron
Escarmentar, 1. *to correct.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Escocer, 2. *to irritate.*	See **Cocer.**				
Escribir, 3. *to write.*	Regular in all the other tenses.	escrito			
Esforzar, 1. *to strengthen.*	See **Acordar.**				
Estar, 1. *to be.* (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 152).					
Excluir, 3. *to exclude.*	See **Instruir.**				
Estreñir, 3. *to bind.*	See **Pedir.**				
Extender, 2. *to extend.*	See **Atender.**				
Expedir, 3. *to expedite.*	See **Pedir.**				
Forzar, 1. *to force.*	See **Acordar.**				
Fregar, 1. *to cleanse.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Freír, 3. *to fry.*	See **Reír.**	frito freído			
Gemir, 3. *to groan.*	See **Pedir.**				
Gobernar, 1. *to govern.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
erraré	erraría		yerre	errara	errase	errare
errarás	errarías	yerra	yerres	erraras	errases	errares
errará	erraría		yerre	errara	errase	errare
erraremos	erraríamos		erremos	erráramos	errásemos	erráremos
erraréis	erraríais	errad	erréis	errarais	erraseis	errareis
errarán	errarían		yerren	erraran	errasen	erraren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Haber, 2. *to have.* (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 136.)					
Hacer, 2. *to make, to do.*	haciendo	hecho	hago haces hace hacemos hacéis hacen	hacía hacías hacía haciamos haciais hacian	hice hiciste hizo hicimos hicisteis hicieron
Heder, 2. *to stink.*	See **Atender.**				
Helar, 1. *to freeze.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Henchir, 3. *to stuff.*	See **Pedir.**				
Hender, 2. *to split.*	See **Atender.**				
Heñir, 3. *to knead.*	See **Pedir.**				
Herir, 3. *to wound.*	See **Asentir.**				
Herrar, 1. *to shoe.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Hervir, 3. *to boil.*	See **Asentir.**				
Holgar, 1. *to rest.*	See **Acordar.**				
Hollar, 1. *to depress.*	See **Acordar.**				
Impedir, 3. *to impede.*	See **Pedir.**				
Imprimir, 3. *to print.*	See **Instruir.**	impreso *irr. part.*	Regular in all the other tenses.		
Incensar, 1. *to incense.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
haré	haría		haga	hiciera	hiciese	hiciere
harás	harías	haz	hagas	hicieras	hicieses	hicieres
hará	haría		haga	hiciera	hiciese	hiciere
haremos	haríamos		hagamos	hiciéramos	hiciésemos	hiciéremos
haréis	haríais	haced	hagáis	hicierais	hicieseis	hiciereis
harán	harían		hagan	hicieran	hiciesen	hicieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Incluir, 3. *to include.*	See **Instruir.**				
Inducir, 3. *to induce.*	See **Conducir.**				
Inferir, 3. *to infer.*	See **Asentir.**				
Inquirir, 3. *to inquire.*	See **Adquirir.**				
Instruir, 3. *to instruct.*	instruyendo	instruido	instruyo instruyes instruye instruimos instruís instruyen	instruía instruías instruía instruíamos instruíais instruían	instruí instruiste instruyó instruimos instruisteis instruyeron
Introducir, 3. *to introduce.*	See **Conducir.**				
Invernar, 1. *to winter.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Invertir, 3. *to invert.*	See **Asentir.**				
Investir, 3. *to invest.*	See **Pedir.**				
Ingerir, 3. *to intermeddle.*	See **Asentir.**				
Ir, 3. *to go.*	yendo	ido	voy vas va vamos vais van	iba ibas iba íbamos ibais iban	fuí fuiste fué fuimos fuisteis fueron
Jugar, 1. *to play.*	jugando	jugado	juego juegas juega jugamos jugáis juegan	jugaba jugabas jugaba jugábamos jugabais jugaban	jugué jugaste jugó jugamos jugasteis jugaron
Llover, 2. *to rain.*	See **Mover.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive. termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
instruiré	instruiría		instruya	instru-yera	-yese	instruyere
instruirás	instruirías	instruye	instruyas	instru-yeras	-yeses	instruyeres
instruirá	instruiría		instruya	instru-yera	-yese	instruyere
instruiremo	instruiríamos		instruyamos	instru-yéramos	-yésemos	instruyéremos
instruiréis	instruiríais	instruid	instruyáis	instru-yerais	-yeseis	instruyereis
instruirán	instruirían		instruyan	instru-yeran	-yesen	instruyeren
iré	iría		vaya	fuera	fuese	fuere
irás	irías	ve	vayas	fueras	fueses	fueres
irá	iría		vaya	fuera	fuese	fuere
iremos	iríamos		vayamos	fuéramos	fuésemos	fuéremos
iréis	iríais	id	vayáis	fuerais	fueseis	fuereis
irán	irían		vayan	fueran	fuesen	fueren
jugaré	jugaría		juege	jugara	jugase	jugare
jugarás	jugarías	juega	juegues	jugaras	jugases	jugares
jugará	jugaría		juege	jugura	jugase	jugare
jugaremos	jugaríamos		juguemos	jugáramos	jugásemos	jugáremos
jugaréis	jugaríais	jugad	juguéis	jugarais	jugaseis	jugareis
jugarán	jugarían		jueguen	jugaran	jugasen	jugaren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Maldecir, 3. *to detract.*	See **Bendecir.**				
Manifestar, 1. *to manifest.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Mantener, 2. *to support.*	See **Tener.**				
Medir, 1. *to measure.*	See **Pedir.**				
Mentar, 1. *to mention.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Mentir, 3. *to lie.*	See **Asentir.**				
Merendar, 1. *to take a collation.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Moler, 1. *to grind.*	See **Mover.**				
Morder, 3. *to bite.*	See **Mover.**				
Morir, 3. *to die.*	muriendo	muerto	muero mueres muere morimos morís mueren	moría morías moría moríamos moríais morían	morí moriste murió morimos moristeis murieron
Mostrar, 1. *to show.*	See **Acordar.**				
Mover, 2. *to move.*	moviendo	movido	muevo mueves mueve movemos movéis mueven	movía movías movía movíamos movíais movían	moví moviste movió movimos movisteis movieron
Negar, 1. *to deny.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Nevar, 1. *to snow.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
moriré	moriría		muera	mur-iera	-iese	muriere
morirás	morirías	muere	mueras	mur-ieras	-ieses	murieres
morirá	moriría		muera	mur-iera	-iese	muriere
moriremos	moriríamos		muramos	mur-iéramos	-iésemos	muriéremos
moriréis	moriríais	morid	muráis	mur-ierais	-ieseis	muriereis
morirán	morirían		mueran	mur-ieran	-iesen	murieren
moveré	movería		mueva	mov-iera	-iese	moviere
moverás	moverías	mueve	muevas	mov-ieras	-ieses	movieres
moverá	movería		mueva	mov-iera	-iese	moviere
moveremos	moveríamos		movamos	mov-iéramos	-iésemos	moviéremos
moveréis	moveríais	moved	mováis	mov-ierais	-ieseis	moviereis
moverán	moverían		muevan	mov-ieran	-iesen	movieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Oír, 3. *to hear.*	oyendo	oído	oigo oyes oye oímos oís oyen	oía oías oía oíamos oíais oían	oí oiste oyó oímos oísteis oyeron
Oler, 2. *to smell.*	oliendo	olido	huelo hueles huele olemos oléis huelen	olía olías olía olíamos olíais olían	olí oliste olió olimos olisteis olieron
Pedir, 3. *to ask for.*	pidiendo	pedido	pido pides pide pedimos pedís piden	pedía pedías pedía pedíamos pedíais pedían	pedí pediste pidió pedimos pedisteis pidieron
Pensar, 1. *to think.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Perder, 2. *to lose.*	See **Atender.**				
Pervertir, 3. *to pervert.*	See **Asentir.**				
Placer, 2. imp., *to please.*			place	placía	plugo ó plació
Plegar, 1. *to plait* or *fold.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Poblar, 1. *to people.*	See **Acordar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive, termination 1.	Imperfect Subjunctive, termination 2.	Future Subjunctive
oiré	oiría		oiga	oyera	oyese	oyere
oirás	oirías	oye	oigas	oyeras	oyeses	oyeres
oirá	oiría		oiga	oyera	oyese	oyere
oiremos	iríamos		oigamos	oyéramos	oyésemos	oyéremos
oiréis	oiríais	oíd	oigáis	oyerais	oyeseis	oyereis
oirán	oirían		oigan	oyeran	oyesen	oyeren
oleré	olería		huela	oliera	oliese	oliere
olerás	olerías	huele	huelas	olieras	olieses	olieres
olerá	olería		huela	oliera	oliese	oliere
oleremos	oleríamos		olamos	oliéramos	oliésemos	oliéremos
oleréis	oleríais	oled	oláis	olierais	olieseis	oliereis
olerán	olerían		huelan	olieran	oliesen	olieren
pediré	pediría		pida	pidiera	pidiese	pidiere
pedirás	pedirías	pide	pidas	pidieras	pidieses	pidieres
pedirá	pediría		pida	pidiera	pidiese	pidiere
pediremos	pediríamos		pidamos	pidiéramos	pidiésemos	pidiéremos
pediréis	pediríais	pedid	pidáis	pidierais	pidieseis	pidiereis
pedirán	pedirían		pidan	pidieran	pidiesen	pidieren
placerá	placería	plegue	plega plegue plazca	pluguiera placiera	pluguiese placiese	pluguiere placiere

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Poder, 2. *to be able.*	pudiendo	podido	puedo puedes puede podemos podéis pueden	podía podías podía podíamos podíais podían	pude pudiste pudo pudimos pudisteis pudieron
Podrir, 3. *to rot.*	pudriendo	podrido	pudro pudres pudre podrimos podrís pudren	podría podrías podría podríamos podríais podrían	podrí podriste pudrió podrimos podristeis pudrieron
Poner, 2. *to put.*	poniendo	puesto	pongo pones pone ponemos ponéis ponen	ponía ponías ponía ponían ponían ponían	puse pusiste puso pusimos pusisteis pusieron
Preferir, 3. *to prefer.*	See **Asentir.**				
Prender, 2. *to take.*	Regular in all the other tenses.	prendido preso			
Prescribir, 3. *to prescribe.*		prescrito *irr. part.*	Regular in all the other tenses.		
Probar, 1. *to try.*	See **Acordar.**				
Producir, 3. *to produce.*	See **Conducir.**				
Proferir, 3. *to proffer.*	See **Asentir.**				
Proscribir, 3. *to proscribe.*		proscrito *irr. part.*	Regular in all the other tenses.		
Quebrar, 1. *to break.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
podré	podría		pueda	pudiera	pudiese	pudiere
podrás	podrías		puedas	pudieras	pudieses	pudieres
podrá	podría		pueda	pudiera	pudiese	pudiere
podremos	podríamos		podamos	pudiéramos	pudiésemos	pudiéremos
podréis	podríais		podáis	pudierais	pudieseis	pudiereis
podrán	podrían		puedan	pudieran	pudiesen	pudieren
podriré	podriría		pudra	pudriera	pudriese	pudriere
podrirás	podrirías	pudre	pudras	pudrieras	pudrieses	pudrieres
podrirá	podriría		pudra	pudriera	pudriese	pudriere
podriremos	podriríamos		pudramos	pudriéramos	pudriésemos	pudriéremos
podriréis	podriríais	podrid	pudráis	pudrierais	pudrieseis	pudriereis
podrirán	podrirían		pudran	pudrieran	pudriesen	pudrieren
pondré	pondría		ponga	pusiera	pusiese	pusiere
pondrás	pondrías	pon	pongas	pusieras	pusieses	pusieres
pondrá	pondría		ponga	pusiera	pusiese	pusiere
pondremos	pondríamos		pongamos	pusiéramos	pusiésemos	pusiéremos
pondréis	pondríais	poned	pongáis	pusierais	pusieseis	pusiereis
pondrán	pondrían		pongan	pusieran	pusiesen	pusieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Querer, 2. *to will.*	queriendo	querido	quiero quieres quiere queremos queréis quieren	quería querías quería queríamos queríais querían	quise quisiste quiso quisimos quisisteis quisieron
Raer, 2. *to erase.*	See **Caer.**				
Recomendar, 1. *to recommend.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Recordar, 1. *to remind.*	See **Acordar.**				
Recostar, 1. *to recline.*	See **Acordar.**				
Reducir, 3. *to reduce.*	See **Conducir.**				
Referir, 3. *to refer.*	See **Asentir.**				
Regar, 1. *to water.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Regir, 3. *to rule.*	See **Pedir.**				
Regoldar, 1. *to belch.*	See **Acordar.**				
Reír, 3. *to laugh.*	riendo	reído	río ríes ríe reímos reís ríen	reía reías reía reíamos reíais reían	reí reiste rió reímos reísteis rieron
Remendar, 1. *to mend.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Rendir, 3. *to surrender.*	See **Pedir.**				
Renovar, 1. *to renew.*	See **Acordar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
querré	querría		quiera	quisiera	quisiese	quisiere
querrás	querrías	quiere	quieras	quisieras	quisieses	quisieres
querrá	querría		quiera	quisiera	quisiese	quisiere
querremos	querríamos		queramos	quisiéramos	quisiésemos	quisiéremos
querréis	querríais	quered	queráis	quisierais	quisieseis	quisiereis
querrán	querrían		quieran	quisieran	quisiesen	quisieren
reiré	reiría		ría	riera	riese	riere
reirás	reirías	ríe	rías	rieras	rieses	rieres
reirá	reiría		ría	riera	riese	riere
reiremos	reiríamos		riamos	riéramos	riésemos	riéremos
reiréis	reiríais	reíd	riais	rierais	rieseis	riereis
reirán	reirían		rían	rieran	riesen	rieren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Reñir, 3. *to wrangle.*	See **Pedir.**				
Repetir, 3. *to repeat.*	See **Pedir.**				
Requebrar, 1. *to court.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Requerir, 3. *to notify.*	See **Asentir.**				
Rescontrar, 1. *to compensate.*	See **Acordar.**				
Resollar, 1. *to respire.*	See **Acordar.**				
Reventar, 1. *to burst.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Revolcar, 1. *to wallow.*	See **Acordar.**				
Rodar, 1. *to roll.*	See **Acordar.**				
Roer, 2. *to gnaw.*	See **Caer.**				
Rogar, 1. *to entreat.*	See **Acordar.**				
Romper, 2. *to break.*	Regular in all the other tenses.	rompido roto			
Saber, 2. *to know.*	sabiendo	sabido	sé sabes sabe sabemos sabéis saben	sabía sabías sabía sabíamos sabíais sabían	supe supiste supo supimos supisteis supieron
Salir, 3. *to go out.*	saliendo	salido	salgo sales sale salimos salís salen	salía salías salía salíamos salíais salían	salí saliste salió salimos salisteis salieron
Satisfacer, 2. *to satisfy.*	See **Hacer.**	But changing the *h* to *f.*			

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive.
sabré	sabría		sepa	supiera	supiese	supiere
sabrás	sabrías	sabe	sepas	supieras	supieses	supieres
sabrá	sabría		sepa	supiera	supiese	supiere
sabremos	sabríamos		sepamos	supiéramos	supiésemos	supiéramos
sabréis	sabríais	sabed	sepáis	supierais	supieseis	supiereis
sabrán	sabrían		sepan	supieran	supiesen	supieren
saldré	saldría		salga	saliera	saliese	saliere
saldrás	saldrías	sal	salgas	salieras	salieses	salieres
saldrá	saldría		salga	saliera	saliese	saliere
saldremos	saldríamos		salgamos	saliéramos	saliésemos	saliéremos
saldréis	saldríais	salid	salgáis	salierais	salieseis	saliereis
saldrán	saldrían		salgan	salieran	saliesen	salieren
		satisface *or* satisfaz (2d pers. sing.)				

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Segar, 1. *to reap.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Seguir, 3. *to follow.*	See **Pedir.**				
Sembrar, 1. *to sow.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Sentar, 1. *to become.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Sentir, 3 *to feel.*	See **Asentir.**				
Ser, 2. *to be.* (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 136.)					
Servir, 3. *to serve.*	See **Pedir.**				
Serrar, 1. *to saw.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Soldar, 1. *to solder.*	See **Acordar.**				
Soler, 2. *to be accustomed.*			suelo sueles suele solemos soléis suelen	solía solías solía solíamos solíais solían	
Solver, 2. *to loosen.*	See **Mover.**	suelto *irr. part.*			
Soltar, 1. *to loosen.*	See **Acordar.**	suelto *irr. part.*			
Sonar, 1. *to sound.*	See **Acordar.**				
Soñar, 1. *to dream.*	See **Acordar.**				
Sosegar, 1. *to appease.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Soterrar, 1. *to bury.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Sugerir, 3. *to suggest.*	See **Asentir.**				

Future.	Conditional	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
			suela suelas suela solamos soláis suelan			

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Temblar, 1. *to tremble.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Tender, 2. *to expand.*	See **Atender.**				
Tener, 2. *to have.* (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 139.)					
Teñir, 3. *to dye.*	See **Pedir.**				
Tentar, 1. *to touch.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Torcer, 2. *to twist.*	See **Cocer.**				
Tostar, 1. *to toast.*	See **Acordar.**				
Traducir, 3. *to translate.*	See **Conducir.**				
Traer, 2. *to bring.*	trayendo	traído	traigo traes trae traemos traéis traen	traía traías traía traíamos traíais traían	traje trajiste trajo trajimos trajisteis trajeron
Trascender, 2. *to transcend.*	See **Atender.**				
Trascordarse, 1. *to forget.*	See **Acordar.**				
Trasegar, 1. *to upset.*	See **Acrecentar.**				
Tronar, 1. *to thunder.*	See **Acordar.**				
Tropezar, 1. *to stumble.*	See **Acrecentar.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. termination 1.	2.	Future Subjunctive
traeré	traería		traiga	trajera	trajese	trajere
traerás	traerías	trae	traigas	trajeras	trajeses	trajeres
traerá	traería		traiga	trajera	trajese	trajere
traeremos	traeríamos		traigamos	trajéramos	trajésemos	trajéremos
traeréis	traeríais	traed	tragáis	trajerais	trajeseis	trajereis
traerán	traerían		traigan	trajeran	trajesen	trajeren

Present Infinitive.	Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Preterit.
Valer, 2. *to be worth.*	valiendo	valido	valgo vales vale valemos valéis valen	valía valías valía valíamos valíais valían	valí valiste valió valimos valisteis valieron
Venir, 3. *to come.*	viniendo	venido	vengo vienes viene venimos venís vienen	venía venías venía veníamos veníais venían	vine veniste vino venimos venisteis vinieron
Ver, 2. *to see.*	viendo	visto	veo ves ve vemos veis ven	veía veías veía veíamos veíais veían	ví viste vió vimos visteis vieron
Verter, 2. *to spill.*	See **Atender.**				
Vestir, 3. *to dress.*	See **Pedir.**				
Volcar, 1. *to overset.*	See **Acordar.**				
Volar, 1. *to fly.*	See **Acordar.**				
Volver, 2. *to return.*	Regular in all the other tenses.	vuelto			
Yacer, 2. *to lie down.* (See Defective Verbs, p. 320.)					
Zaherir, 3. *to censure.*	See **Asentir.**				

Future.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive. Termination 1.	Termination 2.	Future Subjunctive
valdré	valdría		valga	valiera	valiese	valiere
valdrás	valdrías	vale	valgas	valieras	valieses	valieres
valdrá	valdría		valga	valiera	valiese	valiere
valdremos	valdríamos		valgamos	valiéramos	valiésemos	valiéremos
valdréis	valdríais	valed	valgáis	valierais	valieseis	valiereis
valdrán	valdrían		valgan	valieran	valiesen	valieren
vendré	vendría		venga	viniera	viniese	viniere
vendrás	vendrías	ven	vengas	vinieras	vinieses	vinieres
vendrá	vendría		venga	viniera	viniese	viniere
vendremos	vendríamos		vengamos	viniéramos	viniésemos	viniéremos
vendréis	véndríais	venid	vengáis	vinierais	vinieseis	viniereis
vendrán	vendrían		vengan	vinieran	viniesen	vinieren
veré	vería		vea	viera	viese	viere
verás	verías	ve	veas	vieras	vieses	vieres
verá	vería		vea	viera	viese	viere
veremos	veríamos		veamos	viéramos	viésemos	viéremos
veréis	veríais	ved	veáis	vierais	vieseis	viereis
verán	verían		vean	vieran	viesen	vieren

FORMACIÓN DE LA LENGUA CASTELLANA.

La lengua castellana consta de palabras fenicias, griegas, góticas, árabes, y de otras lenguas de las naciones que por dominación ó por comercio habitaron ó frecuentaron estas partes. Pero principalmente abunda de palabras latinas enteras ó adulteradas.

Los Romanos estuvieron en España 600 años á lo menos, aunque no se cuenten, sino desde el de 216 antes de Cristo en que vinieron la primera vez con ejército, hasta el 416 después de Cristo en que fué la entrada de los Godos; y si esta cuenta se hace hasta el año 623 de Cristo, en que los Romanos acabaron de perder lo que tenían en España, saldrá que estuvieron más de 800 años.

En este tiempo introdujeron aquí su lengua vulgar, que era la latina, como lo hicieron en todas las demás provincias que conquistaron.

Con la decadencia del imperio romano y venida de los Godos se fué adulterando la lengua latina ó romana porque como los vencidos necesitaban acomodarse á la lengua de los vencedores, y estos deseaban y procuraban aprender la de los vencidos, contribuyeron unos y otros á estragar la lengua latina.

Los Godos hallaron dificultad en la declinación de los nombres latinos,

FORMATION OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

The Castilian (Spanish) language is composed of words derived from the Phœnician, Greek, Gothic, and Arabic, and also from the languages of other nations which inhabited or visited Spain, intent on conquest or commerce. It abounds principally, however, in Latin words, either pure or adulterated.

The Romans occupied Spain for at least 600 years, if we date their occupation from the year 216 B.C., when their first army appeared there, until 416 A.D., when the Goths invaded the country. But if we extend our calculation to the year 623 A.D., when the Romans finally lost what they still possessed in Spain, the time of their occupation exceeds 800 years.

They introduced their language in the country, namely, the Latin language, as they did in all the other provinces which they conquered.

The Latin or Roman language became adulterated at the fall of the Roman empire and at the time of the invasion of the Goths, as the conquered nation had to adapt itself to the language of the conquerors, while the latter desired and endeavored to learn the language of the conquered. These reasons contributed to the alteration of the Latin language.

The Goths found difficulty in the declension of the Latin nouns, and

y la dejaron enteramente, supliendo los casos con preposiciones. En los verbos siguieron en parte las conjugaciones latinas, pero dejaron del todo la voz pasiva, y usaron para suplirla, de los participios pasivos con el verbo sustantivo *ser*.

Esta lengua latina, así adulterada, se empezó á llamar romance por su derivación de la romana ó latina, para distinguirla de la gótica.

Con la irrupción de los Árabes en el año 714 padeció también alteración el romance; pero como los Españoles empezaron desde luego á sacudir el nuevo yugo, á proporción de las ventajas que iban consiguiendo, iba también la lengua cobrando fuerza y cultura.

El rey Don Alfonso el Sabio mandó que cesase el uso de escribir en latín los privilegios, donaciones reales y escrituras públicas. Entre varias obras que compuso, ó hizo componer en romance, merece singular aprecio y elogio la de las *Leyes de las Partidas*, en la cual la lengua ostentó toda la riqueza y majestad que había adquirido hasta entonces, y en que llevó grandes ventajas, no sólo á otras obras anteriores y contemporáneas, sino aun á muchas posteriores.

Siguieron su ejemplo D. Juan Manuel, hijo del infante D. Manuel, y el rey D. Alfonso XI. El primero compuso el libro del *Conde Lucanor*, el segundo el de *montería*, ambas dignamente estimados.

Escribiéronse también los *Crónicas del Santo Rey Don Fernando*, de

abandoned it, supplying the cases with prepositions. They partly followed the Latin conjugations of the verbs, but entirely rejected the passive voice, which they replaced by passive participles accompanied by the substantive verb *ser*.

The Latin language, thus adulterated, began then to be called the *Romance*, from its derivation from the Roman, and in order to distinguish it from the Gothic.

The Romance underwent some alteration after the irruption of the Arabs in the year 714, but as the Spaniards soon began to shake off the new yoke, their language acquired strength and culture, the latter keeping pace with the advantages obtained in warfare.

King Don Alfonso the Wise ordered that the Latin language should not be used any longer for charters, royal grants, and public deeds. Among different works which he composed himself or superintended in the *Romance* language, special mention and praise is due to the *Laws of Castile*, in which the richness and majesty which the language had acquired are shown to greater advantage than in any previous or contemporaneous, or even in many subsequent works.

D. Juan Manuel, son of the infante D. Manuel, and king D. Alfonso XI. followed his example. The former wrote a work called *Count Lucanor*, and the latter a treatise on Hunting; both works are greatly esteemed.

At that time were also written the *Chronicles of the Holy King D. Fer-*

Don Alfonso el Sabio, de *Don Sancho IV.*, de *Don Fernando IV.*, y de *Don Alfonso XI.*

Pedro Lopez de Ayala, ya con estilo mas adornado, escribió las *Crónicas del rey Don Pedro*, de *Don Enrique II.*, y de *Don Juan I.* Alvar García de Santa María, y Fernán Pérez de Guzmán, compusieron la de *Don Juan II.* Juan de Mena, la obra de las *Trescientas*, y la *Coronación*. El Bachiller Fernán Gómez de Ciudad Real, el *Centón epistolario*, que contiene unas admirables cartas sobre los principales sucesos del reinado de D. Juan II. D. Alonso Tostado, Obispo de Ávila, publicó varias obras en castellano; Hernando del Pulgar, su célebre *Crónica de los reyes católicos*, y algo más adelante, el doctor Francisco de Villalobos, en sus *Problemas*, y otros tratados que compuso en romance, dió á conocer la gracia y primor de que la lengua castellana es capaz.

La publicación de estas y otras obras semejantes, y la particular atención con que se dedicaron á cultivar la lengua castellana muchos escritores insignes que han florecido desde el reinado de los Reyes Católicos, la fueron puliendo y perfeccionando, hasta ponerla en el estado en que hoy se halla.

nando, of *D. Alfonso the Wise*, of *D. Sancho IV.*, of *D. Fernando IV.*, and of *D. Alfonso XI.*

Pedro Lopez de Ayala, in a more ornate style, wrote the *Chronicles of king D. Pedro*, of *D. Enrique II.*, and of *D. Juan I.* Alvar García de Santa María and Fernán Pérez de Guzmán composed the *Chronicles of D. Juan II.*; Juan de Mena, a work on the *Three Hundred* and on *The Coronation*. Fernán Gómez de Ciudad Real wrote the *Epistolæ Cento*, which contains admirable letters on the principal events of the reign of D. Juan II. D. Alonzo Tostado, Bishop of Avila, published several works in the Castilian language; also Hernando del Pulgar his celebrated *Chronicle of the Catholic Monarchs*, and somewhat later, Dr. Francisco de Villalobos, in his *Problems* and other treatises which he composed in the Romance language, showed the grace and elegance of which the Castilian language is susceptible.

The publication of these and other works, and the special attention paid to the cultivation of the Castilian language by many eminent writers who have flourished since the reigns of the Catholic Monarchs, have polished and perfected the language to the point at which it has arrived in our day.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

INCLUDING ALL THE WORDS CONTAINED IN THE PRECEDING VOCABULARIES.

I. Spanish-English.

A.

abajo, *downstairs.*
abanico, m. *fan.*
abierto, *opened.*
abogado, m. *lawyer.*
aborrecer, 2. *to hate.*
abrir, 3. *to open.*
abundante, *abundant.*
á caballo, *on horseback.*
acabar, 1. *to finish.*
á casa, *to the house, home.*
acaso, *perhaps.*
accidente, m. *accident.*
acción, f. *action.*
aceite, m. *oil.*
aceptable, *acceptable.*
acercarse, 1. *to approach.*
acompañar, 1. *to accompany.*
aconsejar, 1. *to advise.*
acontecer, 2. *to happen.*
acordarse, 1. *to remember.*
acostarse, 1. *to go to bed.*
acostumbrado, *accustomed.*
acostumbrar, 1. *to accustom.*
á crédito, *on credit.*
acusar, 1. *to accuse.*
adelantar, 1. *to be fast.*
adherir, 3. *to adhere.*
adiós, *good-by.*
admitido, *admitted.*
afable, *affable.*
afeitar, 1. *to shave.*
afuera, *out, without.*
agradable, *agreeable.*
agradecido, *thankful.*
agrio, *sour.*
agua, f. *water.*
aguardar, 1. *to expect, to wait.*
ahora, *now.*
ahí, *there.*
aire, m. *air.*
alabanza, f. *praise.*
alabar, 1. *to praise.*
albañil, m. *mason.*
al contrario, *on the contrary.*
aldea, f. *village.*
alegrarse, 1. *to rejoice.*
alegre, *lively.*
alejarse, 1. *to leave.*
Alemán, m. *German.*
Alemania, f. *Germany.*
algo, *something, anything, rather.*
algodón, m. *cotton.*
alguien, *somebody, anybody.*
alguna parte, *somewhere, anywhere.*
algunas veces, *sometimes.*
alguno, *some, any, some one, any one, somebody, anybody.*
allí, *there.*
almacén, m. *store.*
almirante, m. *admiral.*
almorzar, 1. *to breakfast.*
almuerzo, m. *breakfast.*
alojamiento, m. *lodging.*
á lo menos, *at least.*
al punto que, *as soon as.*
alquilar, 1. *to let.*
alto, *high, tall, loud.*
amado, *loved.*
amar, 1. *to love.*
amargo, *bitter.*
¿ ama V.? *do you love.*
á menos que, *unless.*
á menudo, *often.*
Americano, m. *American.*
amigo, m. *friend.*

amistad, f. *friendship.*
amistoso, *friendly.*
amo, *I love.*
amo, m. *master.*
amor, m. *love.*
andar, 1. *to walk.*
animal, m. *animal.*
anoche, *last night.*
ansioso, *eager.*
antes de, *before.*
anunciar, 1. *to announce.*
añadir, 3. *to add.*
año, m. *year.*
apartar, 1. *to remove.*
apelar, 1. *to appeal.*
apenas, *hardly, no sooner.*
á pie, *on foot.*
apoderarse, 1. *to take possession.*
apostar, 1. *to bet.*
aprender, 1. *to learn.*
aprendido, *learned.*
aprobar, 1. *to approve.*
aquello, *that, that thing.*
aquí, *here.*
aquí tiene V., *here is.*
Árabe, m. *Arab.*
árbol, m. *tree.*
arce, m. *maple.*
armario, m. *closet.*
artículo, m. *article.*
arreglar, 1. *to arrange.*
arrepentirse, 3. *to repent.*
arriba, *upstairs.*
arruinar, 1. *to ruin.*
asegurar, 1. *to assure.*
así, *thus, so, therefore.*
así que, *so that, as soon as.*
asolar, 1. *to devastate.*
asunto, m. *matter, business.*
atacar, 1. *to attack.*
atención, f. *attention.*
atento, *attentive.*
atrasar, 1. *to delay.*
atravesar, 1. *to cross over.*
aun, *even, yet.*
aunque, *although.*
ausente, *absent.*
autor, m. *author.*
autorizar, 1. *to authorize.*
autorización, f. *authorization.*
avaro, m. *miser.*
aventura, f. *adventure.*
ayer, *yesterday.*
ayudar, 1. *to help.*
azúcar, m. *sugar.*
azul, *blue.*

B.

bagatela, f. *trifle.*
bailar, 1. *to dance.*
baile, m. *ball.*
bailo, *I dance.*
bajar, 1. *to come down.*
bajo, *low, under.*
banco, m. *bank.*
banquero, m. *banker.*
bañarse, 1. *to bathe.*
barato, *cheap.*
barco, m. *vessel.*
bastante, *enough.*
bastón, m. *walkingstick, cane.*
bastonazo, m. *blow* (with a stick).
batalla, f. *battle.*
baúl, m. *trunk.*
bebo, *I drink.*
bendecir, 3. *to bless.*
beneficio, m. *benefit.*
benéfico, *benevolent.*
biblioteca, f. *library*
bien, *good, well.*
billar, m. *billiards.*
blanco, *white.*
boca, f. *mouth.*
bocoy, m. *hogshead.*
bodega, f. *cellar.*
bollo, m. *cake.*
bondad, f. *kindness.*
bonito, *pretty.*
bordado, *trimmed.*
borracho, *intoxicated.*
bosque, m. *wood.*
bota, f. *boot.*
botella, f. *bottle.*
boticario, m. *druggist.*
botón, m. *button.*
buenas noches, *good night.*
bueno, *good, well.*
buenos días, *good morning, good day.*
buey, m. *ox.*
buque, m. *ship, vessel.*
burlarse, 1. *to laugh at.*
buscar, 1. *to look for.*

C.

caballería, f. *cavalry.*
caballeriza, f. *stable.*
caballero, m. *gentleman.*
caballo, m. *horse.*
cada, *each.*
cadena, f. *chain.*
caer, 2. *to fall.*
caerse, 2. *to fall.*
café, m. *coffee.*
caja, f. *safe, box.*
cajón, m. *drawer.*
calentar, 1. *to warm.*
caliente, *warm.*

callado, *silent.*
calle, f. *street.*
callejuela, f. *lane.*
cama, f. *bed.*
cambiar, 1. *to exchange.*
camino, m. *road.*
camisa, f. *shirt.*
campo, m. *country.*
canción, f. *song.*
cansado, *tired.*
canta, *sings.*
cantar, 1. *to sing.*
cantatriz, f. *singer.*
canto, m. *singing.*
caña, f. *cane.*
caoba, f. *mahogany.*
capital, f. *capital.*
capitán m. *captain.*
capítulo, m. *chapter.*
cara, f. *face.*
carbón, m. *coal.*
carcel, f. *prison.*
caridad, f. *charity.*
Carlos, *Charles.*
carne, f. *meat.*
carne (f.) **de vaca,** f. *beef.*
carnicero, m. *butcher.*
carpintero, m. *carpenter.*
cartero, m. *postman.*
caro, *dear.*
Carolina, *Caroline.*
carta, f. *letter.*
carreta, f. *cart.*
casa, f. *house.*
casaca, f. *coat.*
casar, 1. *to marry.*
casarse, 1. *to marry.*
castigar, 1. *to punish.*
causa, f. *cause, case.*
cazador, m. *hunter.*
célebre, *celebrated.*
cena, f. *supper.*
censurar, 1. *to censure.*
centavo, m. *cent.*
cerca, *near.*
cerca de, *nearly.*
cereza, f. *cherry.*
cerveza, f. *beer.*
cerrado, *closed, shut.*
cerrar, 1. *to shut.*
César, *Cæsar.*
ciego, *blind.*
cielo, m. *heaven.*
ciencia, *science.*
cierto, *certain.*
ciudad, f. *city.*
claro, *clear.*
clase, f. *class.*
clavel, m. *pink.*
clima, m. *climate.*
cocina, f. *kitchen.*
cocinera, f. *cook.*
cocinero, m. *cook.*
coche, m. *coach.*
codicioso, *greedy.*
cojear, 1. *to limp, to balance.*
colegio, m. *college.*
cólera, m. *cholera.*
colmar, 1. *to overwhelm.*
colocación, f. *situation.*
Colón, *Columbus.*
colorado, *red.*
comedia, f. *comedy.*
comedido, *polite.*
comedor, m. *dining-room.*
comemos, *we dine.*
¿come V.? *do you dine?*
comer, 2. *to dine, to eat.*
comerciante, m. *merchant.*
comido, *eaten.*
comida, f. *eating, dinner.*
como, *since, about.*
cómo, *how.*
compañero, m. *companion.*
comparecer, 2. *to appear.*
complacer, 2. *to please.*
componer, 2. *to compose.*
comportamiento, m. *behavior.*
comportarse, 1. *to behave.*
comprado, *bought.*
¿compra V.? *do you buy?*
comprender, 2. *to understand.*
compro, *I buy.*
común, *ordinary, low.*
con, *with.*
concepto, m. *opinion.*
concierto, m. *concert.*
conciso, *concise.*
concluir, 3. *to conclude, to finish.*
concluirse, 3. *to end.*
conde, m. *count.*
condenar, 1. *to condemn.*
condesa, f. *countess.*
condiscípulo, m. *fellow-scholar.*
conducir, 3. *to conduct, to take.*
conducta, f. *conduct.*
confesar, 1. *to confess.*
conforme, *conformably.*
congreso, m. *congress.*
conjuración, f. *conspiracy.*
conmigo, *with me.*
conocer, 2. *to know.*
¿conoce V.? *do you know? are you acquainted with?*
conocido, m. *acquaintance.*
conocido, *known.*

conozco, *I know, I am acquainted with.*
conseguir, 3. *to obtain.*
consejo, m. *advice.*
consistir, 3. *to consist.*
consolar, 1. *to console, to comfort.*
construir, 3. *to construct, to build.*
consultado, *consulted.*
consultar, 1. *to consult.*
con tal que, *provided.*
contar, 1. *to count.*
contener, 2. *to contain.*
contento, *pleased, satisfied.*
contestar, 1. *to answer.*
contiene, *contains.*
continuar, 1. *to continue.*
contornos, m. pl. *the suburbs.*
contrario, *contrary.*
convencer, 2. *to convince.*
convenir, 3. *to be proper.*
conversar, 1. *to converse.*
convidar, 1. *to invite.*
copiar, 1. *to copy.*
coronel, m. *colonel.*
cortado, *cut.*
cortaplumas, m. *penknife.*
cortar, 1. *to cut.*
cortés, *polite.*
corto, *short.*
correo, m. *post, mail, postoffice.*
correr, 2. *to run.*
cosa, f. *thing, matter of importance.*
costa, f. *expense.*
costar, 1. *to cost.*
costumbre, f. *manner.*
creador, m. *creator.*
crédito, m. *credit.*
creer, 2. *to believe.*
creo, *I believe.*
criada, f. *servantgirl.*
criado, m. *servant.*
crimen, m. *crime.*
cruel, *cruel.*
cruz, f. *cross.*
cuaderno, m. *copybook.*
cuadro, m. *picture.*
cuando, *when.*
cuanto, *as much.*
cuánto, *how much.*
cuarto, m. *room.*
cuatro, *four.*
cuenta, f. *account.*
cuento, m. *tale.*
cuchillo, m. *knife.*
culpado, *guilty.*

CH.

chaleco, m. *vest.*
champaña, f. *champagne.*
chiquito, *little.*

D.

da, *gives.*
dado, *given.*
danza, f. *dance.*
dar, 1. *to give.*
dar (1.) **un paseo**, *to take a walk.*
de, *of.*
debo, *I owe.*
debe, *owes.*
deber, 2. *to owe, must.*
débil, *weak.*
decidir, 3. *to decide.*
decir, 3. *to tell, to say.*
dedicar, 1. *to devote.*
dedo, m. *finger.*
de este modo, *in this way.*
defender, 2. *to defend.*
dejar, 1. *to leave.*
delante, *before.*
demasiado, *too, too much, too many.*
déme V., *give me.*
demolido, *pulled down.*
dentro de, *within.*
dependiente, m. *clerk.*
¿de quién? *whose?*
derecho, *right.*
de repente, *suddenly.*
derribar, 1. *to upset.*
derrotar, 1. *to defeat.*
descansar, 1. *to rest.*
descascarar, 1. *to peel.*
desconfiar, 1. *to distrust.*
descubrir, 3. *to discover.*
desde, *since, from.*
desde que, *since.*
desea, *wishes.*
deseamos, *we wish.*
desear, 1. *to desire.*
desgracia, f. *misfortune.*
desgraciado, *unfortunate.*
desmayarse, 1. *to faint.*
desobedecer, 2. *to disobey.*
desobediente, *disobedient.*
despacio, *slowly.*
despertarse, 1. *to awake.*
despreciado, *despised.*
después, *afterwards, then, after.*
después de, *after.*

después que, *after.*
destruir, 3. *to destroy.*
desuso, m. *desuetude.*
deuda, f. *debt.*
dé V., *give.*
devolver, 2. *to return, give back.*
día, m. *day.*
día festivo, *holiday.*
dibujar, 1. *to draw.*
dibujo, m. *drawing.*
dice, *says, tells.*
dicha, f. *luck.*
dicho, *said.*
dichoso, *happy.*
diente, m. *tooth.*
diferente, *different.*
difícil, *difficult.*
dificultad, f. *difficulty.*
diga V., *say, tell.*
digno, *worthy.*
dinero, m. *money.*
Dios, m. *God.*
diputado, m. *deputy.*
dirigir, 3. *to direct.*
discípulo, m. *pupil, scholar.*
discordia, f. *discord.*
disponer, 2. *to dispose.*
dispuesto, *disposed.*
disputar, 1. *to dispute.*
distinto, *distinct.*
divertir, 3. *to amuse.*
divertirse, 3. *to amuse one's self.*
divinidad, f. *divinity.*
docena, f. *dozen*
dolor de cabeza, f. *headache.*
donde, *where.*
dormir, 3. *to sleep.*
dormirse, 3. *to fall asleep.*
dos, *two.*
doy, *I give.*
dudar, 1 *to doubt.*
dueño, m. *owner.*
dulce, *sweet.*
durado, *lasted.*
durante, *during.*
duro, *dollar.*

E.

echar á pique, *to founder.*
echarse, 1. *to begin.*
edad, f. *age.*
Eduardo, *Edward.*
ejemplo, *example.*
ejército, m. *army.*
él, *he.*
elegancia, f. *elegance.*
eligir, 3. *to elect.*
ella, *she.*
ello, *it.*
embajador, m. *ambassador.*
embarcar, 1. *to engage.*
emperador, m. *emperor.*
emplear, 1. *to employ.*
empleo, m. *employment, situation.*
en, *in.*
encargar, 1. *to charge.*
en casa, *at home* (at the house of).
encender, 2. *to light.*
encendido, *red.*
encerrar, 1. *to lock up.*
encontrar, 1, *to find, to meet.*
encontrará, *will find.*
enfadado, *angry.*
enfadarse, 1. *to get angry.*
enemigo, m. *enemy.*
enfermo, m. *patient.*
enfermo, *ill, sick.*
engañar, 1. *to deceive.*
enorme, *enormous.*
Enrique, *Henry.*
enriquecer, 2. *to enrich.*
en seguida, *immediately.*
enseña, *teaches.*
entender, 2. *to understand.*
enterrar, 1. *to bury.*
entrar, 1. *to enter.*
entre, *between.*
entregar, 1. *to hand.*
enviado, *sent.*
enviar, 1. *to send.*
equivocación, f. *mistake.*
equivocarse, 1. *to make a mistake.*
era, *was.*
es, *is.*
escapar, 1. *to escape.*
Escipión, *Scipio.*
escoger, 2. *to select.*
escribe, *writes.*
¿escribe V.? *do you write?*
escribir, 3. *to write.*
escribo, *I write.*
escritura, f. *writing.*
escrito, *written.*
escritorio, m. *office.*
escuadra, f. *squadron.*
escuchar, 1. *to listen to.*
escuela, f. *school.*
ese, *that.*
España, f. *Spain.*
Español, *Spanish, Spaniard.*
especie, f. *species.*
especulación, f. *speculation.*
espejo, m. *mirror.*
esperar, 1. *to expect, to wait, to hope.*

esperanza, f. *hope.*
estación, f. *season.*
establecer, 2. *to establish.*
estado, m. *state, condition.*
estar, 1. *to be.*
estatua, f. *statue.*
este, *this.*
estrangero, m. *stranger.*
estrella, f. *star.*
estudiado, *studied.*
estudiamos, *we study.*
estudiante, m. *student.*
¿estudian VV.? *do you study.*
estudiar, 1. *to study.*
estudio, m. *study.*
estudioso, *studious.*
eterno, *eternal.*
Europa, *Europe.*
examinar, 1. *to examine.*
exceder, 2. *to exceed.*
excepto, *except.*
excusar, 1. *to excuse.*
exento, *exempted.*
experiencia, f. *experience.*
explicar, 1. *to explain.*
extinguidor, m. *extinguisher.*

F.

fabricante, m. *manufacturer.*
fabricar, 1. *to manufacture.*
fácil, *easy.*
faltar, 1. *to fail.*
familia, f. *family.*
favor, m. *favor.*
favorable, *favorable.*
favorecer, 2. *to favor.*
fe, f. *faith.*
Felipe, *Philip.*
feliz, *happy.*
femenil, *effeminate.*
feo, *ugly, homely.*
Fernando, *Ferdinand.*
ferrocarril, m. *railroad.*
fiebre, f. *fever.*
fiel, *faithful.*
fiesta, f. *feast, holy day.*
filial, *filial.*
fin, m. *end.*
flor, f. *flower.*
fonda, f. *hotel.*
formalizarse, 1. *to get vexed.*
formar, 1. *to form.*
fortaleza, f. *fortress.*
fortuna, f. *fortune.*
Francés, m. *Frenchman.*
Francia, f. *France.*
fresa, f. *strawberry.*
fresco, *cool.*
frío, *cold.*
friolera, f. *trifle.*
fruta, f. *fruit.*
fuego, m. *fire.*
fuerte, *strong.*
fuerza, f. *strength.*
función, f. *ceremony.*
fusil, m. *gun.*
fusilar, *to shoot.*

G.

Galileo, *Galileo.*
gallina, f. *fowl, chicken.*
gana, *earns.*
ganar, 1. *to earn.*
gas, m. *gas.*
gasta, *spends.*
gastar, 1. *to spend.*
gasto, m. *expense.*
generalmente, *generally.*
generoso, *generous.*
gente, f. *people.*
gloriosamente, *gloriously.*
gobernar, 1. *to manage, to govern.*
gobierno, m. *government.*
gota, f. *drop.*
gracias, *thank you.*
grande, m. *grandee.*
grandeza, f. *greatness.*
Griego, *Greek.*
gritar, 1. *to cry, to scream.*
grito, m. *outcry.*
grosería, *rudeness.*
guante, m. *glove.*
guardar, 1. *to keep.*
guerra, f. *war.*
Guillermo, *William.*
¿le gusta á V.? *do you like?*
me gusta, *I like, I am fond of.*
gusto, m. *pleasure.*

H.

hábil, *skillful.*
habitante, m. *inhabitant.*
habituarse, 1. *to accustom one's self.*
habla, *speaks.*
hablado, *spoken.*
hablan, *they speak.*
¿habla V.? / **¿hablan VV.?** } *do you speak?*
hablo, *I speak.*

hacer, 2. *to make, to do.*
¿hace V.? *do you do.*
hacienda, f. *estate.*
hallado, *found.*
hallar, 1. *to find.*
haragán, *lazy.*
hasta, *till, until, as far as.*
hasta que, *until.*
hay, *there is.*
hecho, *done.*
helar, 1. *to freeze.*
heredar, 1. *to inherit.*
heredero, m. *heir.*
herido, *wounded.*
hermana, f. *sister.*
hermano, m. *brother.*
hermoso, *handsome, fine.*
héroe, m. *hero.*
hierro, m. *iron.*
hija, f. *daughter.*
hijo, m. *son.*
hinchado, *swollen.*
historia, f. *history.*
hombre, m. *man.*
honrado, *honest.*
hora, f. *hour, time.*
hormiga, f. *ant.*
hotel, m. *hotel.*
hoy, *to-day.*
huevo, m. *egg.*
humanidad, f. *humanity.*
húmedo, *damp.*
huracán, m. *hurricane.*

I.

idioma, m. *language.*
iglesia, f. *church.*
ignorancia, f. *ignorance.*
ignorante, *ignorant.*
impaciente, *impatient.*
importante, *important.*
imposible, *impossible.*
imprenta, f. *press, imprint.*
incapaz, *incapable.*
incendio, m. *conflagration.*
indiferente, *indifferent.*
indigno, *unworthy.*
indomable, *indomitable.*
inducir, 3. *to induce.*
industrioso, *industrious.*
infeliz, *unhappy.*
ingenio, m. *genius.*
Inglaterra, *England.*
Inglés, m. *Englishman.*
inmóvil, *immovable.*
inocencia, f. *innocence.*
inocente, *innocent.*
insolencia, f. *insolence.*
instante, m. *instant.*
instruir, 3. *to instruct.*
instrumento, m. *instrument.*
inteligente, *intelligent.*
intención, f. *intention.*
interesante, *interesting.*
interesar, 1. *to interest.*
interesarse, 1. *to take interest.*
inútil, *useless.*
invierno, m. *winter.*
invitación, f. *invitation.*
invocar, 1. *to invoke.*
ir, 3. *to go.*
irse, 3. *to go away.*
Isabel, *Isabella.*
isla, f. *island.*
Italia, f. *Italy.*

J.

jactarse, 1, *to boast.*
jamás, *ever, never.*
jamón, m. *ham.*
jardín, m. *garden.*
jardinero, m. *gardener.*
joven, *young.*
joyero, m. *jeweler.*
Juan, *John.*
jugar, 1. *to play.*
Julio, *Julius.*
Junio, m. *June.*
junto, *together.*
juventud, f. *youth.*
juzgar, 1. *to judge.*

L.

labrador, m. *farmer.*
lado, m. *side.*
ladrón, m. *thief.*
lágrima, f. *tear.*
lámpara, f. *lamp.*
largo, *long.*
Latín, *Latin.*
lavandera, f. *washer-woman.*
lápiz, m. *pencil.*
lavar, 1. *to wash.*
lección, f. *lesson.*
leche, f. *milk.*
leer, 2. *to read.*
legua, f. *league.*
legumbre, f. *vegetable.*
leído, *read.*
lejos, *far.*
lengua, f. *language.*
leña, f. *wood.*
león, m. *lion.*
levantarse, 1. *to rise.*
ley, f. *law.*
liberal, *liberal.*

liberalidad, f. *liberality.*
libertad, f. *liberty.*
libra, f. *pound.*
libro, m. *book.*
licencia, f. *license.*
licenciar, 1. *to disband.*
ligero, *quick.*
limonada, f. *lemonade.*
limpio, *clean.*
lista, f. *list.*
listo, *ready.*
loco, *insane.*
lodo, m. *mud.*
Londres, *London.*
luego que, *as soon as.*
lugar, m. *place, spot.*
Luisa, *Louisa.*
luna, f. *moon.*
luz, f. *light.*

LL.

llamar, 1. *to call.*
llamarse, 1. *to be called.*
llave, f. *key.*
llega, *arrives.*
llegar, 1. *to arrive.*
llegado, *arrived.*
lleno, *full.*
llevar, 1. *to take.*
llora, *weeps.*
llorar, 1. *to cry, to weep.*
llover, 2. *to rain.*
lluvia, f. *rain.*

M.

madre, f. *mother.*
madrina, f. *godmother.*
maduro, *ripe.*
maestro, m. *teacher.*
magnífico, *splendid.*
malo, *bad, ill, unwell.*
mandar, 1. *to send, to order.*
mande V., *send.*
mano, f. *hand.*
mantener, 2. *to support.*
manzana, f. *apple.*
mañana, f. *morning.*
mañana, *to-morrow.*
marcha, f. *march.*
marchar, 1. *to go, to march.*
marcharse, 1. *to depart.*
marido, m. *husband.*
marinero, m. *sailor.*
más, *more.*
máscara, f. *mask.*
matar, 1. *to kill.*
máxima, f. *maxim.*
la mayor parte, *the most.*
media, f. *stocking.*
médico, m. *physician.*
medio, m. *means, way.*
medir, 3. *to measure.*
memoria, f. *memory.*
menester, *necessary.*
mentira, f. *falsehood.*
mercader, m. *merchant.*
mercancías, f. pl. *goods.*
merecer, 2. *to deserve.*
mérito, m. *merit.*
mes, m. *month.*
mesa, f. *table.*
mi, *my.*
militar, *military.*
milla, f. *mile.*
mina, *mine.*
minuto, m. *minute.*
mirar, 1. *to look at.*
miseria, f. *misery.*
mismo, *same, very, self.*
mitad, f. *half.*
modo, m. *way.*
molestar, 1. *to trouble.*
momento, m. *moment.*
montar, 1. *to mount.*
monte, m. *mountain.*
monumento, m. *monument.*
morder, 2. *to bite.*
morir, 3. *to die.*
Moro, m. *Moor.*
mostrar, 1. *to show.*
motivo, m. *motive.*
mover, 2. *to move, to turn.*
movimiento, m. *movement.*
muchacha, f. *girl.*
muchacho, m. *boy.*
muchas gracias, *I (or we) thank you.*
mucho, mucha, *much.*
muchos, muchas, *many.*
mucho tiempo, *long time.*
muerte, f. *death.*
muerto, *died.*
mujer, f. *woman, wife.*
mundo, m. *world.*
muñeca, f. *doll.*
murió, *died.*
muro, m. *wall.*
música, f. *music.*
muy, *very.*

N.

nacer, 2. *to be born.*
nación, f. *nation.*
nada, *nothing, not anything.*
nadie, *nobody, not anybody, no one.*
naranja, f. *orange.*
natural, *natural.*

navegación, f. *navigation.*
necesidad, f. *necessity.*
necesita, *needs.*
¿necesita V.? *do you need?*
necesitar, 1. *to need.*
necesito, *I need.*
necesario, *necessary.*
negocio, m. *business.*
negro, *black.*
ni, *neither, nor.*
nieve, f. *snow.*
ninguno, *not any, none, no.*
niño, m. *child.*
no, *no.*
noche, f. *night.*
no...más, *no...more.*
nombre, m. *name.*
norte, m. *north.*
nosotros, *we, us.*
noticia, f. *news.*
novela, f. *novel.*
nuevo, *new.*
nuez, f. *nut.*
número, m. *number.*
nunca, *never.*

O.

obedecer, 2. *to obey.*
obediente, *obedient.*
objeto, m. *object.*
obligar, 1. *to oblige, to compel.*
obra, f. *work.*
obrar, 1. *to act.*
obrero, m. *workman.*
obtener, 2. *to obtain.*
ocasión, f. *occasion.*
ociosidad, f. *idleness.*
ocupado, *busy.*
ocupar, 1. *to occupy.*
odiar, 1. *to hate.*
ofender, 2. *to offend.*
oficial, m. *officer.*
ofrecer, 2. *to offer.*
oír, 3. *to hear.*
¡ojalá! *would to God.*
ojo, m. *eye.*
olor, m. *smell.*
olvidar, 1. *to forget.*
onza, f. *ounce.*
opinión, f. *opinion.*
orgulloso, *proud.*
oro, m. *gold.*
osar, 1. *to dare.*
oscuro, *dark.*
oso, m. *bear.*
otra cosa, *something else.*
otro, *other, another.*

P.

paciencia, f. *patience.*
padecer, 2. *to suffer.*
padre, m. *father.*
padres, m. pl. *parents.*
padrino, m. *godfather.*
pagar, 1. *to pay.*
página, f. *page.*
país, m. *country.*
pájaro, m. *bird.*
palabra, f. *word.*
palacio, m. *palace.*
pan, m. *bread.*
panadero, m. *baker.*
paño, m. *cloth.*
pañuelo, m. *handkerchief.*
papel, m. *paper.*
paquete, m. *package.*
para, *for.*
parado, *standing.*
paraguas, m. *umbrella.*
pararse, 1. *to stand.*
parecen, *seem.*
parque, m. *park.*
parte, f. *part.*
partir, 3. *to leave.*
pasado, *past, last.*
pasado mañana, *the day after to-morrow.*
pasar, 1. *to pass.*
pasearse, 1. *to take a walk.*
paseo, m. *walk.*
paternal, *paternal.*
patio, m. *yard.*
patria, f. *country.*
pavo, m. *turkey.*
paz, f. *peace.*
pedazo, m. *piece,*
pedir, 3. *to ask for.*
Pedro, *Peter.*
pegar, 1. *to strike.*
pelea, f. *fight.*
pelear, 1. *to fight.*
peligroso, *dangerous.*
pelo, m. *hair.*
penoso, *hard, painful.*
pensar, 1. *to think, to intend.*
peor, *worse.*
pequeño, *small, little.*
pera, f. *pear.*
perder, 2. *to lose.*
pérdida, f. *loss.*
perdido, *lost.*
perdonar, 1. *to forgive.*
periódico, m. *newspaper.*
permitir, 3. *to allow.*
pero, *but.*
persona, f. *person.*
pertenece, *belongs.*
perro, m. *dog.*
pesar, m. *grief.*
pescuezo, m. *neck.*
pícaro, m. *rogue.*
pide, *asks for.*
pie, m. *foot.*

¿piensa V.? *do you intend?*
pierna, f. *leg.*
pieza, f. *piece.*
pintar, 1. *to depict.*
pintura, f. *painting.*
pío, *pious.*
pizarra, f. *slate.*
planta, f. *plant.*
plata, f. *silver.*
pleito, m. *lawsuit.*
plomo, m. *lead.*
poblar, 1. *to people.*
pobre, *poor.*
poco, adv. *little.*
pocos, *few.*
poder, m. *power.*
poderoso, *powerful.*
podrir, 3. *to rot.*
pollo, m. *chicken.*
Pompeyo, *Pompey.*
ponerse, 2. *to put on.*
populacho, m. *mob.*
por, *through, by.*
por cierto, *certainly.*
por desgracia, *unfortunately.*
porfiado, *obstinate.*
por más...que, *however.*
por precisión, *by necessity.*
porque, *because.*
¿porqué? *why?*
por supuesto, *of course.*
posada, f. *inn.*
posesión, f. *possession.*
posible, *possible.*
posteridad, *posterity.*
pozo, m. *well.*
practicar, 1. *to practise.*
precepto, m. *precept.*
precio, m. *price.*
preciso, *necessary.*
preferir, 3. *to prefer.*
pregunta, f. *question.*
preguntar, 1. *to inquire, to ask.*
preparar, 1. *to prepare.*
prerogativa, f. *prerogative.*
prescribir, 3. *to prescribe.*
presentar, 1. *to present, to introduce.*
prestar, 1. *to lend.*
presumido, *conceited.*
pretender, 2. *to pretend.*
prima, f. *cousin.*
primavera, f. *spring.*
primero, *first.*
primo, m. *cousin.*
príncipe, m. *prince.*
principiante, m. *beginner.*
principio, m. *principle.*
prisionero, m. *prisoner.*
privilegio, m. *privilege.*
probable, *probable.*
probablemente, *probably.*
probar, 1. *to prove.*
procesión, f. *procession.*
profesor, m. *professor.*
profundo, *deep.*
prometer, 2. *to promise.*
pronto, *soon, quickly.*
pronunciar, 1. *to pronounce.*
propenso, *inclined.*
propicio, *propitious.*
propiedad, f. *property.*
proponer, 2. *to propose.*
provenir, 3. *to come from* (to originate), *to result.*
próximo, *next.*
prueba, f. *proof.*
¿puede V.? *can you?*
puedo, *I can.*
público, *public.*
pueblo, m. *town, village.*
puente, m. *bridge.*
puerta, f. *door.*
puerto, m. *port.*
pues, *as, well, for.*
puesto, *put.*
pulpero, m. *grocer.*
puñalada, f. *stab* (with a poniard).

Q.

que, *that, which.*
qué, *which, what.*
qué, *how.*
quedarse, 1. *to remain.*
quejarse, 1. *to complain.*
quemar, 1. *to burn.*
querer, 2. *to grant.*
queso, m. *cheese.*
quien, *who, whom.*
quiere, *wishes.*
¿quiere V.? *will you have? do you wish?*
quieren, *wish.*
quiero, *I wish, I will have.*
quieto, *quiet.*
quitarse, 1. *to take off.*
quitasol, m. *sunshade.*

R.

raro, *rare.*
ratón, m. *mouse.*
razón, f. *reason.*
recibido, *received.*
recibir, 3. *to receive.*
recomendar 1. *to recommend.*

recompensa, f. *recompense.*
reconocer, 2. *to know.*
referir, 3. *to relate.*
refresco, m. *refreshment.*
regimiento, m. *regiment.*
reina, f. *queen.*
reinar, 1. *to reign.*
reino, m. *kingdom.*
reír, 3. *to laugh.*
rendirse, 3. *to surrender.*
reo, m. *culprit.*
reparar, 1. *to compensate.*
repetir, 3. *to repeat.*
representar, 1. *to play.*
reprimir, 3. *to repress.*
residir, 3. *to reside.*
resolver, 2. *to resolve.*
respetar, 1. *to respect.*
responder, 2. *to answer.*
restablecer, 2. *to reëstablish.*
retrato, m. *picture.*
rey, m. *king.*
ricachón, m. *a very rich man.*
rico, *rich.*
ríe, *laughs.*
rienda, f. *bridle.*
rincón, m. *corner.*
río, m. *river.*
robar, 1. *to steal.*
Romano, m. *Roman.*
Rómulo, *Romulus.*
ropa, f. *clothes.*
rosa, f. *rose.*
rubio, *fair, blond.*
ruido, m. *noise.*
ruina, f. *ruin.*
Rusia, *Russia.*
Ruso, *Russian.*

S.

sábana, f. *sheet.*
sabe, *knows.*
¿sabe V.? *do you know?*
sabiamente, *wisely.*
sabio, *wise.*
sable, m. *saber.*
sacar, 1. *to draw.*
saco, m. *bag.*
sagrado, *sacred.*
sale, *goes out, comes out, leaves.*
¿sale V.? *do you go out?*
salida, f. *exit.*
salir, 3. *to leave, to go out.*
salir de, *to leave.*
saltar, 1. *to jump.*
salubre, *healthy.*
sastre, m. *tailor.*
satisfecho, *satisfied.*
sé, *I know.*
seda, f. *silk.*
en seguida, *immediately.*
seguir, 3. *to continue, to follow.*
según, *according to.*
seguro, *sure.*
semana, f. *week.*
la semana que viene, *next week.*
sembrar, 1. *to sow.*
sentado, *seated.*
sentar, 1. *to become.*
sentarse, 1. *to sit down.*
sentencia, f. *maxim, judgment.*
sentir, 3. *to feel, to regret.*
señas, f. pl. *direction.*
señor, *sir, Mr.*
señora, *madam, Mrs.*
ser, *to be.*
servicio, m. *service.*
servido, *served.*
si, *if.*
sí, *yes.*
siempre, *always.*
lo siento, *I am sorry for it.*
siguen, *follow.*
silla, f. *chair, saddle.*
sin, *without.*
sin embargo, *however.*
singular, *singular.*
sino, *but.*
soberbio, *haughty.*
sobre, *on, upon, about.*
sobretodo, m. *overcoat.*
sociedad, f. *society.*
socorro, m. *assistance.*
sol, m. *sun.*
solamente, *only.*
soler, 2. *to be in the habit.*
solo, *alone.*
sólo, *only.*
sombrerero, m. *natter.*
sombrero, m. *hat.*
someter, 2. *to subdue.*
son, *are.*
soñar, 1. *to dream.*
sopa, f. *soup.*
sordo, *deaf.*
sorprendido, *surprised.*
su, *his, her.*
sublevar, 1. *to revolt.*
sucio, *dirty.*
sueño, m. *dream.*
suerte, f. *fate.*
sufocar, 1. *to suffocate.*
suministrar, 1. *to offer.*
súplica, f. *entreaty.*
suplicar, 1. *to entreat.*

suponer, 2. *to suppose.*
supremo, *supreme.*
suspender, 2. *to suspend.*

T.

tal, *such as.*
talento, m. *talent.*
tal vez, *perhaps.*
también, *too, also.*
tampoco, *not either, neither.*
tan, *so.*
tan pronto como, *as soon as.*
tarde, f. *afternoon.*
tarde, *late.*
Tartaria, f. *Tartary.*
té, m. *tea.*
teatro, m. *theater.*
Telémaco, *Telemachus.*
temblar, 1. *to tremble.*
temer, 2. *to fear.*
temor, m. *fear.*
temprano, *early.*
tener, 2. *to hold, to have.*
teologal, *theological.*
teórico, *theoretical.*
terremoto, *earthquake.*
tía, f. *aunt.*
tío, m. *uncle.*
tiempo, m. *time.*
en tiempo pasado, *formerly.*
tienda, f. *shop.*
tiene, *has.*
tienen, *have.*
tierra, f. *earth.*
tigre, m. *tiger.*
tijeras, f. pl. *scissors.*
tímido, *timid.*
tintero, m. *inkstand.*
tocar, 1. *to play on.*
todavía, *yet.*
todo, *all, everything.*
todo el mundo, *everybody.*
tomar, 1. *to take.*
tomo, m. *volume.*
tonto, *foolish, silly.*
torre, f. *tower.*
trabaja, *works.*
trabajar, 1. *to work.*
trabajo, m. *work.*
traducción, f. *translation.*
traducir, 3. *to translate.*
traer, 2. *to bring.*
traído, *brought.*
traiga V., *bring.*
traje, m. *dress.*
trasparente, *transparent.*
tratar, 1. *to treat.*
tres, *three.*
trineo, m. *sleigh.*
tripulación, f. *crew.*
triste, *sad.*
trueno, m. *thunder.*
turbulento, *boisterous.*

U.

último, *last.*
unos pocos, *a few.*
uña, f. *nail.*
urbanidad, f. *urbanity.*
Usted, *you* (sing.).
Ustedes, *you* (pl.).
útil, *useful.*

V.

V., see **Usted.**
va, *goes.*
vaca, f. *cow.*
vacío, *empty.*
valiente, *brave.*
valer, 2. *to be worth.*
valor, m. *courage.*
vapor, m. *steam, steamer.*
vara, f. *yard.*
varios, as, *several.*
vaso, m. *glass* (to drink in).
¿va V.? *are you going?*
Vd., see **Usted.**
Vds., see **Ustedes.**
ve, *sees.*
vencer, 2. *to conquer.*
vende, *sells.*
vender, 2. *to sell.*
¿vende V.? *do you sell?*
vendido, *sold.*
vendo, *I sell.*
veneno, m. *poison.*
veo, *I see.*
venir, 3. *to come.*
ventajoso, *profitable.*
ventana, f. *window.*
ver, 2. *to see.*
verdad, f. *truth.*
verde, *green.*
verso, m. *verse.*
vestido, m. *dress.*
vestidos, m. pl. *clothes*
vestir, 3. *to dress.*
vestirse, 3. *to dress.*
¿ve V.? *do you see?*
vez, f. *time.*
viajar, 1. *to travel.*
viaje, m. *journey.*
victoria, f. *victory.*
vida, f. *life.*
vidrio, m. *glass.*
viejo, *old.*
viene, *comes.*
viento, m. *wind.*

vigilante, *watchful.*
vino, m. *wine.*
virtud, f. *virtue.*
visitar, 1. *to visit*
visto, *seen.*
vive, *lives.*
vivir, 3. *to live.*
volar, 1. *to fly.*
volver, 2. *to turn, to return.*
volver á hacer, 2. *to do again.*
voy, *I am going.*
vuelva V., *return.*
VV., see **Ustedes**.

Y.

y, *and.*
ya, *already.*
ya no, *no longer.*
yerba, f. *grass.*
yo, *I.*

Z.

zapatero, m. *shoemaker.*
zapato, m. *shoe.*

II. English-Spanish.

A.

absent, *ausente.*
about, *sobre, como.*
abundant, *abundante.*
acceptable, *aceptable.*
accident, *accidente*, m.
to accompany, *acompañar*, 1.
according to, *según.*
account, *cuenta*, f.
to accuse, *acusar*, 1.
to accustom, *acostumbrar*, 1.
accustomed, *acostumbrado*, 1.
to accustom one's self, *habituarse*, 1.
acquaintance, *conocido*, m.
are you acquainted with? *conoce V.?*
I am acquainted with, *conozco.*
to act, *obrar*, 1.
action, *acción*, f.
to add, *añadir*, 3.
to adhere, *adherir*, 3.
admiral, *almirante*, m.
admitted, *admitido.*
adventure, *aventura*, f.
advice, *consejo*, m.
to advise, *aconsejar*, 1.
affable, *afable.*
after, *después, después de, después que.*
afternoon, *tarde*, f.
afterward, *después.*
afterwards, *después.*
age, *edad*, f.
agreeable, *agradable.*
air, *aire*, m.
all, *todo.*
to allow, *permitir*, 3.
alone, *solo.*
already, *ya.*
also, *también.*
although, *aunque.*
always, *siempre.*
ambassador, *embajador*, m.
American, *Americano*, m.
to amuse, *divertir*, 3.
to amuse one's self, *divertirse*, 3.
and, *y, é*
angry, *enfadado.*
animal, *animal*, m.
to announce, *anunciar*, 1.
another, *otro.*
to answer, *contestar*, 1. *responder*, 2.
ant, *hormiga*, f.
any, *alguno.*
anybody, *alguien, alguno.*
any one, *alguno.*
anything, *algo.*
anywhere, *alguna parte.*
to appeal, *apelar*, 1.
to appear, *comparecer*, 2.
apple, *manzana*, f.
to approach, *acercarse*, 1.
to approve, *aprobar*, 1.
Arab, *Árabe*, m.
are, *son.*
to arrange, *arreglar*, 1.
army, *ejército*, m.
to arrive, *llegar*, 1.
arrived, *llegado.*
arrives, *llega.*
article, *artículo*, m.
as, *pues.*
as far, *hasta.*
as far as, *hasta.*
to ask, *preguntar*, 1.
to ask for, *pedir*, 3.
asks for, *pide.*
assistance, *socorro*, m.
as soon as, *tan pronto como, luego que, así que, al punto que.*
to assure, *asegurar*, 1.
at (the house of), *en casa.*
at home, *en casa.*
to attack, *atacar*, 1.
attention, *atención*, f.
attentive, *atento.*
aunt, *tía*, f.
author, *autor*, m.
authorization, *autorización*, f.
to authorize, *autorizar*, 1.
to awake, *despertarse* 1.

B.

bad, *malo*.
bag, *saco*, m.
baker, *panadero*, m.
to balance, *pesar*, 1.
ball, *baile*, m.
bank, *banco*, m.
banker, *banquero*, m.
bark, *barco*, m.
to bathe, *bañarse*, 1.
battle, *batalla*, f.
to be, *estar*, 1. *ser*, 2.
bear, *oso*, m.
because, *porque*.
to become, *sentar*, 1.
bed, *cama*, f.
beef, *carne* (f.) *de vaca*, f.
beer, *cerveza*, f.
before, *delante*, *antes de*.
to begin, *echarse*, 1.
beginner, *principiante*, m.
to behave, *comportarse*, 2.
behavior, *comportamiento*, m.
to believe, *creer*, 2.
I believe, *creo*.
belongs, *pertenece*.
benefit, *beneficio*, m.
benevolent, *benéfico*.
to bet, *apostar*, 1.
between, *entre*.
billiard, *billar*, m.
bird, *pájaro*, m.
to bite, *morder*, 2.
bitter, *amargo*.
black, *negro*.
to bless, *bendecir*, 3.
blind, *ciego*.
blond, *rubio*.
blow (with a stick), *bastonazo*, m.
blue, *azul*.
to boast, *jactarse*, 1.
boisterous, *turbulento*.
book, *libro*, m.
boot, *bota*, f.
to be born, *nacer*, 2.
bottle, *botella*, f.
bought, *comprado*.
box, *caja*, f.
boy, *muchacho*, m.
brave, *valiente*.
bread, *pan*, m.
breakfast, *almuerzo*, m.
to breakfast, *almorzar*, 1.
bridge, *puente*, m.
bridle, *rienda*, f.
to bring, *traer*, 2.
bring, *traiga V.*
brother, *hermano*, m.
brought, *traído*.
to build, *construir*, 3.
to burn, *quemar*, 1.
to bury, *enterrar*, 1.
business, *negocio*, m. *asunto*, m.
busy, *ocupado*.
but, *pero*, *sino*.
butcher, *carnicero*, m.
button, *botón*, m.
do you buy ? *¿compra V.?*
I buy, *compro*.
by, *por*.

C.

Caesar, *César*.
cake, *bollo*, m.
to call, *llamar*, 1.
to be called, *llamarse*, 1.
can you ? *¿puede V.?*
I can, *puedo*.
cane, *caña*, f. *bastón*, m.
capital, *capital*, f.
captain, *capitán*, m.
Caroline, *Carolina*.
carpenter, *carpintero*, m.
carriage, *coche*, m.
cart, *carreta*, f.
case, *causa*, f.
catch, *prender*, 2.
cause, *causa*, f.
cavalry, *caballería*, f.
celebrated, *célebre*.
cellar, *bodega*, f.
to censure, *censurar*, 1.
cent, *centavo*, m.
ceremony, *función*, f.
certain, *cierto*.
certainly, *por cierto*.
chain, *cadena*, f.
chair, *silla*, f.
champagne, *champaña*, f.
chapter, *capítulo*, m.
to charge, *encargar*, 1.
charity, *caridad*, f.
Charles, *Carlos*.
cheap, *barato*.
cheese, *queso*, m.
cherry, *cereza*, f.
chicken, *pollo*, m. *gallina*, f.
child, *niño*, m.
cholera, *cólera*, m.
church, *iglesia*, f.
city, *ciudad*, f.
class, *clase*, f.
clean, *limpio*.
clear, *claro*.
clerk, *dependiente*, m.
climate, *clima*, m.
closed, *cerrado*.
closet, *armario*, m.
cloth, *paño*, m.
clothes, *ropa*, f. *vestidos* m. pl.
coach, *coche*, m.
coal, *carbón*, m.

coat, *casaca*, f.
coffee, *café*, m.
cold, *frío*.
college, *colegio*, m.
Columbus, *Colón*.
colonel, *coronel*, m.
to come, *venir*, 3.
to come down, *bajar*, 1.
comedy, *comedia*, f.
to come from, (to originate), *provenir*, 3.
comes, *viene*.
comes out, *sale*.
to comfort, *consolar*, 1.
companion, *compañero*, m.
to compare, *comparar*, 2.
to compel, *obligar*, 1.
to compensate, *reparar*, 1.
to complain, *quejarse*, 1.
conceited, *presumido*.
concert, *concierto*, m.
concise, *conciso*.
to conclude, *concluir*, 3.
to condemn, *condenar*, 1.
condition, *estado*, m.
conduct, *conducta*, f.
to conduct, *conducir*, 3.
to confess, *confesar*, 1.
conflagration, *incendio*, m.
conformably, *conforme*.
congress, *congreso*, m.
to conquer, *vencer*, 2.
to consist, *consistir*, 3.
to console, *consolar*, 1.
conspiracy, *conjuración*, f.
to construct, *construir*, 3.
to consult, *consultar*, 1.
consulted, *consultado*.
to contain, *contener*, 2.
contains, *contiene*.
to continue, *seguir*, 3. *continuar*, 1.
contrary, *contrario*.
on the contrary, *al contrario*.
to converse, *conversar*, 1.
to convince, *convencer*, 2.
cook, *cocinero*, m.
cook, *cocinera*, f.
cool, *fresco*.
to copy, *copiar*, 1.
copybook, *cuaderno*, m.
corner, *rincón*, m.
to cost, *costar*, 1.
cotton, *algodón*, m.
count, *conde*, m.
to count, *contar*, 1.
countess, *condesa*, f.
country, *patria*, f. *campo*, m. *país*, m.
courage, *valor*, m.
of course, *por supuesto*.
cousin, *primo*, m.
cousin, *prima*, f.
cow, *vaca*, f.
creator, *creador*, m.
credit, *crédito*, m.
on credit, *á crédito*.
crew, *tripulación*, f.
crime, *crimen*, m.
cross, *cruz*, f.
to cross over, *atravesar*, 1.
cruel, *cruel*.
to cry, *llorar*, 1, *gritar*, 1.
culprit, *reo*, m.
to cut, *cortar*, 1.
cut, *cortado*.

D.

damp, *húmedo*.
to dance, *bailar*, 1.
I dance, *bailo*.
dancing, *danza*, f.
dangerous, *peligroso*.
to dare, *osar*, 1.
dark, *oscuro*.
daughter, *hija*, f.
day, *día*, m.
the day after to-morrow, *pasado mañana*.
deaf, *sordo*.
dear, *caro*.
death, *muerte*, f.
debt, *deuda*, f.
to deceive, *engañar*, 1.
to decide, *decidir*, 3.
deep, *profundo*.
to defeat, *derrotar*, 1.
to defend, *defender*, 2.
to delay, *atrasar*, 1.
to depart, *marcharse*, 1.
to depict, *pintar*, 1.
deputy, *diputado*, m.
to deserve, *merecer*, 2.
to desire, *desear*, 1.
despised, *despreciado*.
to destroy, *destruir*, 3.
desuetude, *desuso*, m.
to devastate, *asolar*, 1.
to devote, *dedicar*, 1.
to die, *morir*, 3.
died, *murió*, *muerto*.
different, *diferente*.
difficult, *difícil*.
difficulty, *dificultad*, f.
to dine, *comer*, 2.
do you dine? *¿come V.?*

we dine, *comemos.*
dining-room, *comedor*, m.
dinner, *comida*, f.
to direct, *dirigir*, 3.
direction, *señas*, f. pl.
dirty, *sucio.*
to disband, *licenciar*, 1.
discord, *discordia*, f.
to discover, *descubrir*, 3.
disobedient, *desobediente.*
to disobey, *desobedecer*, 2.
to dispose, *disponer*, 2.
disposed, *dispuesto.*
to dispute, *disputar*, 1.
distinct, *distinto.*
to distrust, *desconfiar*, 1.
divinity, *divinidad*, f.
to do, *hacer*, 2.
do you do? *¿hace V.?*
to do again, *volver á hacer.*
dog, *perro*, m.
doll, *muñeca*, f.
dollar, *duro*, m.
done, *hecho.*
door, *puerta*, f.
to doubt, *dudar*, 1.
downstairs, *abajo.*
dozen, *docena*, f.
to draw, *sacar*, 1. *dibujar*, 1.
drawer, *cajón*, m.
drawing, *dibujo*, m.
dream, *sueño*, m.
to dream, *soñar*, 1.
dress, *traje*, m. *vestido*, m.
to dress, *vestirse*, 3.
I drink, *bebo.*
drop, *gota*, f.
druggist, *boticario*, m.
during, *durante.*

E.

each, *cada.*
eager, *ansioso.*
early, *temprano.*
to earn, *ganar*, 1.
earns, *gana.*
earth, *tierra*, f.
earthquake, *terremoto*, m.
easy, *fácil.*
to eat, *comer*, 2.
eaten, *comido.*
eating, *comida*, f.
Edward, *Eduardo.*
effeminate, *femenil.*
egg, *huevo*, m.
elegance, *elegancia*, f.
to elect, *eligir*, 3.
emperor, *emperador*, m.
to employ, *emplear*, 1.
employment, *empleo*, m.
empty, *vacío.*
end, *fin*, m.
to end, *concluirse*, 3.
enemy, *enemigo*, m.
to engage, *embarcar*, 1.
England, *Inglaterra*, f.
Englishman, *Inglés*, m.
enormous, *enorme.*
enough, *bastante.*
to enrich, *enriquecer*, 2.
to enter, *entrar*, 1.
to entreat, *suplicar*, 1.
entreaty, *súplica*, f.
to escape, *escapar*, 1.
to establish, *establecer*, 2.
estate, *hacienda*, f.
eternal, *eterno.*
Europe, *Europa*, f.
even, *aun.*
ever, *jamás.*
everybody, *todo el mundo.*
everything, *todo.*
example, *ejemplo*, m.
to examine, *examinar*, 1.
to exceed, *exceder*, 2.
excellent, *excelente.*
except, *excepto.*
to exchange, *cambiar*, 1.
to excuse, *excusar*, 1.
exempted, *exento.*
exit, *salida*, f.
to expect, *esperar*, 1. *aguardar*, 1.
expense, *costa*, f. *gasto*, m.
experience, *experiencia*, f.
to explain, *explicar*, 1.
extinguisher, *extinguidor*, m.
eye, *ojo*, m.

F.

face, *cara*, f.
to fail, *faltar*, 1.
to faint, *desmayarse*, 1.
fair, *rubio.*
faith, *fe*, f.
faithful, *fiel.*
to fall, *caer*, 2. *caerse*, 2.
to fall asleep, *dormirse*, 3.
falsehood, *mentira*, f.
family, *familia*, f.
fan, *abanico*, m.
far, *lejos.*
farmer, *labrador*, m.

fast, *aprisa.*
to be fast, *adelantar*, 1.
fate, *suerte*, f.
father, *padre*, m.
favor, *favor*, m.
to favor, *favorecer*, 2.
favorable, *favorable.*
fear, *temor*, m.
to fear, *temer*, 2.
feast, *fiesta.*
to feel, *sentir*, 3.
fellow-scholar, *condiscípulo*, m.
Ferdinand, *Fernando.*
fever, *fiebre*, f.
few, *pocos.*
a few, *unos pocos.*
fight, *pelea*, f.
to fight, *pelear*, 1.
filial, *filial.*
to find, *hallar*, 1. *encontrar*, 1.
fine, *hermoso.*
finger, *dedo*, m.
to finish, *concluir*, 3. *acabar*, 1.
fire, *fuego*, m.
first, *primero.*
flower, *flor*, f.
to fly, *volar*, 1.
to follow, *seguir*, 3.
follow, *siguen.*
I am fond of, *me gusta.*
foolish, *tonto.*
foot, *pie*, m.
on foot, *á pie.*
for, *para*, *pues.*
to forget, *olvidar*, 1.
to forgive, *perdonar*, 1.
to form, *formar*, 1.
formerly, *en tiempo pasado.*
fortress, *fortaleza*, f.
fortune, *fortuna*, f.
found, *hallado.*
to founder, *echar á pique.*
four, *cuatro.*
fowl, *gallina*, f.
France, *Francia*, f.
to freeze, *helar*, 1.
Frenchman, *Francés*, m.
friend, *amigo*, m.
friendly, *amistoso.*
friendship, *amistad*, f.
fruit, *fruta*, f.
full, *lleno.*

G.

Galileo, *Galileo.*
garden, *jardín*, m.
gardener, *jardinero*, m.
gas, *gas*, m.
generally, *generalmente.*
generous, *generoso.*
genius, *ingenio*, m.
gentleman, *caballero*, m.
German, *Alemán*, m.
Germany, *Alemania*, f.
to get angry, *enfadarse*, 1.
to get vexed, *formalizarse*, 1.
girl, *muchacha*, f.
to give, *dar*, 1.
I give, *doy.*
to give back, *devolver*, 2.
give, *dé V.*
give me, *déme V.*
given, *dado.*
gives, *da.*
glass, *vidrio*, m.
glass (to drink in), *vaso*, m.
gloriously, *gloriosamente.*
glove, *guante*, m.
to go, *ir*, 3. *marchar*, 1.
to go away, *irse*, 3.
God, *Dios*, m.
godfather, *padrino*, m.
godmother, *madrina*, f.
goes, *va.*
goes out, *sale.*
are you going? *¿va V.?*
I am going, *voy.*
gold, *oro*, m.
good, *bueno*, *bien.*
good-by, *adiós.*
good day, *buenos días.*
good morning, *buenos días.*
good night, *buenas noches.*
goods, *mercancías*, f. pl.
to go out, *salir*, 3.
do you go out? *¿sale V.?*
to go to bed, *acostarse*, 1.
to govern, *gobernar*, 1.
government, *gobierno*, m.
to grant, *querer*, 2.
grandee, *grande*, m.
grass, *yerba*, f.
greatness, *grandeza*, f.
greedy, *codicioso.*
Greek, *griego.*
green, *verde.*
grief, *pesar*, m.
grocer, *pulpero*, m.
guilty, *culpado.*
gun, *fusil*, m.

H.

to be in the habit, *soler*, 2.
hair, *pelo*, m.

half, *mitad*, f.
ham, *jamón*, m.
hand, *mano*, f.
to hand, *entregar*, 1.
handkerchief, *pañuelo*, m.
handsome, *hermoso*.
to happen, *acontecer*, 2.
happy, *dichoso, feliz*.
hard, *penoso*.
hardly, *apenas*.
has, *tiene*.
hat, *sombrero*, m.
to hate, *odiar*, 1. *aborrecer*, 2.
hatter, *sombrerero*, m.
haughty, *soberbio*.
to have, *tener*, 2.
have, *tienen*.
headache, *el dolor de cabeza*.
healthy, *salubre*.
to hear, *oír*, 3.
heaven, *cielo*, m.
heir, *heredero*, m.
to help, *ayudar*, 1.
Henry, *Enrique*.
her, *su*.
here, *aquí*.
here is, *aquí tiene V.*
hero, *héroe*, m.
high, *alto*.
his, *su*.
history, *historia*, f.
hogshead, *bocoy*, m.
to hold, *tener*, 2.
holiday, *día festivo*.
holy day, *fiesta*, f.
home, *á casa*.
at home, *en casa*.
homely, *feo*.
honest, *honrado*.
hope, *esperanza*, f.
to hope, *esperar*, 1.
horse, *caballo*, m.
on horseback, *á caballo*.
hotel, *fonda*, f.
hour, *hora*, f.
house, *casa*, f.
how, *como*.
how much, *cuanto*.
however, *por más...que, sin embargo*.
humanity, *humanidad*, f.
hunter, *cazador*, m.
hurricane, *huracán*, m.
husband, *marido*, m.

I.

idleness, *ociosidad*, f.
if, *si*.
ignorance, *ignorancia*, f.
ignorant, *ignorante*.
ill, *enfermo, malo*.
immediately, *en seguida*.
immovable, *inmóvil*.
impatient, *impaciente*.
important, *importante*.
impossible, *imposible*.
in, *en*.
incapable, *incapaz*.
inclined, *propenso*.
indifferent, *indiferente*.
indomitable, *indomable*.
to induce, *inducir*, 3.
industrious, *industrioso*.
inhabitant, *habitante*, m.
to inherit, *heredar*, 1.
inkstand, *tintero*, m.
inn, *posada*, f.
innocence, *inocencia*, f.
innocent, *inocente*.
to inquire, *preguntar*, 1.
insane, *loco*.
insolence, *insolencia*, f.
instant, *instante*, m.
to instruct, *instruir*, 3.
instrument, *instrumento*, m.
to intend, *pensar*, 1.
do you intend? *¿piensa V.?*
intelligent, *inteligente*.
intention, *intención*, f.
interesting, *interesante*.
in this way, *de este modo*.
to interest, *interesar*, 1.
intoxicated, *borracho*.
to introduce, *presentar*, 1.
invitation, *invitación*, f.
to invite, *convidar*, 1.
to invoke, *invocar*, 1.
iron, *hierro*, m.
is, *es*.
Isabella, *Isabel*.
island, *isla*, f.
Italy, *Italia*, f.

J.

jeweler, *joyero*, m.
John, *Juan*.
journey, *viaje*, m.
judgment, *sentencia*, f.
to judge, *juzgar*, 1.
Julius, *Julio*.
to jump, *saltar*, 1.
June, *Junio*, m.

K.

to keep, *guardar*, 1.
key, *llave*, f.
to kill, *matar*, 1.

kindness, *bondad*, f.
king, *rey*, m.
kingdom, *reino*, m.
kitchen, *cocina*, f.
knife, *cuchillo*, m.
to know, *conocer*, 2. *saber*, 2. *reconocer*, 2.
do you know? *¿sabe V.? ¿conoce V.?*
I know, *conozco, yo sé.*
known, *conocido.*
knows, *sabe.*

L.

lamp, *lámpara*, f.
language, *idioma*, m. *lengua*, f.
lane, *callejuela*, f.
last, *último, pasado.*
lasted, *durado.*
last night, *anoche.*
late, *tarde.*
Latin, *Latín.*
to laugh, *reír*, 3.
to laugh at, *burlarse*, 1.
laughs, *ríe.*
law, *ley*, f.
lawsuit, *pleito*, m.
lawyer, *abogado*, m.
lazy, *haragán.*
lead, *plomo*, m.
league, *legua*, f.
to learn, *aprender*, 2.
learned, *aprendido.*
at least, *á lo menos.*
to leave, *salir*, 3. *salir de, dejar*, 1. *alejarse*, 1. *partir*, 3.
leaves, *sale.*
leg, *pierna*, f.
lemonade, *limonada*, f.
to lend, *prestar*, 1.
lesson, *lección*, f.
to let, *alquilar*, 1
letter, *carta*, f.
liberal, *liberal.*
liberality, *liberalidad*, f.
liberty, *libertad*, f.
library, *biblioteca*, f.
license, *licencia*, f.
life, *vida*, f.
light, *luz*, f.
to light, *encender*, 2.
do you like? *¿le gusta á V.?*
I like, *me gusta.*
to limp, *cojear*, 1.
lion, *león*, m.
list, *lista*, f.
to listen to, *escuchar*, 1.
little, *pequeño, chiquito.*
little, *poco*, adv.
to live, *vivir*, 3.
lively, *alegre.*
lives, *vive.*
to lock up, *encerrar*, 1.
lodging, *alojamiento*, m.
London, *Londres.*
long, *largo.*
long time, *mucho tiempo.*
to look at, *mirar*, 1.
to look for, *buscar*, 1.
to lose, *perder*, 2.
loss, *pérdida*, f.
lost, *perdido.*
loud, *alto.*
Louisa, *Luisa*
love, *amor*, m.
to love, *amar*, 1.
do you love? *¿ama V.?*
I love, *amo.*
loved, *amado.*
low, *bajo, común.*
luck, *dicha*, f.

M.

madam, *señora.*
mahogany, *caoba*, f.
mail, *correo.* m.
to make, *hacer*, 2.
to make a mistake, *equivocarse*, 1.
man, *hombre*, m.
to manage, *gobernar*, 1.
manner, *costumbre*, f.
manufacturer, *fabricante.*
to manufacture, *fabricar*, 1.
many, *muchos, muchas.*
maple, *arce*, m.
march, *marcha*, f.
to march, *marchar*, 1.
to marry, *casar*, 1. *casarse*, 1.
mask, *máscara*, f.
mason, *albañil*, m.
master, *amo*, m.
matter, *asunto*, m.
matter of importance, *cosa*, f.
maxim, *máxima*, f. *sentencia*, f.
means, *medio*, m.
to measure, *medir*, 3.
meat, *carne*, f.
to meet, *encontrar*, 1.
memory, *memoria*, f.
merchant, *comerciante*, m. *mercader*, m.
merit, *merito*, m.
mile, *milla*, f.
military, *militar.*
milk, *leche*, f.
mine, *mina*, f.
minute, *minuto*, m.
mirror, *espejo*, m.
miser, *avaro*, m.

misery, *miseria*, f.
misfortune, *desgracia*, f.
mistake, *equivocación*, f.
mob, *populacho*, m.
moment, *momento*, m.
money, *dinero*, m.
month, *mes*, m.
monument, *monumento*, m.
moon, *luna*, f.
Moor, *moro*, m.
more, *más*.
morning, *mañana*, f.
the most, *la mayor parte*.
mother, *madre*, f.
motive, *motivo*, m.
to mount, *montar*, 1.
mountain, *monte*, m.
mouse, *ratón*, m.
mouth, *boca*, f.
to move, *mover*, 2.
movement, *movimiento*, m.
Mr., *Señor*.
Mrs., *Señora*.
much, *mucho*, *mucha*.
mud, *lodo*, m.
music, *música*, f.
must, *deber*, 2.
my, *mi*.

N.

nail, *uña*, f.
name, *nombre*, m.
nation, *nación*, f.
natural, *natural*.
navigation, *navegación*, f.
near, *cerca*.
nearly, *cerca de*.
necessary, *preciso*, *menester*, *necesario*.
necessity, *necesidad*, f.
by necessity, *por precisión*.
neck, *pescuezo*, m.
to need, *necesitar*, 1.
do you need? *¿necesita V.?*
I need, *necesito*.
needs, *necesita*.
neither, *tampoco*, *ni*.
never, *nunca*, *jamás*.
new, *nuevo*.
news, *noticia*, f.
newspaper, *periódico*, m.
next, *próximo*.
next week, *la semana que viene*.
night, *noche*, f.
no, *no*, *ninguno*.
nobody, *nadie*.
noise, *ruido*, m.
no longer, *ya no*.
no...more, *no...más*.
none, *ninguno*.
no one, *nadie*.
nor, *ni*.
north, *norte*, m.
no sooner, *apenas*.
not any, *ninguno*.
not anybody, *nadie*.
not anything, *nada*.
not either, *tampoco*.
nothing, *nada*.
novel, *novela*, f.
now, *ahora*.
number, *número*, m.
nut, *nuez*, f.

O.

obedient, *obediente*.
to obey, *obedecer*, 2.
object, *objeto*, m.
to oblige, *obligar*, 1.
obstinate, *porfiado*.
to obtain, *obtener*, 2. *conseguir*, 3.
occasion, *ocasión*, f.
to occupy, *ocupar*, 1.
of, *de*.
to offend, *ofender*, 2.
to offer, *ofrecer*, 2. *suministrar*, 1.
officer, *oficial*, m.
office, *escritorio*, m.
often, *á menudo*.
oil, *aceite*, m.
old, *viejo*.
on, *sobre*.
only, *solamente*.
to open, *abrir*, 3.
opened, *abierto*.
opinion, *opinión*, f. *concepto*, m.
orange, *naranja*, f.
to order, *mandar*, 1.
ordinary, *común*.
other, *otro*.
ounce, *onza*, f.
out, *afuera*.
outcry, *grito*, m.
overcoat, *sobretodo*, m.
to overwhelm, *colmar*, 1.
to owe, *deber*, 2.
I owe, *debo*.
owes, *debe*.
owner, *dueño*, m.
ox, *buey*, m.

P.

package, *paquete*, m.
page, *página*, f.
painful, *penoso*.
painting, *pintura*, f.
palace, *palacio*, m.

paper, *papel*, m.
parents, *padres*, m. pl.
park, *parque*, m.
part, *parte*, f.
to pass, *pasar*, 1.
past, *pasado*.
paternal, *paternal*.
patience, *paciencia*, f.
patient (sick person), *enfermo*, m.
to pay, *pagar*, 1.
peace, *paz*, f.
pear, *pera*, f.
to peel, *descascarar*, 1.
pencil, *lápiz*, m.
penknife, *cortaplumas*, m.
people, *gente*, f.
to people, *poblar*, 1.
perhaps, *acaso, tal vez.*
person, *persona*, f.
Peter, *Pedro.*
Philip, *Felipe.*
physician, *médico*, m.
picture, *retrato*, m. *cuadro.*
piece, *pieza*, f. *pedazo*, m.
pink, *clavel*, m.
pious, *pío.*
place, *lugar*, m.
plant, *planta*, f.
to play, *jugar*, 1. *representar*, 1.
to play on, *tocar*, 1.
to please, *complacer*, 2.
pleased, *contento.*
pleasure, *gusto*, m.
poison, *veneno*, m.
polite, *cortés, comedido.*
Pompey, *Pompeyo.*
poor, *pobre.*
port, *puerto*, m.
possession, *posesion*, f.
possible, *posible.*
post, *córreo*, m.
posterity, *posteridad*, f.
postman, *cartero*, m.
postoffice, *correo*, m.
pound, *libra*, f.
power, *poder*, m.
powerful, *poderoso.*
to practise, *practicar*, 1.
praise, *alabanza*, f.
to praise, *alabar*, 1.
precept, *precepto*, m.
to prefer, *preferir*, 3.
to prepare, *preparar*, 1.
prerogative, *prerogativa*, f.
to prescribe, *prescribir*, 3.
to present, *presentar*, 1.
press, *imprenta*, f.
to pretend, *pretender*, 2.
pretty, *bonito.*
price, *precio*, m.
prince, *príncipe*, m.
principle, *principio*, m.
prison, *carcel*, f.
prisoner, *prisionero*, m.
privilege, *privilegio*, m.
probable, *probable.*
probably, *probablemente.*
procession, *procesión*, f.
professor, *profesor.*
profitable, *ventajoso.*
to promise, *prometer*, 2.
to pronounce, *pronunciar*, 1.
proof, *prueba*, f.
to be proper, *convenir*, 3.
property, *propiedad*, f.
propitious, *propicio.*
to propose, *proponer*, 2.
proud, *orgulloso.*
to prove, *probar*, 1.
provided, *con tal que.*
public, *público.*
pulled down, *demolido.*
to punish, *castigar*, 1.
pupil, *discípulo*, m.
to put on, *ponerse*, 2.
put, *puesto.*

Q.

queen, *reina*, f.
question, *pregunta*, f.
quick, *ligero.*
quickly, *pronto.*
quiet, *quieto.*

R.

railroad, *ferrocarril*, m.
rain, *lluvia*, f.
to rain, *llover*, 2.
rare, *raro.*
rather, *algo.*
to read, *leer*, 2.
read, *leído.*
ready, *listo.*
reason, *razón*, f.
to receive, *recibir*, 3.
received, *recibido.*
to recommend, *recomendar*, 1.
recompense, *recompensa*, f.
red, *colorado, encendido.*
to reëstablish, *restablecer*, 2.
refreshment, *refresco*, m.
regiment, *regimiento*, m.
to regret, *sentir*, 3.

to reign, *reinar*, 1.
to rejoice, *alegrarse*, 1.
to relate, *referir*, 3.
to remain, *quedarse*, 1.
to remember, *acordarse*, 1.
to remove, *apartar*, 1.
to repeat, *repetir*, 3.
to repent, *arrepentirse*, 3.
to repress, *reprimir*, 3.
to reside, *residir*, 3.
to resolve, *resolver*, 2.
to rest, *descansar*, 1.
to respect, *respetar*, 1.
to result, *provenir*, 3.
to return, *volver*, 2. *devolver*, 2.
return, *vuelva V.*
to revolt, *sublevar*, 1.
rich, *rico.*
a very rich man, *ricachón*, m.
right, *derecho.*
ripe, *maduro.*
to rise, *levantarse*, 1.
river, *río*, m.
road, *camino*, m.
rogue, *pícaro*, m.
Roman, *Romano*, m.
Romulus, *Rómulo.*
room, *cuarto*, m.
rose, *rosa*, f.
to rot, *podrir*, 3.
rudeness, *grosería*, f.
ruin, *ruina*, f.
to ruin, *arruinar*, 1.
to run, *correr*, 2.
Russia, *Rusia.*
Russian, *Ruso.*

S.

saber, *sable*, m.
sacred, *sagrado.*
sad, *triste.*
saddle, *silla*, f.
safe, *caja*, f.
said, *dicho.*
sailor, *marinero*, m.
same, *mismo.*
satisfied, *satisfecho, contento.*
to say, *decir*, 3.
say, *diga V.*
says, *dice.*
scholar, *discípulo*, m.
school, *escuela*, f.
science, *ciencia*, f.
Scipio, *Escipión.*
to scream, *gritar*, 1.
season, *estación*, f.
seated, *sentado.*
scissors, *tijeras*, f. pl.
to see, *ver*, 2.
do you see? *¿ve V.?*
I see, *veo.*
seem, *parecen.*
seen, *visto.*
sees, *ve.*
to select, *escoger*, 2.
self, *mismo.*
to sell, *vender*, 2.
do you sell? *¿vende V.?*
I sell, *vendo.*
sells, *vende.*
to send, *mandar*, 1. *enviar*, 1.
send, *mande V.*
sent, *enviado.*
servant, *criado*, m.
servantgirl, *criada*, f.
served, *servido.*
service, *servicio*, m.
several, *varios*, m. *varias*, f.
to shave, *afeitar*, 1.
sheet, *sábana*, f.
shilling, *peseta*, f.
ship, *buque*, m.
shirt, *camisa*, f.
shoe, *zapato*, m.
shoemaker, *zapatero*, m.
to shoot, *fusilar*, 1.
shop, *tienda*, f.
short, *corto.*
to show, *mostrar*, 1.
to shut, *cerrar*, 1.
shut, *cerrado.*
sick, *enfermo.*
side, *lado*, m.
silent, *callado.*
silk, *seda*, f.
silly, *tonto.*
silver, *plata*, f.
since, *desde, desde que.*
to sing, *cantar*, 1.
singer, *cantatriz*, f.
singing, *canto*, m.
sings, *canta.*
singular, *singular.*
Sir, *señor.*
sister, *hermana*, f.
to sit down, *sentarse*, 1.
situation, *empleo*, m. *colocación*, f.
skillful, *hábil.*
slate, *pizarra*, f.
to sleep, *dormir*, 3.
sleigh, *trineo*, m.
slowly, *despacio.*
small, *pequeño.*
smell, *olor*, m.
snow, *nieve*, f.
so, *así, tan.*
society, *sociedad*, f.
sold, *vendido.*
some, *alguno.*
somebody, *alguien, alguno.*
some one, *alguno.*
something, *algo.*

something else, *otra cosa.*
sometimes, *algunas veces.*
somewhere, *alguna parte.*
son, *hijo*, m.
song, *canción*, f.
soon, *pronto.*
I am sorry for it, *lo siento.*
so that, *así que.*
soup, *sopa*, f.
sour, *agrio.*
to sow, *sembrar*, 1.
Spain, *España*, f.
Spaniard, *Español*, m.
Spanish, *español.*
do you speak? *¿ habla V.?* sing. *¿ hablan VV.?* pl.
I speak, *hablo.*
they speak, *hablan.*
speaks, *habla.*
species, *especie*, f.
speculation, *especulación*, f.
to spend, *gastar*, 1.
spends, *gasta.*
splendid, *magnífico.*
spoken, *hablado.*
spot, *lugar*, m.
spring, *primavera*, f.
squadron, *escuadra*, f.
stab (with a poniard), *puñalada*, f.
stable, *caballeriza*, f.
to stand, *pararse*, 1.
standing, *parado.*
star, *estrella*, f.
state, *estado*, m.
statue, *estatua*, f.
to steal, *robar*, 1.
steam, *vapor*, m.
steamer, *vapor*, m.
stocking, *media*, f.
store, *almacén*, m.
stranger, *estrangero*, m.
strawberry, *fresa*, f.
street, *calle*, f.
strength, *fuerza*, f.
to strike, *pegar*, 1.
strong, *fuerte.*
student, *estudiante*, m.
studied, *estudiado.*
studious, *estudioso.*
study, *estudio*, m.
to study, *estudiar*, 1.
do you study? *¿ estudian, VV.?*
we study, *estudiamos.*
to subdue, *someter*, 2.
suburbs, *contornos*, m. pl.
such as, *tal.*
suddenly, *de repente.*
to suffer, *padecer*, 2.
to suffocate, *sufocar*, 1.
sugar, *azúcar*, m.
sun, *sol*, m.
sunshade, *quitasol*, m.
supper, *cena*, f.
to support, *mantener*, 2.
to suppose, *suponer*, 2.
supreme, *supremo.*
sure, *seguro.*
surprised, *sorprendido.*
to surrender, *rendirse*, 3.
to suspend, *suspender*, 2.
sweet, *dulce.*
swollen, *hinchado.*

T.

table, *mesa*, f.
tailor, *sastre*, m.
to take, *tomar*, 1. *llevar*, 1. *conducir*, 3.
to take a walk, *dar un paseo, pasearse*, 1.
to take interest, *interesarse*, 1.
to take off, *quitarse*, 1.
to take possession, *apoderarse*, 1.
tale, *cuento*, m.
talent, *talento*, m.
tall, *alto.*
Tartary, *Tartaria*, f.
tea, *té*, m.
teacher, *maestro*, m.
teaches, *enseña.*
tear, *lágrima*, f.
Telemachus, *Telémaco.*
to tell, *decir*, 3.
tell, *diga V.*
tells, *dice.*
thankful, *agradecido.*
thank you, *gracias.*
I (or **we**) **thank you**, *muchas gracias.*
that, *aquello, ese.*
that, *que.*
that thing, *aquello, eso*
theater, *teatro*, m.
then, *después.*
theological, *teológal.*
theoretical, *teórico.*
there, *ahí, allí.*
therefore, *así.*
there is, *hay.*
thief, *ladrón*, m.
thing, *cosa*, f.
to think, *pensar*, 1.
this, *este.*
this thing, *esto.*
three, *tres.*
through, *por.*
thunder, *trueno*, m.
thus, *así.*
tiger, *tigre*, m.
till, *hasta.*

time, *tiempo*, m. *hora*, f. *vez*, f.
timid, *tímido*.
tired, *cansado*.
to-day, *hoy*.
together, *junto*.
to-morrow, *mañana*.
too, *demasiado*, *también*.
too many, *demasiados*.
too much, *demasiado*.
tooth, *diente*, m.
tower, *torre*, f.
town, *pueblo*, m.
to translate, *traducir*, 3.
translation, *traducción*, f.
transparent, *trasparente*.
to travel, *viajar*, 1.
to treat, *tratar*, 1.
tree, *árbol*, m.
to tremble, *temblar*, 1.
trifle, *bagatela*, f. *friolera*, f.
trimmed *bordado*.
to trouble, *molestar*, 1.
trunk, *baúl*, m.
truth, *verdad*, f.
turkey, *pavo*, m.
to turn, *mover*, 2. *volver*, 2.
two, *dos*.

U.

ugly, *feo*.
umbrella, *paraguas*, m.
uncle, *tío*, m.
under, *bajo*.
to understand, *entender*, 2. *comprender*, 2.
unfortunate, *desgraciado*.
unfortunately, *por desgracia*.
unhappy, *infeliz*.
unless, *á menos que*.
until, *hasta*, *hasta que*.
unwell, *malo*.
unworthy, *indigno*.
upon, *sobre*.
to upset, *derribar*, 1.
upstairs, *arriba*.
urbanity, *urbanidad*, f.
us, *nosotros*.
useful, *útil*.
useless, *inútil*.

V.

vegetable, *legumbre*, f.
verse, *verso*, m.
very, *muy*, *mismo*.
vessel, *buque*, m. *barco*, m.
vest, *chaleco*, m.
victory, *victoria*, f.
village, *pueblo*, m. *aldea*, f.
virtue, *virtud*, f.
to visit, *visitar*, 1.
volume, *tomo*, m.

W.

to wait, *esperar*, 1. *aguardar*, 1.
walk, *paseo*, m.
to walk, *andar*, 1.
walkingstick, *bastón*, m.
wall, *muro*, m.
war, *guerra*, f.
warm, *caliente*.
to warm, *calentar*, 1.
was, *era*.
to wash, *lavar*, 1.
washerwoman, *lavandera*, f.
watchful, *vigilante*.
water, *agua*, f.
way, *modo*, m. *medio*.
weak, *débil*.
week, *semana*, f.
to weep, *llorar*, 1.
weeps, *llora*.
well, *pozo*, m.
well, *bien*, *pues*, *bueno*.
what, *qué*.
when, *cuando*.
where, *donde*.
which, *que*.
white, *blanco*.
who, *quien*.
whom, *á quien*.
whose? *¿de quién?*
why? *¿porqué?*
wife, *mujer*, f.
will find, *encontrará*.
I will have, *quiero*.
William, *Guillermo*.
will you have? *¿quiere V.?*
wind, *viento*, m.
window, *ventana*, f.
wine, *vino*, m.
winter, *invierno*, m.
wise, *sabio*.
wisely, *sabiamente*.
wish, *quieren*.
do you wish? *¿quiere V.?*
I wish, *quiero*.
we wish, *deseamos*.
wishes, *quiere*, *desea*.
with, *con*.
within, *dentro de*.
with me, *conmigo*.
without, *afuera*, *sin*.
woman, *mujer*, f.

wood, *bosque*, m. *leña*, f.
word, *palabra*, f.
work, *trabajo*, m. *obra*, f.
to work, *trabajar*, 1.
workman, *obrero*, m.
works, *trabaja*.
world, *mundo*, m.
to be worth, *valer*, 2.
worthy, *digno*.
would to God! *Ojalá!*
wounded, *herido*.
to write, *escribir*, 3.
do you write? *¿escribe V.?*
I write, *escribo*.
writes, *escribe*.
writing, *escritura*, f.
written, *escrito*.

Y.

yard, *patio*, m. *vara*, f.
year, *año*, m.
yes, *sí*.
yesterday, *ayer*.
yet, *todavía*, *aun*.
young, *joven*.
youth, *juventud*, f.